PIC18F1230/1330 Data Sheet

18/20/28-Pin, Enhanced Flash Microcontrollers with nanoWatt Technology, High-Performance PWM and A/D

Note the following details of the code protection feature on Microchip devices:

- Microchip products meet the specification contained in their particular Microchip Data Sheet.
- Microchip believes that its family of products is one of the most secure families of its kind on the market today, when used in the intended manner and under normal conditions.
- There are dishonest and possibly illegal methods used to breach the code protection feature. All of these methods, to our knowledge, require using the Microchip products in a manner outside the operating specifications contained in Microchip's Data Sheets. Most likely, the person doing so is engaged in theft of intellectual property.
- Microchip is willing to work with the customer who is concerned about the integrity of their code.
- Neither Microchip nor any other semiconductor manufacturer can guarantee the security of their code. Code protection does not mean that we are guaranteeing the product as "unbreakable."

Code protection is constantly evolving. We at Microchip are committed to continuously improving the code protection features of our products. Attempts to break Microchip's code protection feature may be a violation of the Digital Millennium Copyright Act. If such acts allow unauthorized access to your software or other copyrighted work, you may have a right to sue for relief under that Act.

Information contained in this publication regarding device applications and the like is provided only for your convenience and may be superseded by updates. It is your responsibility to ensure that your application meets with your specifications. MICROCHIP MAKES NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WRITTEN OR ORAL, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, RELATED TO THE INFORMATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ITS CONDITION, QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR PURPOSE. Microchip disclaims all liability arising from this information and its use. Use of Microchip devices in life support and/or safety applications is entirely at the buyer's risk, and the buyer agrees to defend, indemnify and hold harmless Microchip from any and all damages, claims, suits, or expenses resulting from such use. No licenses are conveyed, implicitly or otherwise, under any Microchip intellectual property rights.

Trademarks

The Microchip name and logo, the Microchip logo, Accuron, dsPIC, KEELOQ, microID, MPLAB, PIC, PICmicro, PICSTART, PRO MATE, PowerSmart, rfPIC and SmartShunt are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

AmpLab, FilterLab, Migratable Memory, MXDEV, MXLAB, SEEVAL, SmartSensor and The Embedded Control Solutions Company are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A.

Analog-for-the-Digital Age, Application Maestro, dsPICDEM, dsPICDEM.net, dsPICworks, ECAN, ECONOMONITOR, FanSense, FlexROM, fuzzyLAB, In-Circuit Serial Programming, ICSP, ICEPIC, Linear Active Thermistor, MPASM, MPLIB, MPLINK, MPSIM, PICkit, PICDEM, PICDEM.net, PICLAB, PICtail, PowerCal, PowerInfo, PowerMate, PowerTool, REAL ICE, rfLAB, rfPICDEM, Select Mode, Smart Serial, SmartTel, Total Endurance, UNI/O, WiperLock and Zena are trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

SQTP is a service mark of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A.

All other trademarks mentioned herein are property of their respective companies.

© 2006, Microchip Technology Incorporated, Printed in the U.S.A., All Rights Reserved.

Printed on recycled paper.

QUALITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CERTIFIED BY DNV

ISO/TS 16949:2002

Microchip received ISO/TS-16949:2002 quality system certification for its worldwide headquarters, design and wafer fabrication facilities in Chandler and Tempe, Arizona and Mountain View, California in October 2003. The Company's quality system processes and procedures are for its PICmicro® 8-bit MCUs, KEELOQ® code hopping devices, Serial EEPROMs, microperipherals, nonvolatile memory and analog products. In addition, Microchip's quality system for the design and manufacture of development systems is ISO 9001:2000 certified.

PIC18F1230/1330

18/20/28-Pin, Enhanced Flash Microcontrollers with nanoWatt Technology, High-Performance PWM and A/D

14-Bit Power Control PWM Module:

- Up to 6 PWM channel outputs
  - Complementary or independent outputs
- Edge or center-aligned operation
- Flexible dead-band generator
- Hardware Fault protection input
- Simultaneous update of duty cycle and period:
  - Flexible Special Event Trigger output

Flexible Oscillator Structure:

- Four Crystal modes, up to 40 MHz
- 4x Phase Lock Loop (PLL) – available for crystal and internal oscillators
- Two External RC modes, up to 4 MHz
- Two External Clock modes, up to 40 MHz
- Internal oscillator block:
  - 8 user-selectable frequencies from 31 kHz to 8 MHz
  - Provides a complete range of clock speeds from 31 kHz to 32 MHz when used with PLL
  - User-tunable to compensate for frequency drift
- Secondary oscillator using Timer1 @ 32 kHz
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor:
  - Allows for safe shutdown if peripheral clock stops

Power-Managed Modes:

- Run: CPU on, peripherals on
- Idle: CPU off, peripherals on
- Sleep: CPU off, peripherals off
- Idle mode currents down to 5.8 µA, typical
- Sleep mode current down to 0.1 µA, typical
- Timer1 Oscillator: 1.8 µA, typical; 32 kHz; 2V
- Watchdog Timer (WDT): 2.1 µA, typical
- Two-Speed Oscillator Start-up

Peripheral Highlights:

- High-current sink/source 25 mA/25 mA
- Up to 4 programmable external interrupts
- Four input change interrupts
- Enhanced Addressable USART module:
  - Supports RS-485, RS-232 and LIN 1.2
  - RS-232 operation using internal oscillator block (no external crystal required)
  - Auto-wake-up on Start bit
  - Auto-Baud Detect
- 10-bit, up to 4-channel Analog-to-Digital Converter module (A/D):
  - Auto-acquisition capability
  - Conversion available during Sleep
- Up to 3 analog comparators
- Programmable reference voltage for comparators
- Programmable 15-level Low-Voltage Detection (LVD) module:
  - Supports interrupt on Low-Voltage Detection

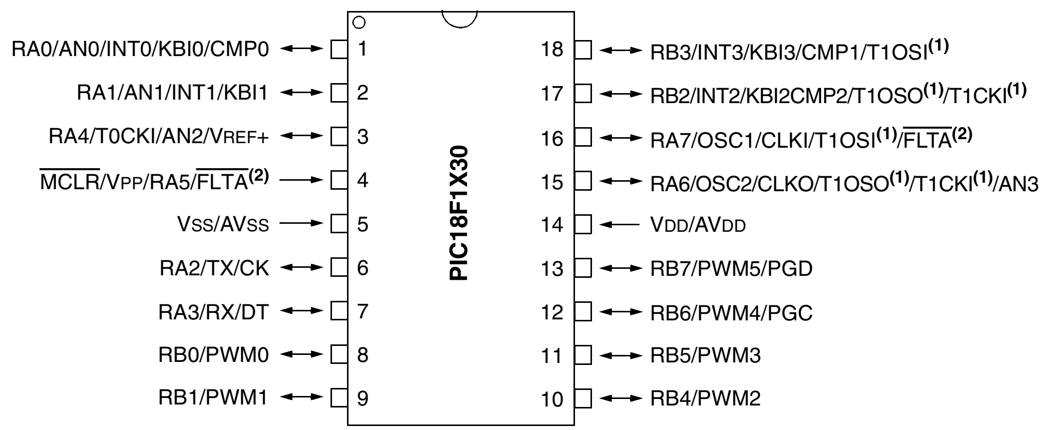
Special Microcontroller Features:

- C compiler optimized architecture with optional extended instruction set
- Flash memory retention: > 40 years
- Self-programmable under software control
- Priority levels for interrupts
- 8 x 8 Single-Cycle Hardware Multiplier
- Extended Watchdog Timer (WDT):
  - Programmable period from 4 ms to 131s
- Programmable Code Protection
- Single-Supply In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) via two pins
- In-Circuit Debug (ICD) via two pins
- Wide operating voltage range (2.0V to 5.5V)

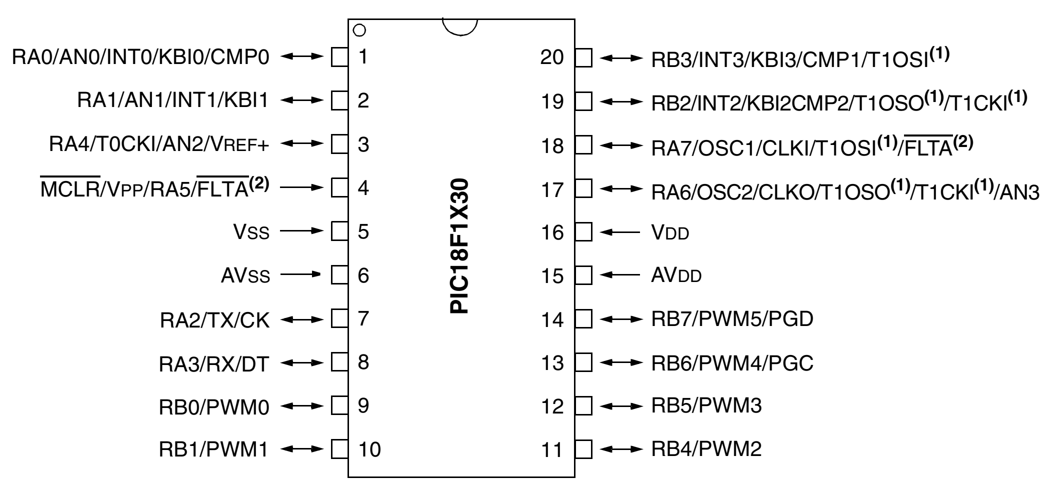
Device	Program Memory		Data Memory		I/O	10-Bit ADC Channel	EUSART	Analog Comparator	14-Bit PWM (ch)	Timers 16-Bit
	Flash (bytes)	# Single-Word Instructions	SRAM (bytes)	EEPROM (bytes)						
PIC18F1230	4096	2048	256	128	13	4	Yes	3	6	2
PIC18F1330	8192	4096	256	128	13	4	Yes	3	6	2

Pin Diagrams

18-Pin PDIP, SOIC



20-Pin SSOP



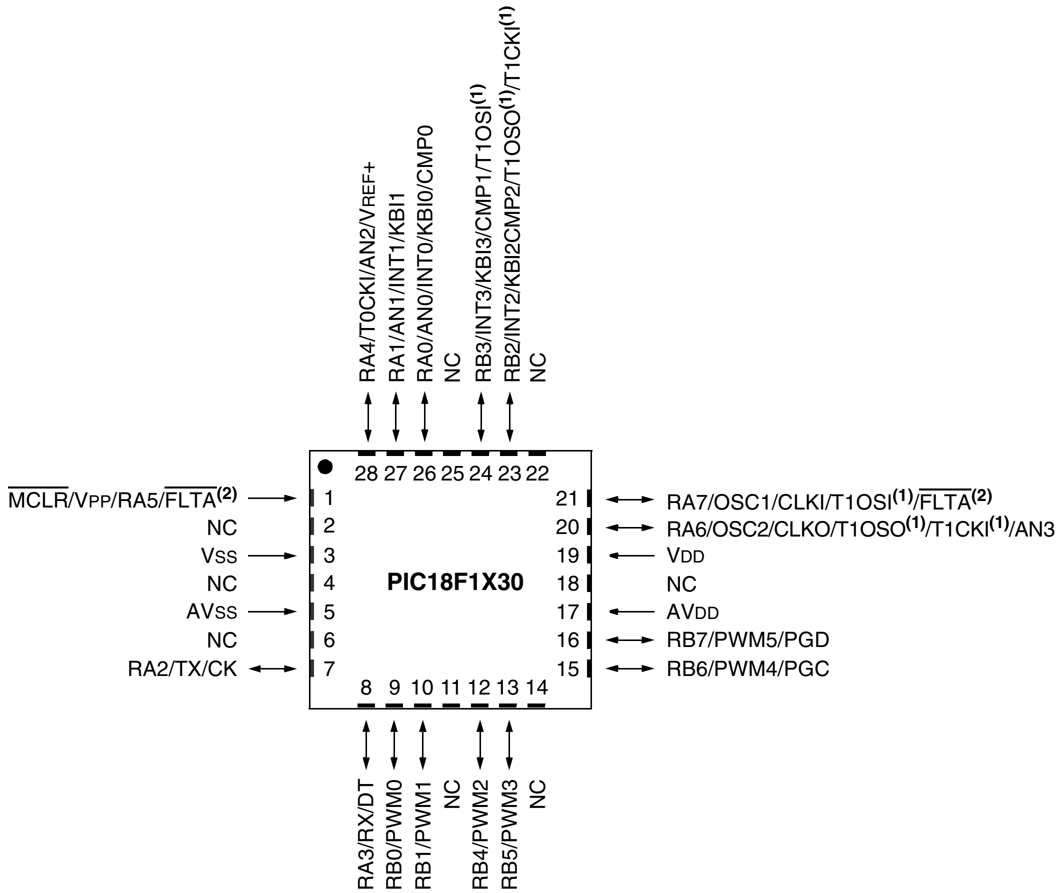
Note 1: Placement of T1OSI and T1OSO/T1CKI depends on the value of Configuration bit, T1OSCMX, of CONFIG3H.

2: Placement of FLTA depends on the value of Configuration bit, FLTAMX, of CONFIG3H.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

Pin Diagrams (Continued)

28-Pin QFN(3)



Note 1: Placement of T1OSI and T1OSO/T1CKI depends on the value of Configuration bit, T1OSCMX, of CONFIG3H.

2: Placement of FLTA depends on the value of Configuration bit, FLTAMX, of CONFIG3H.

3: It is recommended that the user connect the center metal pad for this device package to the ground.

Table of Contents

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TO OUR VALUED CUSTOMERS

It is our intention to provide our valued customers with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip products. To this end, we will continue to improve our publications to better suit your needs. Our publications will be refined and enhanced as new volumes and updates are introduced.

If you have any questions or comments regarding this publication, please contact the Marketing Communications Department via E-mail at **docerrors@microchip.com** or fax the **Reader Response Form** in the back of this data sheet to (480) 792-4150. We welcome your feedback.

Most Current Data Sheet

To obtain the most up-to-date version of this data sheet, please register at our Worldwide Web site at:

http://www.microchip.com

You can determine the version of a data sheet by examining its literature number found on the bottom outside corner of any page. The last character of the literature number is the version number, (e.g., DS30000A is version A of document DS30000).

Errata

An errata sheet, describing minor operational differences from the data sheet and recommended workarounds, may exist for current devices. As device/documentation issues become known to us, we will publish an errata sheet. The errata will specify the revision of silicon and revision of document to which it applies.

To determine if an errata sheet exists for a particular device, please check with one of the following:

- Microchip’s Worldwide Web site; http://www.microchip.com
- Your local Microchip sales office (see last page)

When contacting a sales office, please specify which device, revision of silicon and data sheet (include literature number) you are using.

Customer Notification System

Register on our web site at **www.microchip.com** to receive the most current information on all of our products.

NOTES:

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

1.0 DEVICE OVERVIEW

This document contains device-specific information for the following devices:

- PIC18F1230
- PIC18F1330

This family offers the advantages of all PIC18 microcontrollers – namely, high computational performance at an economical price – with the addition of high-endurance Enhanced Flash program memory. On top of these features, the PIC18F1230/1330 family introduces design enhancements that make these microcontrollers a logical choice for many high-performance, power control and motor control applications.

Peripheral highlights include:

- 14-bit resolution Power Control PWM module (PCPWM) with programmable dead-time insertion

The PCPWM can generate up to six complementary PWM outputs with dead-band time insertion. Overdrive current is detected by off-chip analog comparators or the digital Fault input ($\overline{FLTA}$).

PIC18F1230/1330 devices also feature Flash program memory and an internal RC oscillator.

1.1 New Core Features

1.1.1 nanoWatt TECHNOLOGY

All of the devices in the PIC18F1230/1330 family incorporate a range of features that can significantly reduce power consumption during operation. Key items include:

- **Alternate Run Modes:** By clocking the controller from the Timer1 source or the internal oscillator block, power consumption during code execution can be reduced by as much as 90%.
- **Multiple Idle Modes:** The controller can also run with its CPU core disabled but the peripherals still active. In these states, power consumption can be reduced even further, to as little as 4% of normal operation requirements.
- **On-the-Fly Mode Switching:** The power-managed modes are invoked by user code during operation, allowing the user to incorporate power-saving ideas into their application's software design.
- **Low Consumption in Key Modules:** The power requirements for both Timer1 and the Watchdog Timer are minimized. See **Section 22.0 "Electrical Characteristics"** for values.

1.1.2 MULTIPLE OSCILLATOR OPTIONS AND FEATURES

All of the devices in the PIC18F1230/1330 family offer ten different oscillator options, allowing users a wide range of choices in developing application hardware. These include:

- Four Crystal modes, using crystals or ceramic resonators.
- Two External Clock modes, offering the option of using two pins (oscillator input and a divide-by-4 clock output) or one pin (oscillator input, with the second pin reassigned as general I/O).
- Two External RC Oscillator modes with the same pin options as the External Clock modes.
- An internal oscillator block which provides an 8 MHz clock and an INTRC source (approximately 31 kHz), as well as a range of six user-selectable clock frequencies, between 125 kHz to 4 MHz, for a total of eight clock frequencies. This option frees the two oscillator pins for use as additional general purpose I/Os.
- A Phase Lock Loop (PLL) frequency multiplier, available to both the High-Speed Crystal and Internal Oscillator modes, which allows clock speeds of up to 40 MHz. Used with the internal oscillator, the PLL gives users a complete selection of clock speeds, from 31 kHz to 32 MHz, all without using an external crystal or clock circuit.

Besides its availability as a clock source, the internal oscillator block provides a stable reference source that gives the family additional features for robust operation:

- **Fail-Safe Clock Monitor:** This option constantly monitors the main clock source against a reference signal provided by the internal oscillator. If a clock failure occurs, the controller is switched to the internal oscillator block, allowing for continued low-speed operation or a safe application shutdown.
- **Two-Speed Start-up:** This option allows the internal oscillator to serve as the clock source from Power-on Reset, or wake-up from Sleep mode, until the primary clock source is available.

1.2 Other Special Features

- **Memory Endurance:** The Enhanced Flash cells for both program memory and data EEPROM are rated to last for many thousands of erase/write cycles – up to 100,000 for program memory and 1,000,000 for EEPROM. Data retention without refresh is conservatively estimated to be greater than 40 years.
- **Self-Programmability:** These devices can write to their own program memory spaces under internal software control. By using a bootloader routine located in the protected Boot Block at the top of program memory, it becomes possible to create an application that can update itself in the field.
- **Extended Instruction Set:** The PIC18F1230/1330 family introduces an optional extension to the PIC18 instruction set, which adds eight new instructions and an Indexed Addressing mode. This extension, enabled as a device configuration option, has been specifically designed to optimize re-entrant application code originally developed in high-level languages, such as C.
- **Power Control PWM Module:** This module provides up to six modulated outputs for controlling half-bridge and full-bridge drivers. Other features include auto-shutdown on Fault detection and auto-restart to reactivate outputs once the condition has cleared.
- **Enhanced Addressable USART:** This serial communication module is capable of standard RS-232 operation and provides support for the LIN bus protocol. Other enhancements include automatic baud rate detection and a 16-bit Baud Rate Generator for improved resolution. When the microcontroller is using the internal oscillator block, the EUSART provides stable operation for applications that talk to the outside world without using an external crystal (or its accompanying power requirement).
- **10-Bit A/D Converter:** This module incorporates programmable acquisition time, allowing for a channel to be selected and a conversion to be initiated without waiting for a sampling period and thus, reducing code overhead.
- **Extended Watchdog Timer (WDT):** This enhanced version incorporates a 16-bit prescaler, allowing an extended time-out range that is stable across operating voltage and temperature. See **Section 22.0 "Electrical Characteristics"** for time-out periods.

1.3 Details on Individual Family Members

Devices in the PIC18F1230/1330 family are available in 18-pin, 20-pin and 28-pin packages.

The devices are differentiated from each other in one way:

1. Flash program memory (4 Kbytes for PIC18F1230, 8 Kbytes for PIC18F1330).

All other features for devices in this family are identical. These are summarized in Table 1-1.

A block diagram of the PIC18F1220/1320 device architecture is provided in Figure 1-1. The pinouts for this device family are listed in Table 1-2.

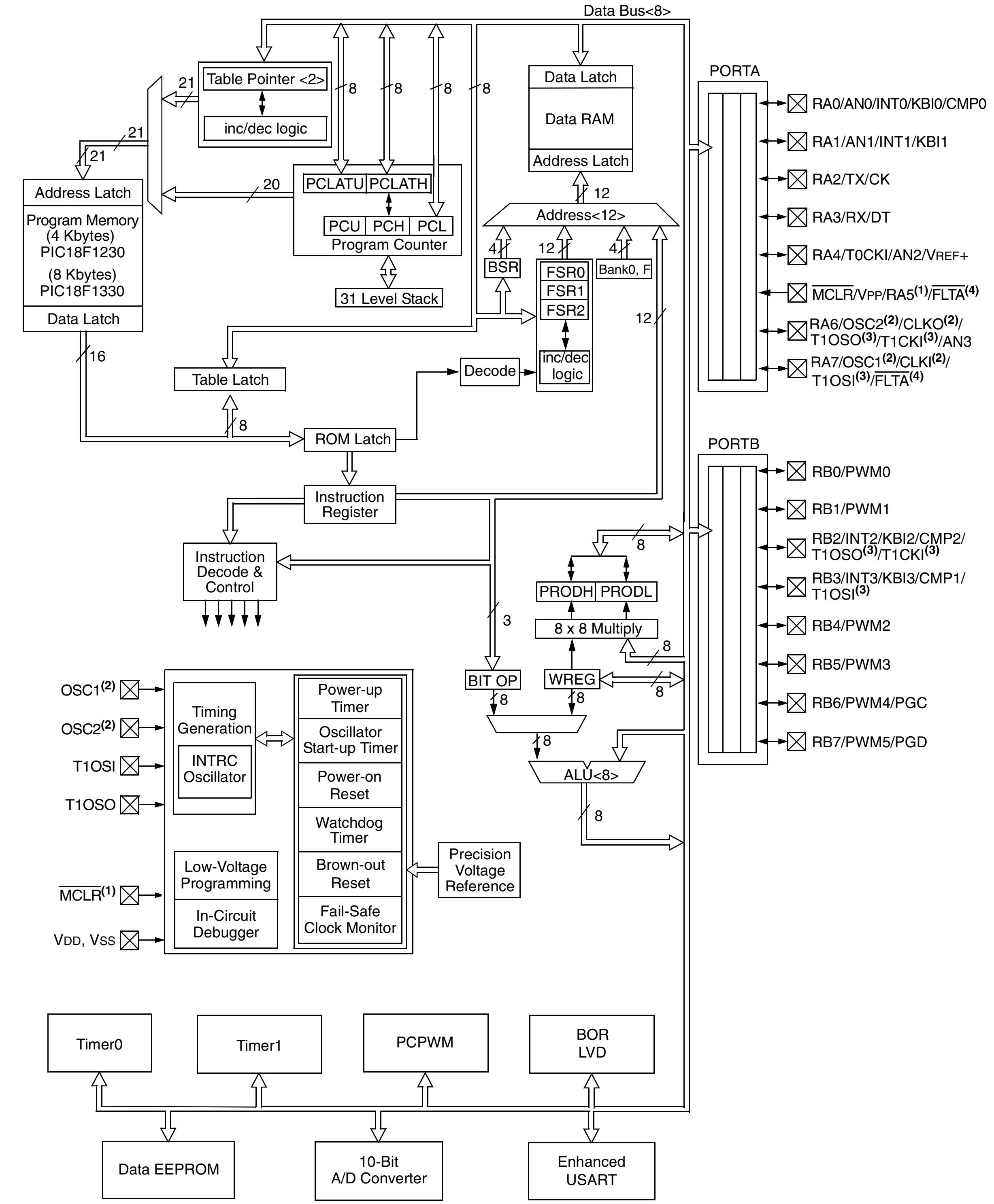
Like all Microchip PIC18 devices, members of the PIC18F1230/1330 family are available as both standard and low-voltage devices. Standard devices with Enhanced Flash memory, designated with an "F" in the part number (such as PIC18**F**1330), accommodate an operating VDD range of 4.2V to 5.5V. Low-voltage parts, designated by "LF" (such as PIC18**LF**1330), function over an extended VDD range of 2.0V to 5.5V.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 1-1: DEVICE FEATURES

Features	PIC18F1230	PIC18F1330
Operating Frequency	DC – 40 MHz	DC – 40 MHz
Program Memory (Bytes)	4096	8192
Program Memory (Instructions)	2048	4096
Data Memory (Bytes)	256	256
Data EEPROM Memory (Bytes)	128	128
Interrupt Sources	17	17
I/O Ports	Ports A, B	Ports A, B
Timers	2	2
Power Control PWM Module	6 Channels	6 Channels
Serial Communications	Enhanced USART	Enhanced USART
10-Bit Analog-to-Digital Module	4 Input Channels	4 Input Channels
Resets (and Delays)	POR, BOR, `RESET` Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST), $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ (optional), WDT	POR, BOR, `RESET` Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST), $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ (optional), WDT
Programmable Low-Voltage Detect	Yes	Yes
Programmable Brown-out Reset	Yes	Yes
Instruction Set	75 Instructions; 83 with Extended Instruction Set enabled	75 Instructions; 83 with Extended Instruction Set enabled
Packages	18-pin PDIP 18-pin SOIC 20-pin SSOP 28-pin QFN	18-pin PDIP 18-pin SOIC 20-pin SSOP 28-pin QFN

FIGURE 1-1: PIC18F1230/1330 (18-PIN) BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: RA5 is available only when the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset is disabled.

2: OSC1, OSC2, CLKI and CLKO are only available in select oscillator modes and when these pins are not being used as digital I/O. Refer to **Section 2.0 "Oscillator Configurations"** for additional information.

3: Placement of T1OSI and T1OSO/T1CKI depends on the value of the Configuration bit, T1OSCMX, of CONFIG3H.

4: Placement of $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ depends on the value of the Configuration bit, FLTAMX, of CONFIG3H.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18F1230/1330 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS

Pin Name	Pin Number			Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PDIP, SOIC	SSOP	QFN			
$\overline{MCLR}$/VPP/RA5/$\overline{FLTA}$	4	4	1			Master Clear (input), programming voltage (input) or Fault detect input.
$\overline{MCLR}$				I	ST	Master Clear (Reset) input. This pin is an active-low Reset to the device.
VPP				I	Analog	Programming voltage input.
RA5				I	ST	Digital input.
$\overline{FLTA}$(1)				I	ST	Fault detect input for PWM.
RA7/OSC1/CLKI/ T1OSI/$\overline{FLTA}$	16	18	21			Oscillator crystal, external clock input, Timer1 oscillator input or Fault detect input.
RA7				I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
OSC1				I	Analog	Oscillator crystal input or external clock source input.
CLKI				I	Analog	External clock source input.
T1OSI(2)				I	Analog	Timer1 oscillator input.
$\overline{FLTA}$(1)				I	ST	Fault detect input for PWM.
RA6/OSC2/CLKO/ T1OSO/T1CKI/AN3	15	17	20			Oscillator crystal, clock output, Timer1 oscillator output or analog input.
RA6				I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
OSC2				O	Analog	Oscillator crystal output or external clock source input.
CLKO				O	Analog	External clock source output.
T1OSO(2)				O	Analog	Timer1 oscillator output.
TICKI(2)				I	ST	Timer1 clock input.
AN3				I	Analog	Analog input 3.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I = Input; O = Output; P = Power

Note 1: Placement of $\overline{FLTA}$ depends on the value of Configuration bit, FLTAMX, of CONFIG3H.

2: Placement of T1OSI and T1OSO/T1CKI depends on the value of Configuration bit, T1OSCMX, of CONFIG3H.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18F1230/1330 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number			Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PDIP, SOIC	SSOP	QFN			
						PORTA is a bidirectional I/O port.
RA0/AN0/INT0/KBI0/CMP0	1	1	26			
RA0				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN0				I	Analog	Analog input 0.
INT0				I	ST	External interrupt 0.
KBI0				I	TTL	Interrupt-on-change pin.
CMP0				I	Analog	Comparator 0 input.
RA1/AN1/INT1/KBI1	2	2	27			
RA1				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN1				I	Analog	Analog input 1.
INT1				I	ST	External interrupt 1.
KBI1				I	TTL	Interrupt-on-change pin.
RA2/TX/CK	6	7	7			
RA2				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
TX				O	—	EUSART asynchronous transmit.
CK				I/O	ST	EUSART synchronous clock.
RA3/RX/DT	7	8	8			
RA3				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
RX				I	ST	EUSART asynchronous receive.
DT				I/O	ST	EUSART synchronous data.
RA4/T0CKI/AN2/VREF+	3	3	28			
RA4				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
T0CKI				I	ST	Timer0 external clock input.
AN2				I	Analog	Analog input 2.
VREF+				I	Analog	A/D reference voltage (high) input.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I = Input; O = Output; P = Power

Note 1: Placement of $\overline{FLTA}$ depends on the value of Configuration bit, FLTAMX, of CONFIG3H.

2: Placement of T1OSI and T1OSO/T1CKI depends on the value of Configuration bit, T1OSCMX, of CONFIG3H.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18F1230/1330 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number			Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PDIP, SOIC	SSOP	QFN			
						PORTB is a bidirectional I/O port.
RB0/PWM0	8	9	9			
RB0				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
PWM0				O	—	PWM module output PWM0.
RB1/PWM1	9	10	10			
RB1				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
PWM1				O	—	PWM module output PWM1.
RB2/INT2/KBI2/CMP2/T1OSO/T1CKI	17	19	23			
RB2				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
INT2				I	ST	External interrupt 2.
KBI2				I	TTL	Interrupt-on-change pin.
CMP2				I	Analog	Comparator 2 input.
T1OSO[(2)]				O	Analog	Timer1 oscillator output.
T1CKI[(2)]				I	ST	Timer1 clock input.
RB3/INT3/KBI3/CMP1/T1OSI	18	20	24			
RB3				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
INT3				I	ST	External interrupt 3.
KBI3				I	TTL	Interrupt-on-change pin.
CMP1				I	Analog	Comparator 1 input.
T1OSI[(2)]				I	Analog	Timer1 oscillator input.
RB4/PWM2	10	11	12			
RB4				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
PWM2				O	—	PWM module output PWM2.
RB5/PWM3	11	12	13			
RB5				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
PWM3				O	—	PWM module output PWM3.
RB6/PWM4/PGC	12	13	15			
RB6				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
PWM4				O	—	PWM module output PWM4.
PGC				I	ST	In-Circuit Debugger and ICSP™ programming clock pin.
RB7/PWM5/PGD	13	14	16			
RB7				I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
PWM5				O	—	PWM module output PWM5.
PGD				O	—	In-Circuit Debugger and ICSP programming data pin.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I = Input; O = Output; P = Power

Note 1: Placement of $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ depends on the value of Configuration bit, FLTAMX, of CONFIG3H.

2: Placement of T1OSI and T1OSO/T1CKI depends on the value of Configuration bit, T1OSCMX, of CONFIG3H.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18F1230/1330 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number			Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PDIP, SOIC	SSOP	QFN			
V_{SS}	5	5	3	P	—	Ground reference for logic and I/O pins.
V_{DD}	14	16	19	P	—	Positive supply for logic and I/O pins.
AV_{SS}	5	6	5	P	—	Ground reference for A/D converter module.
AV_{DD}	14	15	17	P	—	Positive supply for A/D converter module.
NC	—	—	2, 4, 6, 11, 14, 18, 22, 25	—	—	No Connect.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I = Input; O = Output; P = Power

Note 1: Placement of $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ depends on the value of Configuration bit, FLTAMX, of CONFIG3H.

2: Placement of T1OSI and T1OSO/T1CKI depends on the value of Configuration bit, T1OSCMX, of CONFIG3H.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

2.0 OSCILLATOR CONFIGURATIONS

2.1 Oscillator Types

PIC18F1230/1330 devices can be operated in ten different oscillator modes. The user can program the Configuration bits, FOSC3:FOSC0, in Configuration Register 1H to select one of these ten modes:

1. LP Low-Power Crystal
2. XT Crystal/Resonator
3. HS High-Speed Crystal/Resonator
4. HSPLL High-Speed Crystal/Resonator with PLL enabled
5. RC External Resistor/Capacitor with FOSC/4 output on RA6
6. RCIO External Resistor/Capacitor with I/O on RA6
7. INTIO1 Internal Oscillator with FOSC/4 output on RA6 and I/O on RA7
8. INTIO2 Internal Oscillator with I/O on RA6 and RA7
9. EC External Clock with FOSC/4 output
10. ECIO External Clock with I/O on RA6

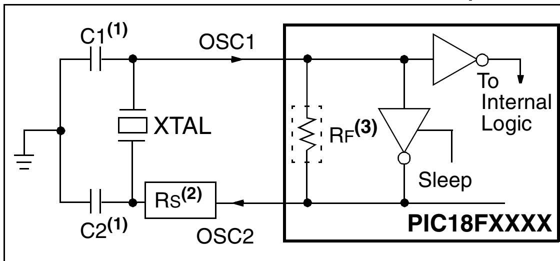
2.2 Crystal Oscillator/Ceramic Resonators

In XT, LP, HS or HSPLL Oscillator modes, a crystal or ceramic resonator is connected to the OSC1 and OSC2 pins to establish oscillation. Figure 2-1 shows the pin connections.

The oscillator design requires the use of a parallel cut crystal.

Note:	Use of a series cut crystal may give a frequency out of the crystal manufacturer's specifications.

FIGURE 2-1: CRYSTAL/CERAMIC RESONATOR OPERATION (XT, LP, HS OR HSPLL CONFIGURATION)



Note 1: See Table 2-1 and Table 2-2 for initial values of C1 and C2.

2: A series resistor (RS) may be required for AT strip cut crystals.

3: RF varies with the oscillator mode chosen.

TABLE 2-1: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR CERAMIC RESONATORS

Typical Capacitor Values Used:			
Mode	**Freq**	**OSC1**	**OSC2**
XT	3.58 MHz 4.19 MHz 4 MHz 4 MHz	15 pF 15 pF 30 pF 50 pF	15 pF 15 pF 30 pF 50 pF

Capacitor values are for design guidance only.

Different capacitor values may be required to produce acceptable oscillator operation. The user should test the performance of the oscillator over the expected VDD and temperature range for the application.

See the notes following Table 2-2 for additional information.

TABLE 2-2: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

Osc Type	Crystal Freq	Typical Capacitor Values Tested:	
		C1	C2
LP	32 kHz	30 pF	30 pF
XT	1 MHz 4 MHz	15 pF 15 pF	15 pF 15 pF
HS	4 MHz 10 MHz 20 MHz 25 MHz	15 pF 15 pF 15 pF 15 pF	15 pF 15 pF 15 pF 15 pF

Capacitor values are for design guidance only.

Different capacitor values may be required to produce acceptable oscillator operation. The user should test the performance of the oscillator over the expected VDD and temperature range for the application.

See the notes following this table for additional information.

Note 1: Higher capacitance increases the stability of the oscillator but also increases the start-up time.

2: When operating below 3V VDD, or when using certain ceramic resonators at any voltage, it may be necessary to use the HS mode or switch to a crystal oscillator.

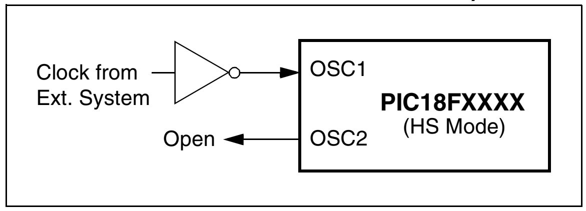
3: Since each resonator/crystal has its own characteristics, the user should consult the resonator/crystal manufacturer for appropriate values of external components.

4: Rs may be required to avoid overdriving crystals with low drive level specification.

5: Always verify oscillator performance over the VDD and temperature range that is expected for the application.

An external clock source may also be connected to the OSC1 pin in the HS mode, as shown in Figure 2-2.

FIGURE 2-2: EXTERNAL CLOCK INPUT OPERATION (HS OSCILLATOR CONFIGURATION)

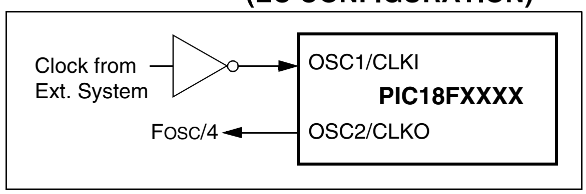


2.3 External Clock Input

The EC and ECIO Oscillator modes require an external clock source to be connected to the OSC1 pin. There is no oscillator start-up time required after a Power-on Reset or after an exit from Sleep mode.

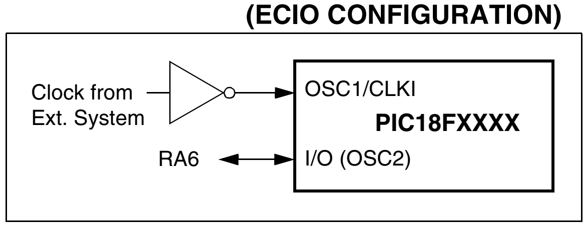
In the EC Oscillator mode, the oscillator frequency divided by 4 is available on the OSC2 pin. This signal may be used for test purposes or to synchronize other logic. Figure 2-3 shows the pin connections for the EC Oscillator mode.

FIGURE 2-3: EXTERNAL CLOCK INPUT OPERATION (EC CONFIGURATION)



The ECIO Oscillator mode functions like the EC mode, except that the OSC2 pin becomes an additional general purpose I/O pin. The I/O pin becomes bit 6 of PORTA (RA6). Figure 2-4 shows the pin connections for the ECIO Oscillator mode.

FIGURE 2-4: EXTERNAL CLOCK INPUT OPERATION (ECIO CONFIGURATION)



 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

2.4 RC Oscillator

For timing insensitive applications, the "RC" and "RCIO" device options offer additional cost savings. The actual oscillator frequency is a function of several factors:

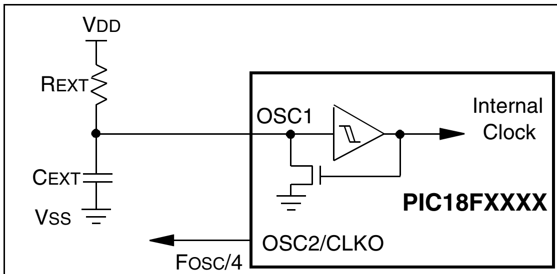
- supply voltage
- values of the external resistor (REXT) and capacitor (CEXT)
- operating temperature

Given the same device, operating voltage and temperature and component values, there will also be unit-to-unit frequency variations. These are due to factors such as:

- normal manufacturing variation
- difference in lead frame capacitance between package types (especially for low CEXT values)
- variations within the tolerance of limits of REXT and CEXT

In the RC Oscillator mode, the oscillator frequency divided by 4 is available on the OSC2 pin. This signal may be used for test purposes or to synchronize other logic. Figure 2-5 shows how the R/C combination is connected.

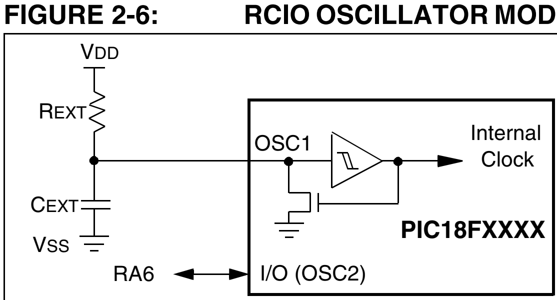
FIGURE 2-5: RC OSCILLATOR MODE



Recommended values: 3 kΩ ≤ REXT ≤ 100 kΩ
CEXT > 20 pF

The RCIO Oscillator mode (Figure 2-6) functions like the RC mode, except that the OSC2 pin becomes an additional general purpose I/O pin. The I/O pin becomes bit 6 of PORTA (RA6).

FIGURE 2-6: RCIO OSCILLATOR MODE



Recommended values: 3 kΩ ≤ REXT ≤ 100 kΩ
CEXT > 20 pF

2.5 PLL Frequency Multiplier

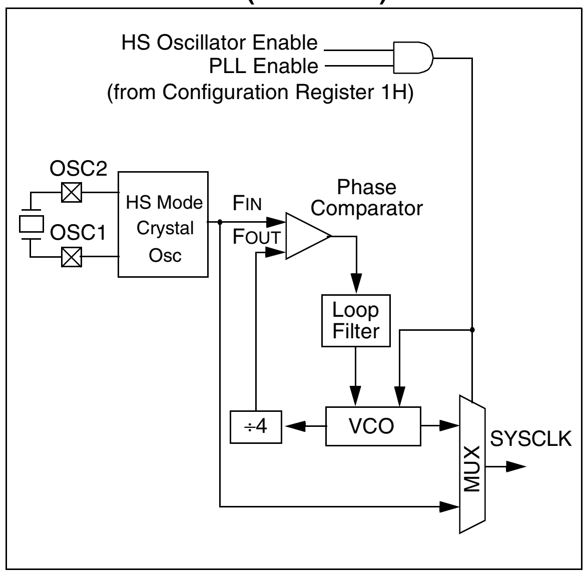
A Phase Locked Loop (PLL) circuit is provided as an option for users who wish to use a lower frequency oscillator circuit or to clock the device up to its highest rated frequency from a crystal oscillator. This may be useful for customers who are concerned with EMI due to high-frequency crystals or users who require higher clock speeds from an internal oscillator.

2.5.1 HSPLL OSCILLATOR MODE

The HSPLL mode makes use of the HS mode oscillator for frequencies up to 10 MHz. A PLL then multiplies the oscillator output frequency by 4 to produce an internal clock frequency up to 40 MHz. The PLLEN bit is not available in this oscillator mode.

The PLL is only available to the crystal oscillator when the FOSC3:FOSC0 Configuration bits are programmed for HSPLL mode (= `0110`).

FIGURE 2-7: PLL BLOCK DIAGRAM (HS MODE)



2.5.2 PLL AND INTOSC

The PLL is also available to the internal oscillator block in selected oscillator modes. In this configuration, the PLL is enabled in software and generates a clock output of up to 32 MHz. The operation of INTOSC with the PLL is described in **Section 2.6.4 "PLL in INTOSC Modes"**.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

2.6 Internal Oscillator Block

The PIC18F1230/1330 devices include an internal oscillator block which generates two different clock signals; either can be used as the microcontroller's clock source. This may eliminate the need for external oscillator circuits on the OSC1 and/or OSC2 pins.

The main output (INTOSC) is an 8 MHz clock source, which can be used to directly drive the device clock. It also drives a postscaler, which can provide a range of clock frequencies from 31 kHz to 4 MHz. The INTOSC output is enabled when a clock frequency from 125 kHz to 8 MHz is selected.

The other clock source is the internal RC oscillator (INTRC), which provides a nominal 31 kHz output. INTRC is enabled if it is selected as the device clock source; it is also enabled automatically when any of the following are enabled:

- Power-up Timer
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor
- Watchdog Timer
- Two-Speed Start-up

These features are discussed in greater detail in **Section 19.0 "Special Features of the CPU"**.

The clock source frequency (INTOSC direct, INTRC direct or INTOSC postscaler) is selected by configuring the IRCF bits of the OSCCON register (page 22).

2.6.1 INTIO MODES

Using the internal oscillator as the clock source eliminates the need for up to two external oscillator pins, which can then be used for digital I/O. Two distinct configurations are available:

- In INTIO1 mode, the OSC2 pin outputs FOSC/4, while OSC1 functions as RA7 for digital input and output.
- In INTIO2 mode, OSC1 functions as RA7 and OSC2 functions as RA6, both for digital input and output.

2.6.2 INTOSC OUTPUT FREQUENCY

The internal oscillator block is calibrated at the factory to produce an INTOSC output frequency of 8.0 MHz.

The INTRC oscillator operates independently of the INTOSC source. Any changes in INTOSC across voltage and temperature are not necessarily reflected by changes in INTRC and vice versa.

2.6.3 OSCTUNE REGISTER

The internal oscillator's output has been calibrated at the factory but can be adjusted in the user's application. This is done by writing to the OSCTUNE register (Register 2-1). The tuning sensitivity is constant throughout the tuning range.

When the OSCTUNE register is modified, the INTOSC frequency will begin shifting to the new frequency. The INTRC clock will reach the new frequency within 8 clock cycles (approximately 8 * 32 μs = 256 μs). The INTOSC clock will stabilize within 1 ms. Code execution continues during this shift. There is no indication that the shift has occurred.

The OSCTUNE register also implements the INTSRC and PLLEN bits, which control certain features of the internal oscillator block. The INTSRC bit allows users to select which internal oscillator provides the clock source when the 31 kHz frequency option is selected. This is covered in greater detail in **Section 2.7.1 "Oscillator Control Register"**.

The PLLEN bit controls the operation of the frequency multiplier, PLL, in Internal Oscillator modes.

2.6.4 PLL IN INTOSC MODES

The 4x frequency multiplier can be used with the internal oscillator block to produce faster device clock speeds than are normally possible with an internal oscillator. When enabled, the PLL produces a clock speed of up to 32 MHz.

Unlike HSPLL mode, the PLL is controlled through software. The control bit, PLLEN (OSCTUNE<6>), is used to enable or disable its operation.

The PLL is available when the device is configured to use the internal oscillator block as its primary clock source (FOSC3:FOSC0 = `1001` or `1000`). Additionally, the PLL will only function when the selected output frequency is either 4 MHz or 8 MHz (OSCCON<6:4> = `111` or `110`). If both of these conditions are not met, the PLL is disabled.

The PLLEN control bit is only functional in those Internal Oscillator modes where the PLL is available. In all other modes, it is forced to '`0`' and is effectively unavailable.

2.6.5 INTOSC FREQUENCY DRIFT

The factory calibrates the internal oscillator block output (INTOSC) for 8 MHz. However, this frequency may drift as VDD or temperature changes, which can affect the controller operation in a variety of ways. It is possible to adjust the INTOSC frequency by modifying the value in the OSCTUNE register. This has no effect on the INTRC clock source frequency.

Tuning the INTOSC source requires knowing when to make the adjustment, in which direction it should be made and in some cases, how large a change is needed. Two compensation techniques are discussed in **Section 2.6.5.1 "Compensating with the EUSART"** and **Section 2.6.5.2 "Compensating with the Timers"**, but other techniques may be used.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 2-1: OSCTUNE: OSCILLATOR TUNING REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0(1)	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
INTSRC	PLLEN(1)	—	TUN4	TUN3	TUN2	TUN1	TUN0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **INTSRC:** Internal Oscillator Low-Frequency Source Select bit
1 = 31.25 kHz device clock derived from 8 MHz INTOSC source (divide-by-256 enabled)
0 = 31 kHz device clock derived directly from INTRC internal oscillator

bit 6 **PLLEN:** Frequency Multiplier PLL for INTOSC Enable bit(1)
1 = PLL enabled for INTOSC (4 MHz and 8 MHz only)
0 = PLL disabled

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 4-0 **TUN4:TUN0:** Frequency Tuning bits
01111 = Maximum frequency
• •
• •
00001
00000 = Center frequency. Oscillator module is running at the calibrated frequency.
11111
• •
• •
10000 = Minimum frequency

Note 1: Available only in certain oscillator configurations; otherwise, this bit is unavailable and reads as ‘0’. See **Section 2.6.4 “PLL in INTOSC Modes”** for details.

2.6.5.1 Compensating with the EUSART

An adjustment may be required when the EUSART begins to generate framing errors or receives data with errors while in Asynchronous mode. Framing errors indicate that the device clock frequency is too high; to adjust for this, decrement the value in OSCTUNE to reduce the clock frequency. On the other hand, errors in data may suggest that the clock speed is too low; to compensate, increment OSCTUNE to increase the clock frequency.

2.6.5.2 Compensating with the Timers

This technique compares device clock speed to some reference clock. Two timers may be used; one timer is clocked by the peripheral clock, while the other is clocked by a fixed reference source, such as the Timer1 oscillator.

Both timers are cleared, but the timer clocked by the reference generates interrupts. When an interrupt occurs, the internally clocked timer is read and both timers are cleared. If the internally clocked timer value is greater than expected, then the internal oscillator block is running too fast. To adjust for this, decrement the OSCTUNE register.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

2.7 Clock Sources and Oscillator Switching

Like previous PIC18 devices, the PIC18F1230/1330 family includes a feature that allows the device clock source to be switched from the main oscillator to an alternate low-frequency clock source. PIC18F1230/1330 devices offer two alternate clock sources. When an alternate clock source is enabled, the various power-managed operating modes are available.

Essentially, there are three clock sources for these devices:

- Primary oscillators
- Secondary oscillators
- Internal oscillator block

The **primary oscillators** include the External Crystal and Resonator modes, the External RC modes, the External Clock modes and the internal oscillator block. The particular mode is defined by the FOSC3:FOSC0 Configuration bits. The details of these modes are covered earlier in this chapter.

The **secondary oscillators** are those external sources not connected to the OSC1 or OSC2 pins. These sources may continue to operate even after the controller is placed in a power-managed mode.

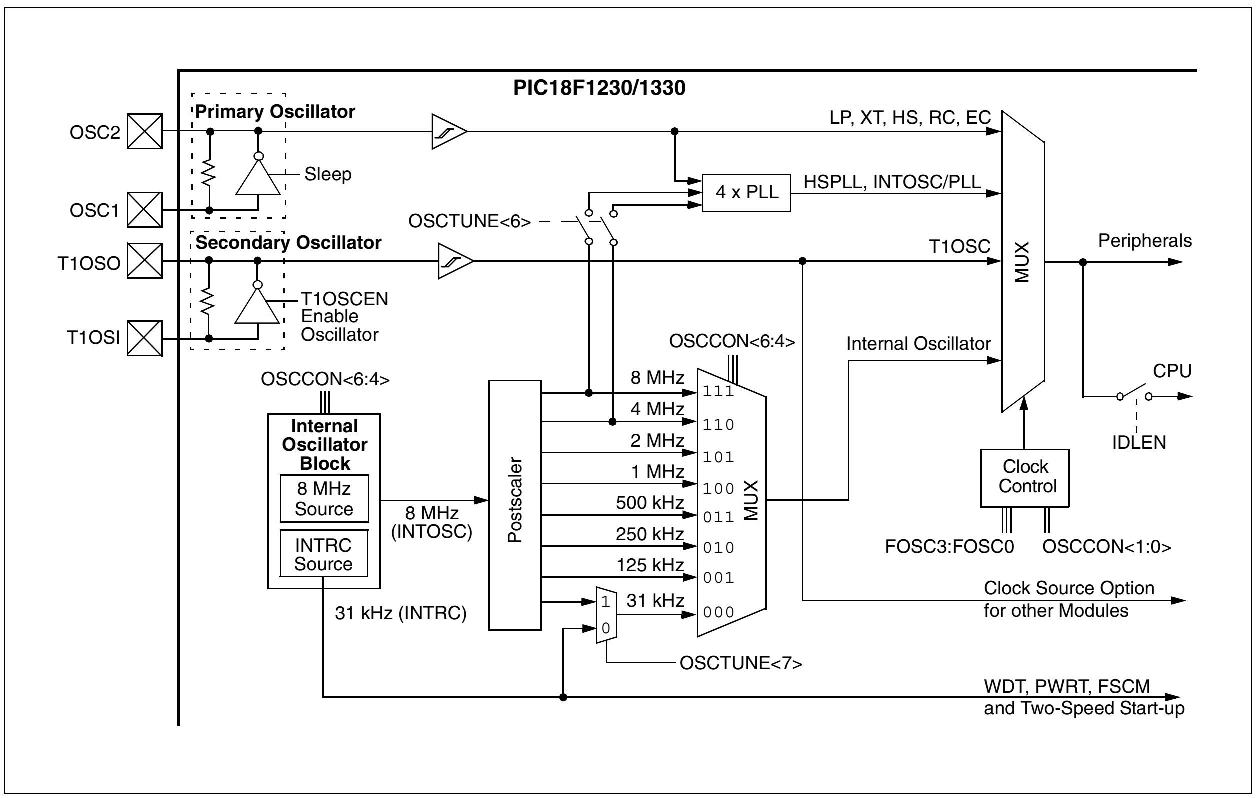
PIC18F1230/1330 devices offer the Timer1 oscillator as a secondary oscillator. This oscillator, in all power-managed modes, is often the time base for functions such as a real-time clock.

Most often, a 32.768 kHz watch crystal is connected between the T1OSO/T1CKI and T1OSI pins. Like the LP mode oscillator circuit, loading capacitors are also connected from each pin to ground. The Timer1 oscillator is discussed in greater detail in **Section 12.2 "Timer1 Oscillator"**.

In addition to being a primary clock source, the **internal oscillator block** is available as a power-managed mode clock source. The INTRC source is also used as the clock source for several special features, such as the WDT and Fail-Safe Clock Monitor.

The clock sources for the PIC18F1230/1330 devices are shown in Figure 2-8. See **Section 19.0 "Special Features of the CPU"** for Configuration register details.

FIGURE 2-8: PIC18F1230/1330 CLOCK DIAGRAM



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

2.7.1 OSCILLATOR CONTROL REGISTER

The OSCCON register (Register 2-2) controls several aspects of the device clock's operation, both in full power operation and in power-managed modes.

The System Clock Select bits, SCS1:SCS0, select the clock source. The available clock sources are the primary clock (defined by the FOSC3:FOSC0 Configuration bits), the secondary clock (Timer1 oscillator) and the internal oscillator block. The clock source changes immediately after one or more of the bits is written to, following a brief clock transition interval. The SCS bits are cleared on all forms of Reset.

The Internal Oscillator Frequency Select bits (IRCF2:IRCF0) select the frequency output of the internal oscillator block to drive the device clock. The choices are the INTRC source, the INTOSC source (8 MHz) or one of the frequencies derived from the INTOSC postscaler (31.25 kHz to 4 MHz). If the internal oscillator block is supplying the device clock, changing the states of these bits will have an immediate change on the internal oscillator's output. On device Resets, the default output frequency of the internal oscillator block is set at 1 MHz.

When a nominal output frequency of 31 kHz is selected (IRCF2:IRCF0 = `000`), users may choose which internal oscillator acts as the source. This is done with the INTSRC bit in the OSCTUNE register (OSCTUNE<7>). Setting this bit selects INTOSC as a 31.25 kHz clock source by enabling the divide-by-256 output of the INTOSC postscaler. Clearing INTSRC selects INTRC (nominally 31 kHz) as the clock source.

This option allows users to select the tunable and more precise INTOSC as a clock source, while maintaining power savings with a very low clock speed. Regardless of the setting of INTSRC, INTRC always remains the clock source for features such as the Watchdog Timer and the Fail-Safe Clock Monitor.

The OSTS, IOFS and T1RUN bits indicate which clock source is currently providing the device clock. The OSTS bit indicates that the Oscillator Start-up Timer has timed out and the primary clock is providing the device clock in primary clock modes. The IOFS bit indicates when the internal oscillator block has stabilized and is providing the device clock in RC Clock modes. The T1RUN bit (T1CON<6>) indicates when the Timer1 oscillator is providing the device clock in secondary clock modes. In power-managed modes, only one of these three bits will be set at any time. If none of these bits are set, the INTRC is providing the clock or the internal oscillator block has just started and is not yet stable.

The IDLEN bit determines if the device goes into Sleep mode or one of the Idle modes when the `SLEEP` instruction is executed.

The use of the flag and control bits in the OSCCON register is discussed in more detail in **Section 3.0 "Power-Managed Modes"**.

> **Note 1:** The Timer1 oscillator must be enabled to select the secondary clock source. The Timer1 oscillator is enabled by setting the T1OSCEN bit in the Timer1 Control register (T1CON<3>). If the Timer1 oscillator is not enabled, then any attempt to select a secondary clock source will be ignored.
>
> **2:** It is recommended that the Timer1 oscillator be operating and stable before selecting the secondary clock source or a very long delay may occur while the Timer1 oscillator starts.

2.7.2 OSCILLATOR TRANSITIONS

PIC18F1230/1330 devices contain circuitry to prevent clock "glitches" when switching between clock sources. A short pause in the device clock occurs during the clock switch. The length of this pause is the sum of two cycles of the old clock source and three to four cycles of the new clock source. This formula assumes that the new clock source is stable.

Clock transitions are discussed in greater detail in **Section 3.1.2 "Entering Power-Managed Modes"**.

REGISTER 2-2: OSCCON: OSCILLATOR CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0	R(1)	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
IDLEN	IRCF2	IRCF1	IRCF0	OSTS	IOFS	SCS1	SCS0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **IDLEN:** Idle Enable bit
1 = Device enters Idle mode on `SLEEP` instruction
0 = Device enters Sleep mode on `SLEEP` instruction

bit 6-4 **IRCF2:IRCF0:** Internal Oscillator Frequency Select bits
111 = 8 MHz (INTOSC drives clock directly)
110 = 4 MHz
101 = 2 MHz
100 = 1 MHz(3)
011 = 500 kHz
010 = 250 kHz
001 = 125 kHz
000 = 31 kHz (from either INTOSC/256 or INTRC directly)(2)

bit 3 **OSTS:** Oscillator Start-up Time-out Status bit(1)
1 = Oscillator Start-up Timer time-out has expired; primary oscillator is running
0 = Oscillator Start-up Timer time-out is running; primary oscillator is not ready

bit 2 **IOFS:** INTOSC Frequency Stable bit
1 = INTOSC frequency is stable
0 = INTOSC frequency is not stable

bit 1-0 **SCS1:SCS0:** System Clock Select bits
1x = Internal oscillator block
01 = Secondary (Timer1) oscillator
00 = Primary oscillator

Note 1: Reset state depends on state of the IESO Configuration bit.
2: Source selected by the INTSRC bit (OSCTUNE<7>), see text.
3: Default output frequency of INTOSC on Reset.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

2.8 Effects of Power-Managed Modes on the Various Clock Sources

When PRI_IDLE mode is selected, the designated primary oscillator continues to run without interruption. For all other power-managed modes, the oscillator using the OSC1 pin is disabled. The OSC1 pin (and OSC2 pin, if used by the oscillator) will stop oscillating.

In Secondary Clock modes (SEC_RUN and SEC_IDLE), the Timer1 oscillator is operating and providing the device clock. The Timer1 oscillator may also run in all power-managed modes if required to clock Timer1 or Timer3.

In Internal Oscillator modes (RC_RUN and RC_IDLE), the internal oscillator block provides the device clock source. The 31 kHz INTRC output can be used directly to provide the clock and may be enabled to support various special features, regardless of the power-managed mode (see **Section 19.2 "Watchdog Timer (WDT)"**, **Section 19.3 "Two-Speed Start-up"** and **Section 19.4 "Fail-Safe Clock Monitor"** for more information on WDT, Fail-Safe Clock Monitor and Two-Speed Start-up). The INTOSC output at 8 MHz may be used directly to clock the device or may be divided down by the postscaler. The INTOSC output is disabled if the clock is provided directly from the INTRC output.

If the Sleep mode is selected, all clock sources are stopped. Since all the transistor switching currents have been stopped, Sleep mode achieves the lowest current consumption of the device (only leakage currents).

Enabling any on-chip feature that will operate during Sleep will increase the current consumed during Sleep. The INTRC is required to support WDT operation. The Timer1 oscillator may be operating to support a real-time clock. Other features may be operating that do not require a device clock source (i.e., INTn pins and others). Peripherals that may add significant current consumption are listed in **Section 22.0 "Electrical Characteristics"**.

2.9 Power-up Delays

Power-up delays are controlled by two timers, so that no external Reset circuitry is required for most applications. The delays ensure that the device is kept in Reset until the device power supply is stable under normal circumstances and the primary clock is operating and stable. For additional information on power-up delays, see **Section 4.5 "Device Reset Timers"**.

The first timer is the Power-up Timer (PWRT), which provides a fixed delay on power-up (parameter 33, Table 22-10). It is enabled by clearing (= 0) the $\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$ Configuration bit.

The second timer is the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST), intended to keep the chip in Reset until the crystal oscillator is stable (LP, XT and HS modes). The OST does this by counting 1024 oscillator cycles before allowing the oscillator to clock the device.

When the HSPLL Oscillator mode is selected, the device is kept in Reset for an additional 2 ms, following the HS mode OST delay, so the PLL can lock to the incoming clock frequency.

There is a delay of interval T_{CSD} (parameter 38, Table 22-10), following POR, while the controller becomes ready to execute instructions. This delay runs concurrently with any other delays. This may be the only delay that occurs when any of the EC, RC or INTIO modes are used as the primary clock source.

TABLE 2-3: OSC1 AND OSC2 PIN STATES IN SLEEP MODE

Oscillator Mode	OSC1 Pin	OSC2 Pin
RC, INTIO1	Floating, external resistor should pull high	At logic low (clock/4 output)
RCIO	Floating, external resistor should pull high	Configured as PORTA, bit 6
INTIO2	Configured as PORTA, bit 7	Configured as PORTA, bit 6
ECIO	Floating, pulled by external clock	Configured as PORTA, bit 6
EC	Floating, pulled by external clock	At logic low (clock/4 output)
LP, XT and HS	Feedback inverter disabled at quiescent voltage level	Feedback inverter disabled at quiescent voltage level

Note: See Table 4-2 in **Section 4.0 "Reset"** for time-outs due to Sleep and $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset.

NOTES:

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

3.0 POWER-MANAGED MODES

PIC18F1230/1330 devices offer a total of seven operating modes for more efficient power management. These modes provide a variety of options for selective power conservation in applications where resources may be limited (i.e., battery-powered devices).

There are three categories of power-managed modes:

- Run modes
- Idle modes
- Sleep mode

These categories define which portions of the device are clocked and sometimes, what speed. The Run and Idle modes may use any of the three available clock sources (primary, secondary or internal oscillator block); the Sleep mode does not use a clock source.

The power-managed modes include several power-saving features offered on previous PICmicro® devices. One is the clock switching feature, offered in other PIC18 devices, allowing the controller to use the Timer1 oscillator in place of the primary oscillator. Also included is the Sleep mode, offered by all PICmicro devices, where all device clocks are stopped.

3.1 Selecting Power-Managed Modes

Selecting a power-managed mode requires two decisions: if the CPU is to be clocked or not and the selection of a clock source. The IDLEN bit (OSCCON<7>) controls CPU clocking, while the SCS1:SCS0 bits (OSCCON<1:0>) select the clock source. The individual modes, bit settings, clock sources and affected modules are summarized in Table 3-1.

3.1.1 CLOCK SOURCES

The SCS1:SCS0 bits allow the selection of one of three clock sources for power-managed modes. They are:

- the primary clock, as defined by the FOSC3:FOSC0 Configuration bits
- the secondary clock (the Timer1 oscillator)
- the internal oscillator block (for RC modes)

3.1.2 ENTERING POWER-MANAGED MODES

Switching from one power-managed mode to another begins by loading the OSCCON register. The SCS1:SCS0 bits select the clock source and determine which Run or Idle mode is to be used. Changing these bits causes an immediate switch to the new clock source, assuming that it is running. The switch may also be subject to clock transition delays. These are discussed in **Section 3.1.3 "Clock Transitions and Status Indicators"** and subsequent sections.

Entry to the power-managed Idle or Sleep modes is triggered by the execution of a `SLEEP` instruction. The actual mode that results depends on the status of the IDLEN bit.

Depending on the current mode and the mode being switched to, a change to a power-managed mode does not always require setting all of these bits. Many transitions may be done by changing the oscillator select bits, or changing the IDLEN bit, prior to issuing a `SLEEP` instruction. If the IDLEN bit is already configured correctly, it may only be necessary to perform a `SLEEP` instruction to switch to the desired mode.

TABLE 3-1: POWER-MANAGED MODES

Mode	OSCCON Bits		Module Clocking		Available Clock and Oscillator Source
	IDLEN<7>(1)	SCS1:SCS0 <1:0>	CPU	Peripherals	
Sleep	0	N/A	Off	Off	None – All clocks are disabled
PRI_RUN	N/A	00	Clocked	Clocked	Primary – LP, XT, HS, HSPLL, RC, EC and Internal Oscillator Block(2). This is the normal full power execution mode.
SEC_RUN	N/A	01	Clocked	Clocked	Secondary – Timer1 Oscillator
RC_RUN	N/A	1x	Clocked	Clocked	Internal Oscillator Block(2)
PRI_IDLE	1	00	Off	Clocked	Primary – LP, XT, HS, HSPLL, RC, EC
SEC_IDLE	1	01	Off	Clocked	Secondary – Timer1 Oscillator
RC_IDLE	1	1x	Off	Clocked	Internal Oscillator Block(2)

Note 1: IDLEN reflects its value when the `SLEEP` instruction is executed.

2: Includes INTOSC and INTOSC postscaler, as well as the INTRC source.

3.1.3 CLOCK TRANSITIONS AND STATUS INDICATORS

The length of the transition between clock sources is the sum of two cycles of the old clock source and three to four cycles of the new clock source. This formula assumes that the new clock source is stable.

Three bits indicate the current clock source and its status. They are:

- OSTS (OSCCON<3>)
- IOFS (OSCCON<2>)
- T1RUN (T1CON<6>)

In general, only one of these bits will be set while in a given power-managed mode. When the OSTS bit is set, the primary clock is providing the device clock. When the IOFS bit is set, the INTOSC output is providing a stable 8 MHz clock source to a divider that actually drives the device clock. When the T1RUN bit is set, the Timer1 oscillator is providing the clock. If none of these bits are set, then either the INTRC clock source is clocking the device, or the INTOSC source is not yet stable.

If the internal oscillator block is configured as the primary clock source by the FOSC3:FOSC0 Configuration bits, then both the OSTS and IOFS bits may be set when in PRI_RUN or PRI_IDLE modes. This indicates that the primary clock (INTOSC output) is generating a stable 8 MHz output. Entering another power-managed RC mode at the same frequency would clear the OSTS bit.

Note 1: Caution should be used when modifying a single IRCF bit. If V_{DD} is less than 3V, it is possible to select a higher clock speed than is supported by the low V_{DD}. Improper device operation may result if the V_{DD}/F_{OSC} specifications are violated.

2: Executing a `SLEEP` instruction does not necessarily place the device into Sleep mode. It acts as the trigger to place the controller into either the Sleep mode or one of the Idle modes, depending on the setting of the IDLEN bit.

3.1.4 MULTIPLE SLEEP COMMANDS

The power-managed mode that is invoked with the `SLEEP` instruction is determined by the setting of the IDLEN bit at the time the instruction is executed. If another `SLEEP` instruction is executed, the device will enter the power-managed mode specified by IDLEN at that time. If IDLEN has changed, the device will enter the new power-managed mode specified by the new setting.

3.2 Run Modes

In the Run modes, clocks to both the core and peripherals are active. The difference between these modes is the clock source.

3.2.1 PRI_RUN MODE

The PRI_RUN mode is the normal, full power execution mode of the microcontroller. This is also the default mode upon a device Reset unless Two-Speed Start-up is enabled (see **Section 19.3 "Two-Speed Start-up"** for details). In this mode, the OSTS bit is set. The IOFS bit may be set if the internal oscillator block is the primary clock source (see **Section 2.7.1 "Oscillator Control Register"**).

3.2.2 SEC_RUN MODE

The SEC_RUN mode is the compatible mode to the "clock switching" feature offered in other PIC18 devices. In this mode, the CPU and peripherals are clocked from the Timer1 oscillator. This gives users the option of lower power consumption while still using a high accuracy clock source.

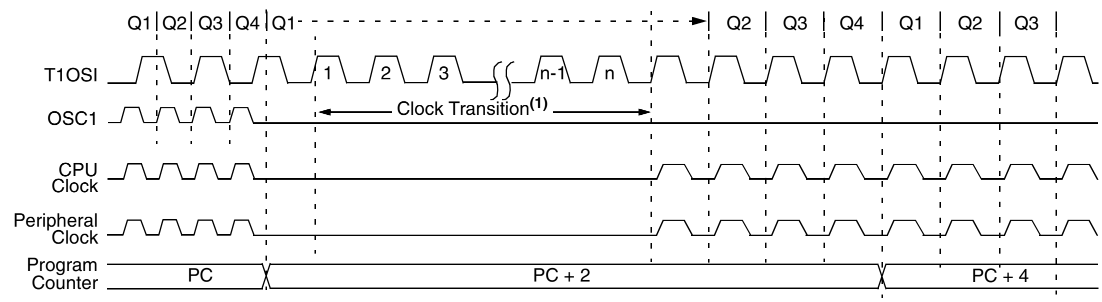
SEC_RUN mode is entered by setting the SCS1:SCS0 bits to '`01`'. The device clock source is switched to the Timer1 oscillator (see Figure 3-1), the primary oscillator is shut down, the T1RUN bit (T1CON<6>) is set and the OSTS bit is cleared.

Note: The Timer1 oscillator should already be running prior to entering SEC_RUN mode. If the T1OSCEN bit is not set when the SCS1:SCS0 bits are set to '`01`', entry to SEC_RUN mode will not occur. If the Timer1 oscillator is enabled, but not yet running, device clocks will be delayed until the oscillator has started. In such situations, initial oscillator operation is far from stable and unpredictable operation may result.

On transitions from SEC_RUN to PRI_RUN mode, the peripherals and CPU continue to be clocked from the Timer1 oscillator while the primary clock is started. When the primary clock becomes ready, a clock switch back to the primary clock occurs (see Figure 3-2). When the clock switch is complete, the T1RUN bit is cleared, the OSTS bit is set and the primary clock is providing the clock. The IDLEN and SCS bits are not affected by the wake-up; the Timer1 oscillator continues to run.

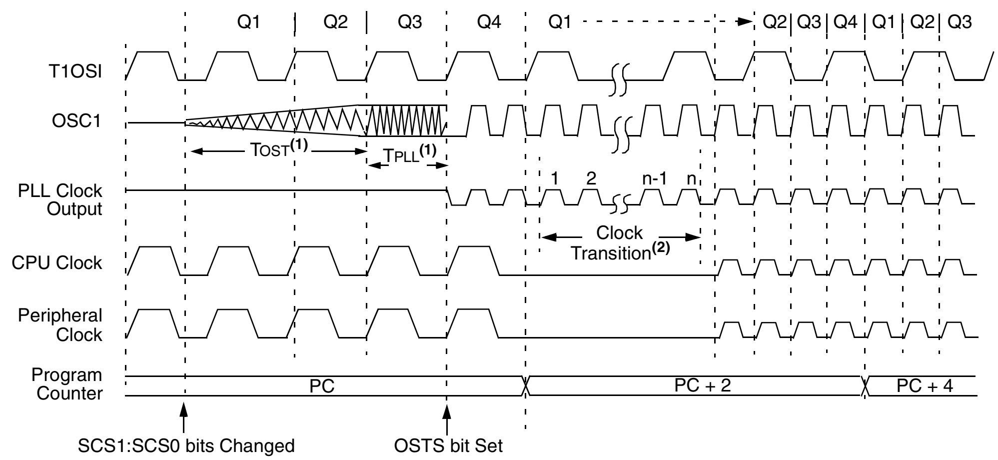
© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 3-1: TRANSITION TIMING FOR ENTRY TO SEC_RUN MODE



Note 1: Clock transition typically occurs within 2-4 TOSC.

FIGURE 3-2: TRANSITION TIMING FROM SEC_RUN MODE TO PRI_RUN MODE (HSPLL)



Note 1: TOST = 1024 TOSC; TPLL = 2 ms (approx). These intervals are not shown to scale.
2: Clock transition typically occurs within 2-4 TOSC.

3.2.3 RC_RUN MODE

In RC_RUN mode, the CPU and peripherals are clocked from the internal oscillator block using the INTOSC multiplexer. In this mode, the primary clock is shut down. When using the INTRC source, this mode provides the best power conservation of all the Run modes, while still executing code. It works well for user applications which are not highly timing sensitive or do not require high-speed clocks at all times.

If the primary clock source is the internal oscillator block (either INTRC or INTOSC), there are no distinguishable differences between PRI_RUN and RC_RUN modes during execution. However, a clock switch delay will occur during entry to and exit from RC_RUN mode. Therefore, if the primary clock source is the internal oscillator block, the use of RC_RUN mode is not recommended.

This mode is entered by setting the SCS1 bit to '1'. Although it is ignored, it is recommended that the SCS0 bit also be cleared; this is to maintain software compatibility with future devices. When the clock source is switched to the INTOSC multiplexer (see Figure 3-3), the primary oscillator is shut down and the OSTS bit is cleared. The IRCF bits may be modified at any time to immediately change the clock speed.

Note:	Caution should be used when modifying a single IRCF bit. If VDD is less than 3V, it is possible to select a higher clock speed than is supported by the low VDD. Improper device operation may result if the VDD/FOSC specifications are violated.

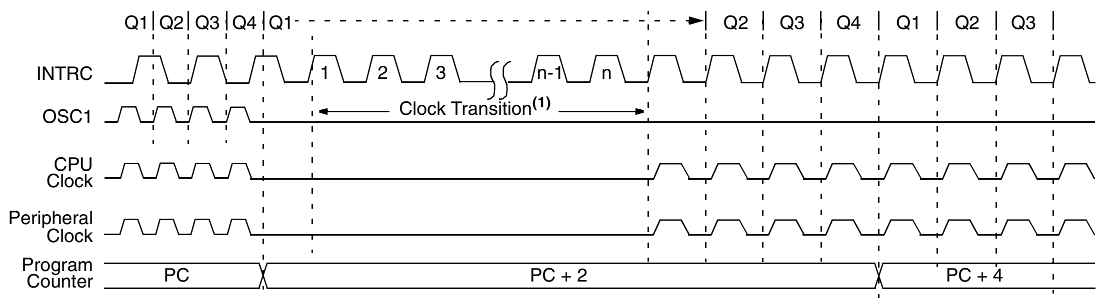
If the IRCF bits and the INTSRC bit are all clear, the INTOSC output is not enabled and the IOFS bit will remain clear; there will be no indication of the current clock source. The INTRC source is providing the device clocks.

If the IRCF bits are changed from all clear (thus, enabling the INTOSC output), or if INTSRC is set, the IOFS bit becomes set after the INTOSC output becomes stable. Clocks to the device continue while the INTOSC source stabilizes after an interval of TIOBST.

If the IRCF bits were previously at a non-zero value, or if INTSRC was set before setting SCS1 and the INTOSC source was already stable, the IOFS bit will remain set.

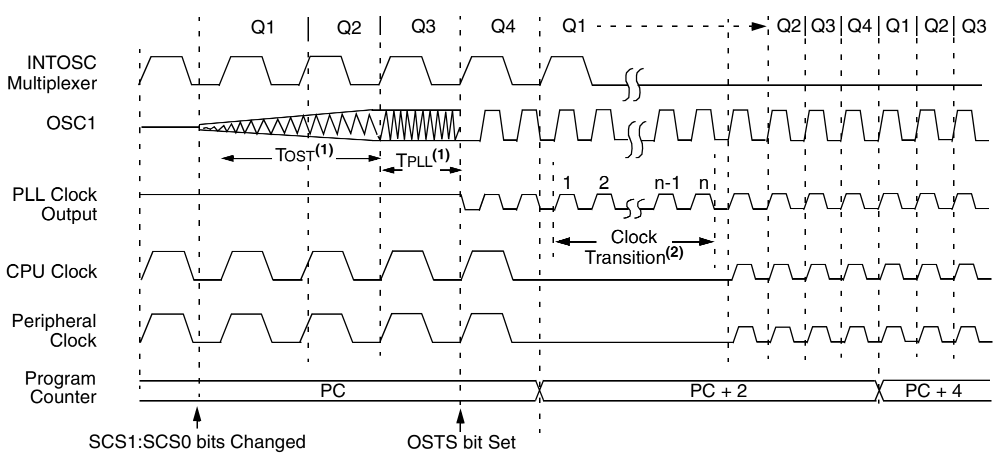
On transitions from RC_RUN mode to PRI_RUN mode, the device continues to be clocked from the INTOSC multiplexer while the primary clock is started. When the primary clock becomes ready, a clock switch to the primary clock occurs (see Figure 3-4). When the clock switch is complete, the IOFS bit is cleared, the OSTS bit is set and the primary clock is providing the device clock. The IDLEN and SCS bits are not affected by the switch. The INTRC source will continue to run if either the WDT or the Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is enabled.

FIGURE 3-3: TRANSITION TIMING TO RC_RUN MODE



Note 1: Clock transition typically occurs within 2-4 TOSC.

FIGURE 3-4: TRANSITION TIMING FROM RC_RUN MODE TO PRI_RUN MODE



Note 1: TOST = 1024 TOSC; TPLL = 2 ms (approx). These intervals are not shown to scale.

2: Clock transition typically occurs within 2-4 TOSC.

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

3.3 Sleep Mode

The power-managed Sleep mode in the PIC18F1230/1330 devices is identical to the legacy Sleep mode offered in all other PICmicro devices. It is entered by clearing the IDLEN bit (the default state on device Reset) and executing the `SLEEP` instruction. This shuts down the selected oscillator (Figure 3-5). All clock source status bits are cleared.

Entering the Sleep mode from any other mode does not require a clock switch. This is because no clocks are needed once the controller has entered Sleep. If the WDT is selected, the INTRC source will continue to operate. If the Timer1 oscillator is enabled, it will also continue to run.

When a wake event occurs in Sleep mode (by interrupt, Reset or WDT time-out), the device will not be clocked until the clock source selected by the SCS1:SCS0 bits becomes ready (see Figure 3-6), or it will be clocked from the internal oscillator block if either the Two-Speed Start-up or the Fail-Safe Clock Monitor are enabled (see **Section 19.0 "Special Features of the CPU"**). In either case, the OSTS bit is set when the primary clock is providing the device clocks. The IDLEN and SCS bits are not affected by the wake-up.

3.4 Idle Modes

The Idle modes allow the controller's CPU to be selectively shut down while the peripherals continue to operate. Selecting a particular Idle mode allows users to further manage power consumption.

If the IDLEN bit is set to a '`1`' when a `SLEEP` instruction is executed, the peripherals will be clocked from the clock source selected using the SCS1:SCS0 bits; however, the CPU will not be clocked. The clock source status bits are not affected. Setting IDLEN and executing a `SLEEP` instruction provides a quick method of switching from a given Run mode to its corresponding Idle mode.

If the WDT is selected, the INTRC source will continue to operate. If the Timer1 oscillator is enabled, it will also continue to run.

Since the CPU is not executing instructions, the only exits from any of the Idle modes are by interrupt, WDT time-out or a Reset. When a wake event occurs, CPU execution is delayed by an interval of T_{CSD} (parameter 38, Table 22-10) while it becomes ready to execute code. When the CPU begins executing code, it resumes with the same clock source for the current Idle mode. For example, when waking from RC_IDLE mode, the internal oscillator block will clock the CPU and peripherals (in other words, RC_RUN mode). The IDLEN and SCS bits are not affected by the wake-up.

While in any Idle mode or the Sleep mode, a WDT time-out will result in a WDT wake-up to the Run mode currently specified by the SCS1:SCS0 bits.

FIGURE 3-5: TRANSITION TIMING FOR ENTRY TO SLEEP MODE

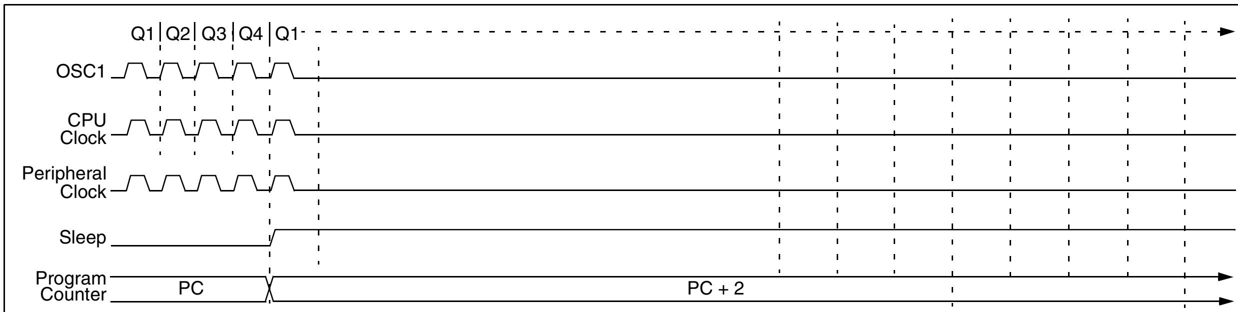
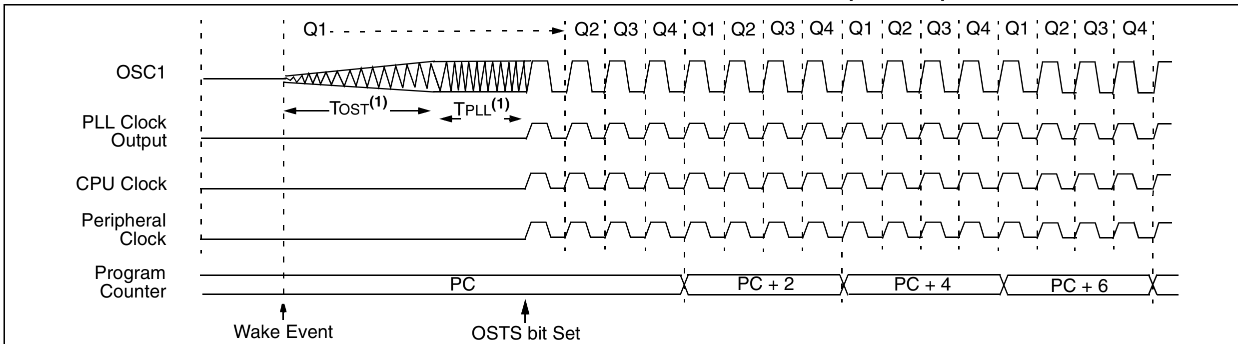


FIGURE 3-6: TRANSITION TIMING FOR WAKE FROM SLEEP (HSPLL)



Note 1: T_{OST} = 1024 T_{OSC}; T_{PLL} = 2 ms (approx). These intervals are not shown to scale.

3.4.1 PRI_IDLE MODE

This mode is unique among the three low-power Idle modes, in that it does not disable the primary device clock. For timing sensitive applications, this allows for the fastest resumption of device operation with its more accurate primary clock source, since the clock source does not have to "warm-up" or transition from another oscillator.

PRI_IDLE mode is entered from PRI_RUN mode by setting the IDLEN bit and executing a `SLEEP` instruction. If the device is in another Run mode, set IDLEN first, then clear the SCS bits and execute `SLEEP`. Although the CPU is disabled, the peripherals continue to be clocked from the primary clock source specified by the FOSC3:FOSC0 Configuration bits. The OSTS bit remains set (see Figure 3-7).

When a wake event occurs, the CPU is clocked from the primary clock source. A delay of interval T_{CSD} is required between the wake event and when code execution starts. This is required to allow the CPU to become ready to execute instructions. After the wake-up, the OSTS bit remains set. The IDLEN and SCS bits are not affected by the wake-up (see Figure 3-8).

3.4.2 SEC_IDLE MODE

In SEC_IDLE mode, the CPU is disabled but the peripherals continue to be clocked from the Timer1 oscillator. This mode is entered from SEC_RUN by setting the IDLEN bit and executing a `SLEEP` instruction. If the device is in another Run mode, set the IDLEN bit first, then set the SCS1:SCS0 bits to '`01`' and execute `SLEEP`. When the clock source is switched to the Timer1 oscillator, the primary oscillator is shut down, the OSTS bit is cleared and the T1RUN bit is set.

When a wake event occurs, the peripherals continue to be clocked from the Timer1 oscillator. After an interval of T_{CSD} following the wake event, the CPU begins executing code being clocked by the Timer1 oscillator. The IDLEN and SCS bits are not affected by the wake-up; the Timer1 oscillator continues to run (see Figure 3-8).

Note:	The Timer1 oscillator should already be running prior to entering SEC_IDLE mode. If the T1OSCEN bit is not set when the `SLEEP` instruction is executed, the `SLEEP` instruction will be ignored and entry to SEC_IDLE mode will not occur. If the Timer1 oscillator is enabled but not yet running, peripheral clocks will be delayed until the oscillator has started. In such situations, initial oscillator operation is far from stable and unpredictable operation may result.

FIGURE 3-7: TRANSITION TIMING FOR ENTRY TO IDLE MODE

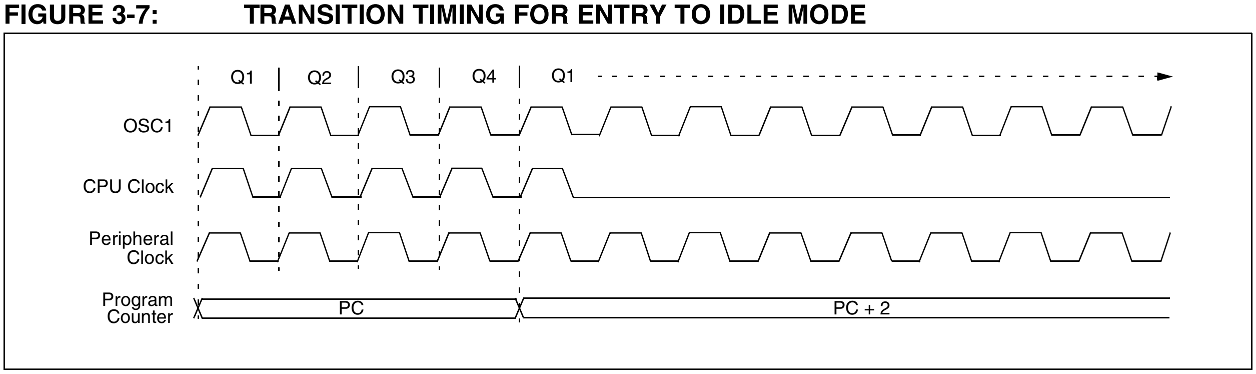
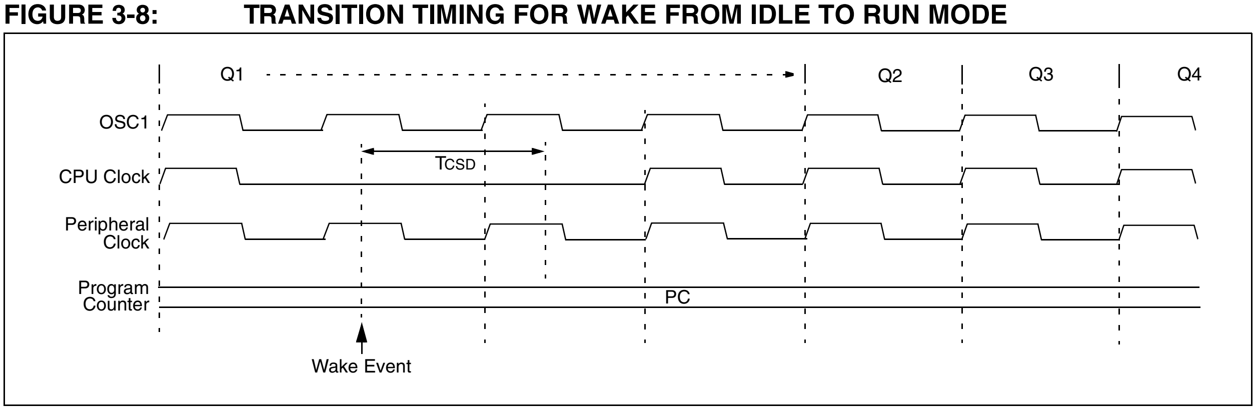


FIGURE 3-8: TRANSITION TIMING FOR WAKE FROM IDLE TO RUN MODE



 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

3.4.3 RC_IDLE MODE

In RC_IDLE mode, the CPU is disabled but the peripherals continue to be clocked from the internal oscillator block using the INTOSC multiplexer. This mode allows for controllable power conservation during Idle periods.

From RC_RUN, this mode is entered by setting the IDLEN bit and executing a `SLEEP` instruction. If the device is in another Run mode, first set IDLEN, then set the SCS1 bit and execute `SLEEP`. Although its value is ignored, it is recommended that SCS0 also be cleared; this is to maintain software compatibility with future devices. The INTOSC multiplexer may be used to select a higher clock frequency by modifying the IRCF bits before executing the `SLEEP` instruction. When the clock source is switched to the INTOSC multiplexer, the primary oscillator is shut down and the OSTS bit is cleared.

If the IRCF bits are set to any non-zero value, or the INTSRC bit is set, the INTOSC output is enabled. The IOFS bit becomes set, after the INTOSC output becomes stable, after an interval of T_{IOBST} (parameter 39, Table 22-10). Clocks to the peripherals continue while the INTOSC source stabilizes. If the IRCF bits were previously at a non-zero value, or INTSRC was set before the `SLEEP` instruction was executed and the INTOSC source was already stable, the IOFS bit will remain set. If the IRCF bits and INTSRC are all clear, the INTOSC output will not be enabled, the IOFS bit will remain clear and there will be no indication of the current clock source.

When a wake event occurs, the peripherals continue to be clocked from the INTOSC multiplexer. After a delay of T_{CSD} following the wake event, the CPU begins executing code being clocked by the INTOSC multiplexer. The IDLEN and SCS bits are not affected by the wake-up. The INTRC source will continue to run if either the WDT or the Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is enabled.

3.5 Exiting Idle and Sleep Modes

An exit from Sleep mode or any of the Idle modes is triggered by an interrupt, a Reset or a WDT time-out. This section discusses the triggers that cause exits from power-managed modes. The clocking subsystem actions are discussed in each of the power-managed modes (see **Section 3.2 "Run Modes", Section 3.3 "Sleep Mode"** and **Section 3.4 "Idle Modes"**).

3.5.1 EXIT BY INTERRUPT

Any of the available interrupt sources can cause the device to exit from an Idle mode or the Sleep mode to a Run mode. To enable this functionality, an interrupt source must be enabled by setting its enable bit in one of the INTCON or PIE registers. The exit sequence is initiated when the corresponding interrupt flag bit is set.

On all exits from Idle or Sleep modes by interrupt, code execution branches to the interrupt vector if the GIE/GIEH bit (INTCON<7>) is set. Otherwise, code execution continues or resumes without branching (see **Section 10.0 "Interrupts"**).

A fixed delay of interval T_{CSD} following the wake event is required when leaving Sleep and Idle modes. This delay is required for the CPU to prepare for execution. Instruction execution resumes on the first clock cycle following this delay.

3.5.2 EXIT BY WDT TIME-OUT

A WDT time-out will cause different actions depending on which power-managed mode the device is in when the time-out occurs.

If the device is not executing code (all Idle modes and Sleep mode), the time-out will result in an exit from the power-managed mode (see **Section 3.2 "Run Modes"** and **Section 3.3 "Sleep Mode"**). If the device is executing code (all Run modes), the time-out will result in a WDT Reset (see **Section 19.2 "Watchdog Timer (WDT)"**).

The WDT timer and postscaler are cleared by executing a `SLEEP` or `CLRWDT` instruction, the loss of a currently selected clock source (if the Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is enabled) and modifying the IRCF bits in the OSCCON register if the internal oscillator block is the device clock source.

3.5.3 EXIT BY RESET

Normally, the device is held in Reset by the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) until the primary clock becomes ready. At that time, the OSTS bit is set and the device begins executing code. If the internal oscillator block is the new clock source, the IOFS bit is set instead.

The exit delay time from Reset to the start of code execution depends on both the clock sources before and after the wake-up and the type of oscillator if the new clock source is the primary clock. Exit delays are summarized in Table 3-2.

Code execution can begin before the primary clock becomes ready. If either the Two-Speed Start-up (see **Section 19.3 "Two-Speed Start-up"**) or Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (see **Section 19.4 "Fail-Safe Clock Monitor"**) is enabled, the device may begin execution as soon as the Reset source has cleared. Execution is clocked by the INTOSC multiplexer driven by the internal oscillator block. Execution is clocked by the internal oscillator block until either the primary clock becomes ready or a power-managed mode is entered before the primary clock becomes ready; the primary clock is then shut down.

3.5.4 EXIT WITHOUT AN OSCILLATOR START-UP DELAY

Certain exits from power-managed modes do not invoke the OST at all. There are two cases:

- PRI_IDLE mode, where the primary clock source is not stopped; and
- the primary clock source is not any of the LP, XT, HS or HSPLL modes.

In these instances, the primary clock source either does not require an oscillator start-up delay since it is already running (PRI_IDLE), or normally does not require an oscillator start-up delay (RC, EC and INTIO Oscillator modes). However, a fixed delay of interval TCSD following the wake event is still required when leaving Sleep and Idle modes to allow the CPU to prepare for execution. Instruction execution resumes on the first clock cycle following this delay.

TABLE 3-2: EXIT DELAY ON WAKE-UP BY RESET FROM SLEEP MODE OR ANY IDLE MODE (BY CLOCK SOURCES)

Clock Source before Wake-up	Clock Source after Wake-up	Exit Delay	Clock Ready Status Bit (OSCCON)
Primary Device Clock (PRI_IDLE mode)	LP, XT, HS	TCSD(1)	OSTS
	HSPLL		
	EC, RC		
	INTOSC(2)		IOFS
T1OSC	LP, XT, HS	TOST(3)	OSTS
	HSPLL	TOST + t_{rc}(3)	
	EC, RC	TCSD(1)	
	INTOSC(1)	TIOBST(4)	IOFS
INTOSC(3)	LP, XT, HS	TOST(4)	OSTS
	HSPLL	TOST + t_{rc}(3)	
	EC, RC	TCSD(1)	
	INTOSC(1)	None	IOFS
None (Sleep mode)	LP, XT, HS	TOST(3)	OSTS
	HSPLL	TOST + t_{rc}(3)	
	EC, RC	TCSD(1)	
	INTOSC(1)	TIOBST(4)	IOFS

Note 1: TCSD (parameter 38) is a required delay when waking from Sleep and all Idle modes and runs concurrently with any other required delays (see **Section 3.4 "Idle Modes"**). On Reset, INTOSC defaults to 1 MHz.

2: Includes both the INTOSC 8 MHz source and postscaler derived frequencies.

3: TOST is the Oscillator Start-up Timer (parameter 32). t_{rc} is the PLL Lock-out Timer (parameter F12); it is also designated as TPLL.

4: Execution continues during TIOBST (parameter 39), the INTOSC stabilization period.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.0 RESET

The PIC18F1230/1330 devices differentiate between various kinds of Reset:

a) Power-on Reset (POR)
b) MCLR Reset during normal operation
c) MCLR Reset during power-managed modes
d) Watchdog Timer (WDT) Reset (during execution)
e) Programmable Brown-out Reset (BOR)
f) RESET Instruction
g) Stack Full Reset
h) Stack Underflow Reset

This section discusses Resets generated by MCLR, POR and BOR and covers the operation of the various start-up timers. Stack Reset events are covered in **Section 5.1.2.4 “Stack Full and Underflow Resets”**. WDT Resets are covered in **Section 19.2 “Watchdog Timer (WDT)”**.

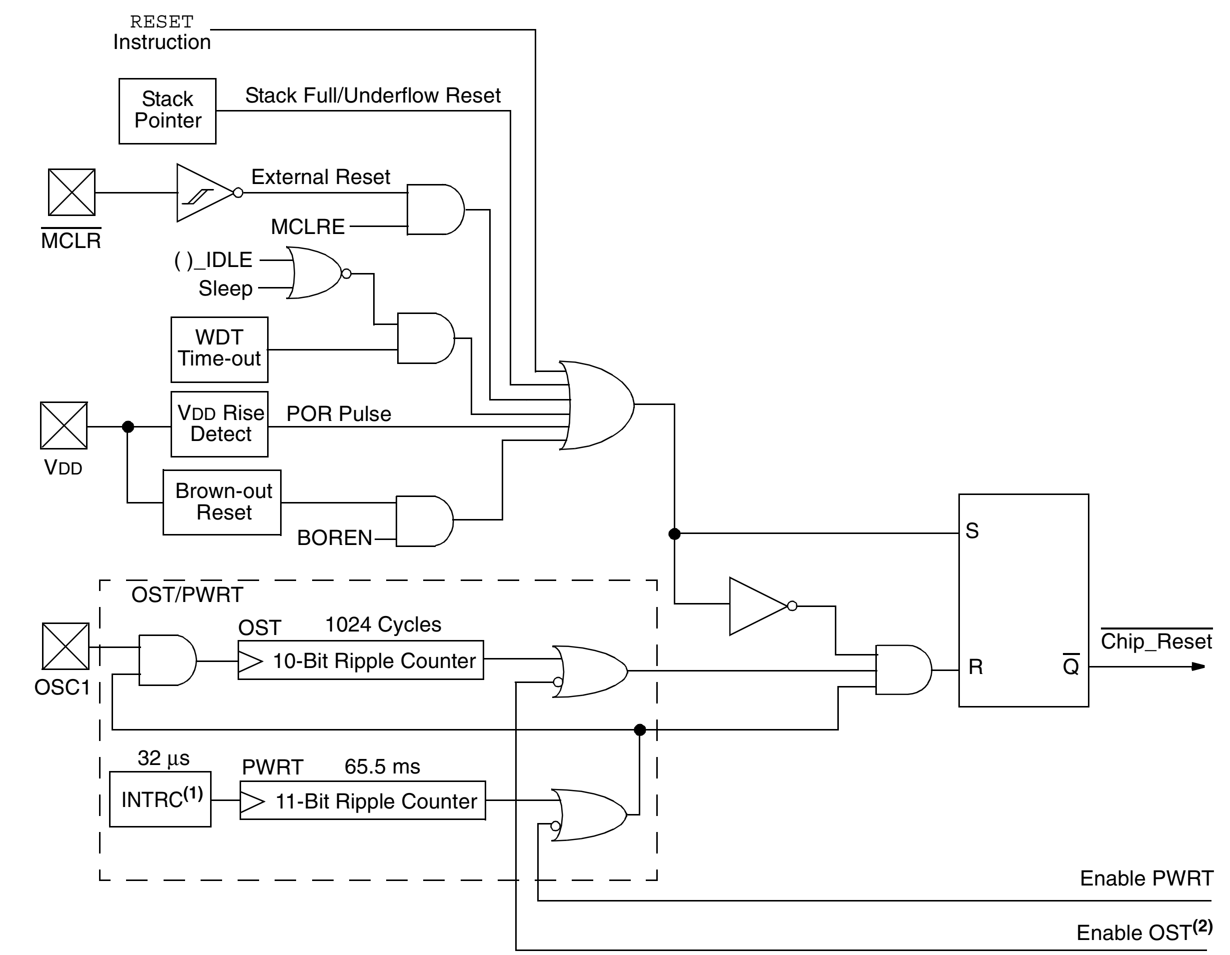
A simplified block diagram of the On-Chip Reset Circuit is shown in Figure 4-1.

4.1 RCON Register

Device Reset events are tracked through the RCON register (Register 4-1). The lower five bits of the register indicate that a specific Reset event has occurred. In most cases, these bits can only be cleared by the event and must be set by the application after the event. The state of these flag bits, taken together, can be read to indicate the type of Reset that just occurred. This is described in more detail in **Section 4.6 “Reset State of Registers”**.

The RCON register also has control bits for setting interrupt priority (IPEN) and software control of the BOR (SBOREN). Interrupt priority is discussed in **Section 10.0 “Interrupts”**. BOR is covered in **Section 4.4 “Brown-out Reset (BOR)”**.

FIGURE 4-1: SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM OF ON-CHIP RESET CIRCUIT



Note 1: This is the INTRC source from the internal oscillator block and is separate from the RC oscillator of the CLKI pin.
2: See Table 4-2 for time-out situations.

REGISTER 4-1: RCON: RESET CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-1(1)	U-0	R/W-1	R-1	R-1	R/W-0(2)	R/W-0
IPEN	SBOREN	—	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **IPEN:** Interrupt Priority Enable bit
1 = Enable priority levels on interrupts
0 = Disable priority levels on interrupts (PIC16CXXX Compatibility mode)

bit 6 **SBOREN:** BOR Software Enable bit(1)
If BOREN1:BOREN0 = 01:
1 = BOR is enabled
0 = BOR is disabled
If BOREN1:BOREN0 = 00, 10 or 11:
Bit is disabled and read as '0'.

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **$\overline{\text{RI}}$:** RESET Instruction Flag bit
1 = The RESET instruction was not executed (set by firmware only)
0 = The RESET instruction was executed causing a device Reset (must be set in software after a Brown-out Reset occurs)

bit 3 **$\overline{\text{TO}}$:** Watchdog Time-out Flag bit
1 = Set by power-up, CLRWDT instruction or SLEEP instruction
0 = A WDT time-out occurred

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{PD}}$:** Power-Down Detection Flag bit
1 = Set by power-up or by the CLRWDT instruction
0 = Set by execution of the SLEEP instruction

bit 1 **$\overline{\text{POR}}$:** Power-on Reset Status bit(2)
1 = A Power-on Reset has not occurred (set by firmware only)
0 = A Power-on Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Power-on Reset occurs)

bit 0 **$\overline{\text{BOR}}$:** Brown-out Reset Status bit
1 = A Brown-out Reset has not occurred (set by firmware only)
0 = A Brown-out Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Brown-out Reset occurs)

Note 1: If SBOREN is enabled, its Reset state is '1'; otherwise, it is '0'.
2: The actual Reset value of $\overline{\text{POR}}$ is determined by the type of device Reset. See the notes following this register and **Section 4.6 "Reset State of Registers"** for additional information.

> **Note 1:** It is recommended that the $\overline{\text{POR}}$ bit be set after a Power-on Reset has been detected so that subsequent Power-on Resets may be detected.
>
> **2:** Brown-out Reset is said to have occurred when $\overline{\text{BOR}}$ is '0' and $\overline{\text{POR}}$ is '1' (assuming that $\overline{\text{POR}}$ was set to '1' by software immediately after a Power-on Reset).

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.2 Master Clear ($\overline{\text{MCLR}}$)

The $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin provides a method for triggering an external Reset of the device. A Reset is generated by holding the pin low. These devices have a noise filter in the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset path which detects and ignores small pulses.

The $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin is not driven low by any internal Resets, including the WDT.

In PIC18F1230/1330 devices, the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ input can be disabled with the MCLRE Configuration bit. When $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ is disabled, the pin becomes a digital input. See **Section 9.1 "PORTA, TRISA and LATA Registers"** for more information.

4.3 Power-on Reset (POR)

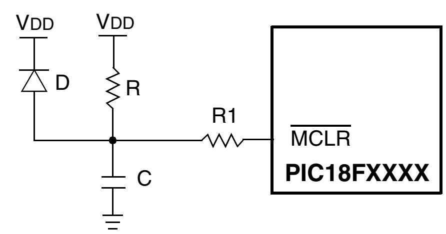
A Power-on Reset pulse is generated on-chip whenever V_{DD} rises above a certain threshold. This allows the device to start in the initialized state when V_{DD} is adequate for operation.

To take advantage of the POR circuitry, tie the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin through a resistor (1 kΩ to 10 kΩ) to V_{DD}. This will eliminate external RC components usually needed to create a Power-on Reset delay. A minimum rise rate for V_{DD} is specified (parameter D004). For a slow rise time, see Figure 4-2.

When the device starts normal operation (i.e., exits the Reset condition), device operating parameters (voltage, frequency, temperature, etc.) must be met to ensure operation. If these conditions are not met, the device must be held in Reset until the operating conditions are met.

POR events are captured by the $\overline{\text{POR}}$ bit (RCON<1>). The state of the bit is set to '0' whenever a Power-on Reset occurs; it does not change for any other Reset event. $\overline{\text{POR}}$ is not reset to '1' by any hardware event. To capture multiple events, the user manually resets the bit to '1' in software following any Power-on Reset.

FIGURE 4-2: EXTERNAL POWER-ON RESET CIRCUIT (FOR SLOW V_{DD} POWER-UP)



Note 1: External Power-on Reset circuit is required only if the V_{DD} power-up slope is too slow. The diode D helps discharge the capacitor quickly when V_{DD} powers down.

2: R < 40 kΩ is recommended to make sure that the voltage drop across R does not violate the device's electrical specification.

3: R1 ≥ 1 kΩ will limit any current flowing into $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ from external capacitor C, in the event of $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/V_{PP} pin breakdown, due to Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) or Electrical Overstress (EOS).

4.4 Brown-out Reset (BOR)

PIC18F1230/1330 devices implement a BOR circuit that provides the user with a number of configuration and power-saving options. The BOR is controlled by the BORV1:BORV0 and BOREN1:BOREN0 Configuration bits. There are a total of four BOR configurations which are summarized in Table 4-1.

The BOR threshold is set by the BORV1:BORV0 bits. If BOR is enabled (any values of BOREN1:BOREN0 except '00'), any drop of V_{DD} below V_{BOR} (parameter D005) for greater than T_{BOR} (parameter 35) will reset the device. A Reset may or may not occur if V_{DD} falls below V_{BOR} for less than T_{BOR}. The chip will remain in Brown-out Reset until V_{DD} rises above V_{BOR}.

If the Power-up Timer is enabled, it will be invoked after V_{DD} rises above V_{BOR}; it then will keep the chip in Reset for an additional time delay, T_{PWRT} (parameter 33). If V_{DD} drops below V_{BOR} while the Power-up Timer is running, the chip will go back into a Brown-out Reset and the Power-up Timer will be initialized. Once V_{DD} rises above V_{BOR}, the Power-up Timer will execute the additional time delay.

BOR and the Power-on Timer (PWRT) are independently configured. Enabling BOR Reset does not automatically enable the PWRT.

4.4.1 SOFTWARE ENABLED BOR

When BOREN1:BOREN0 = `01`, the BOR can be enabled or disabled by the user in software. This is done with the control bit, SBOREN (RCON<6>). Setting SBOREN enables the BOR to function as previously described. Clearing SBOREN disables the BOR entirely. The SBOREN bit operates only in this mode; otherwise it is read as '0'.

Placing the BOR under software control gives the user the additional flexibility of tailoring the application to its environment without having to reprogram the device to change BOR configuration. It also allows the user to tailor device power consumption in software by eliminating the incremental current that the BOR consumes. While the BOR current is typically very small, it may have some impact in low-power applications.

Note:	Even when BOR is under software control, the BOR Reset voltage level is still set by the BORV1:BORV0 Configuration bits. It cannot be changed in software.

4.4.2 DETECTING BOR

When Brown-out Reset is enabled, the $\overline{\text{BOR}}$ bit always resets to '0' on any Brown-out Reset or Power-on Reset event. This makes it difficult to determine if a Brown-out Reset event has occurred just by reading the state of $\overline{\text{BOR}}$ alone. A more reliable method is to simultaneously check the state of both $\overline{\text{POR}}$ and $\overline{\text{BOR}}$. This assumes that the $\overline{\text{POR}}$ bit is reset to '1' in software immediately after any Power-on Reset event. If $\overline{\text{BOR}}$ is '0' while $\overline{\text{POR}}$ is '1', it can be reliably assumed that a Brown-out Reset event has occurred.

4.4.3 DISABLING BOR IN SLEEP MODE

When BOREN1:BOREN0 = `10`, the BOR remains under hardware control and operates as previously described. Whenever the device enters Sleep mode, however, the BOR is automatically disabled. When the device returns to any other operating mode, BOR is automatically re-enabled.

This mode allows for applications to recover from brown-out situations, while actively executing code, when the device requires BOR protection the most. At the same time, it saves additional power in Sleep mode by eliminating the small incremental BOR current.

TABLE 4-1: BOR CONFIGURATIONS

BOR Configuration		Status of SBOREN (RCON<6>)	BOR Operation
BOREN1	**BOREN0**		
0	0	Unavailable	BOR disabled; must be enabled by reprogramming the Configuration bits.
0	1	Available	BOR enabled in software; operation controlled by SBOREN.
1	0	Unavailable	BOR enabled in hardware in Run and Idle modes, disabled during Sleep mode.
1	1	Unavailable	BOR enabled in hardware; must be disabled by reprogramming the Configuration bits.

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.5 Device Reset Timers

PIC18F1230/1330 devices incorporate three separate on-chip timers that help regulate the Power-on Reset process. Their main function is to ensure that the device clock is stable before code is executed. These timers are:

- Power-up Timer (PWRT)
- Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
- PLL Lock Time-out

4.5.1 POWER-UP TIMER (PWRT)

The Power-up Timer (PWRT) of PIC18F1230/1330 devices is an 11-bit counter which uses the INTRC source as the clock input. This yields an approximate time interval of 2048 x 32 μs = 65.6 ms. While the PWRT is counting, the device is held in Reset.

The power-up time delay depends on the INTRC clock and will vary from chip to chip due to temperature and process variation. See DC parameter 33 for details.

The PWRT is enabled by clearing the $\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$ Configuration bit.

4.5.2 OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER (OST)

The Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) provides a 1024 oscillator cycle (from OSC1 input) delay after the PWRT delay is over (parameter 33). This ensures that the crystal oscillator or resonator has started and stabilized.

The OST time-out is invoked only for XT, LP, HS and HSPLL modes and only on Power-on Reset, or on exit from most power-managed modes.

4.5.3 PLL LOCK TIME-OUT

With the PLL enabled in its PLL mode, the time-out sequence following a Power-on Reset is slightly different from other oscillator modes. A separate timer is used to provide a fixed time-out that is sufficient for the PLL to lock to the main oscillator frequency. This PLL lock time-out (T_{PLL}) is typically 2 ms and follows the oscillator start-up time-out.

4.5.4 TIME-OUT SEQUENCE

On power-up, the time-out sequence is as follows:

1. After the POR pulse has cleared, PWRT time-out is invoked (if enabled).
2. Then, the OST is activated.

The total time-out will vary based on oscillator configuration and the status of the PWRT. Figure 4-3, Figure 4-4, Figure 4-5, Figure 4-6 and Figure 4-7 all depict time-out sequences on power-up, with the Power-up Timer enabled and the device operating in HS Oscillator mode. Figures 4-3 through 4-6 also apply to devices operating in XT or LP modes. For devices in RC mode and with the PWRT disabled, there will be no time-out at all.

Since the time-outs occur from the POR pulse, if $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ is kept low long enough, all time-outs will expire. Bringing $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ high will begin execution immediately (Figure 4-5). This is useful for testing purposes or to synchronize more than one PIC18FXXXX device operating in parallel.

TABLE 4-2: TIME-OUT IN VARIOUS SITUATIONS

Oscillator Configuration	Power-up(2) and Brown-out Reset		Exit from Power-Managed Mode
	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$ = 0	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$ = 1	
HSPLL	66 ms(1) + 1024 TOSC + 2 ms(2)	1024 TOSC + 2 ms(2)	1024 TOSC + 2 ms(2)
HS, XT, LP	66 ms(1) + 1024 TOSC	1024 TOSC	1024 TOSC
EC, ECIO	66 ms(1)	—	—
RC, RCIO	66 ms(1)	—	—
INTIO1, INTIO2	66 ms(1)	—	—

Note 1: 66 ms (65.5 ms) is the nominal Power-up Timer (PWRT) delay.
2: 2 ms is the nominal time required for the PLL to lock.

FIGURE 4-3: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ($\overline{MCLR}$ TIED TO VDD, VDD RISE < TPWRT)

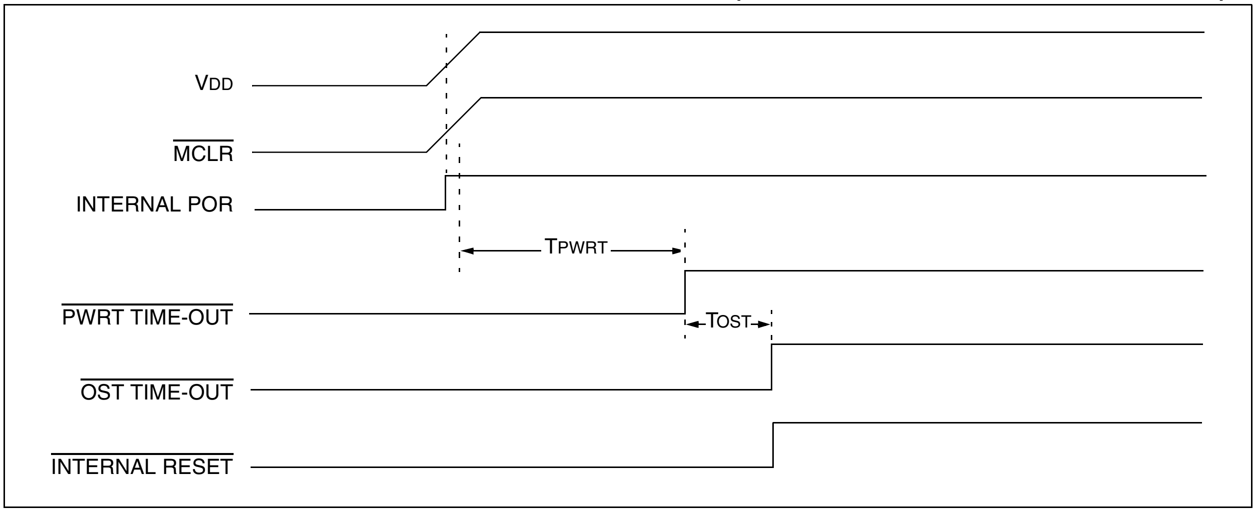


FIGURE 4-4: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ($\overline{MCLR}$ NOT TIED TO VDD): CASE 1

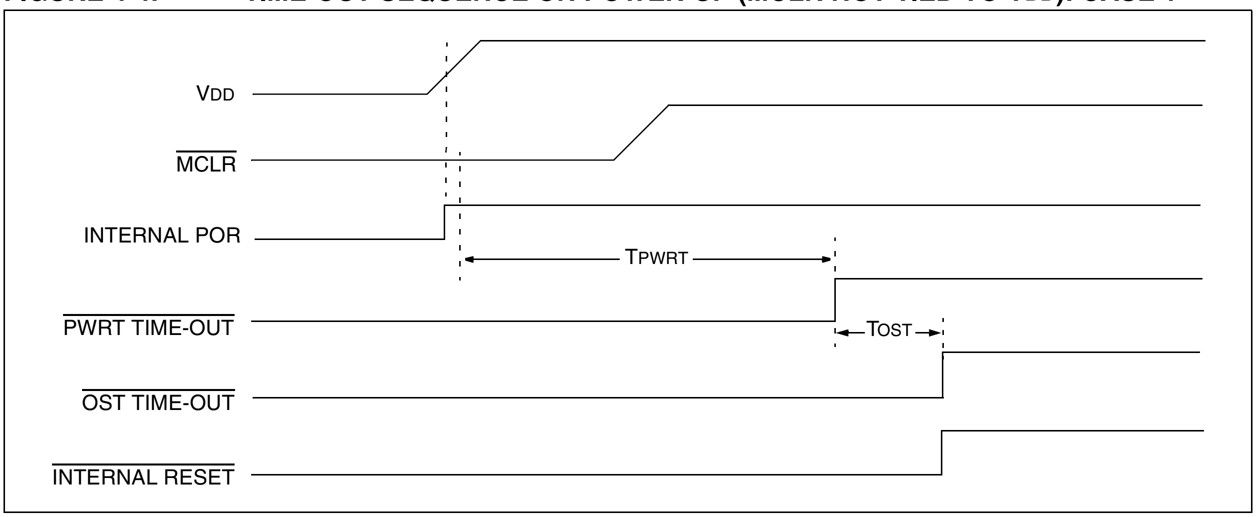
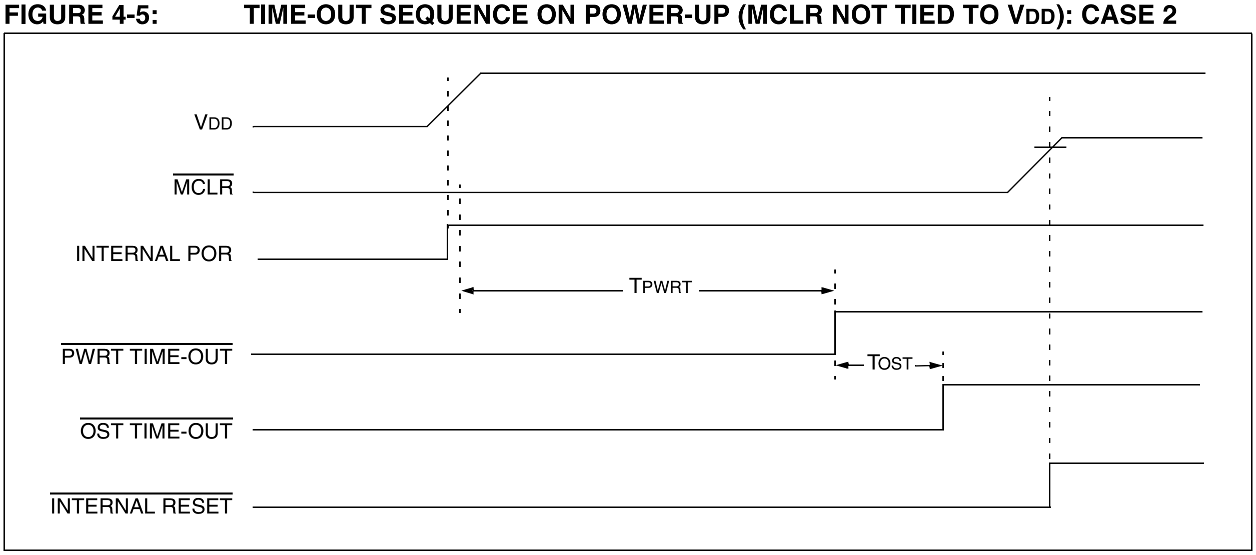


FIGURE 4-5: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ($\overline{MCLR}$ NOT TIED TO VDD): CASE 2



 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 4-6: SLOW RISE TIME ($\overline{MCLR}$ TIED TO VDD, VDD RISE > TPWRT)

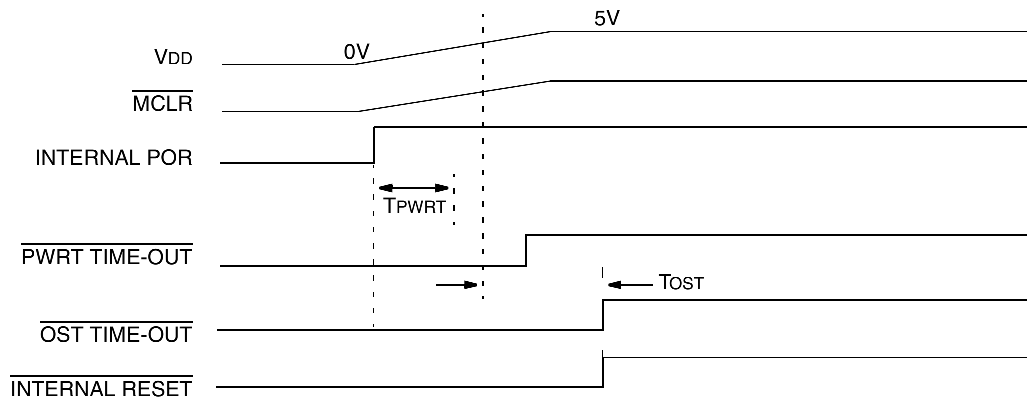
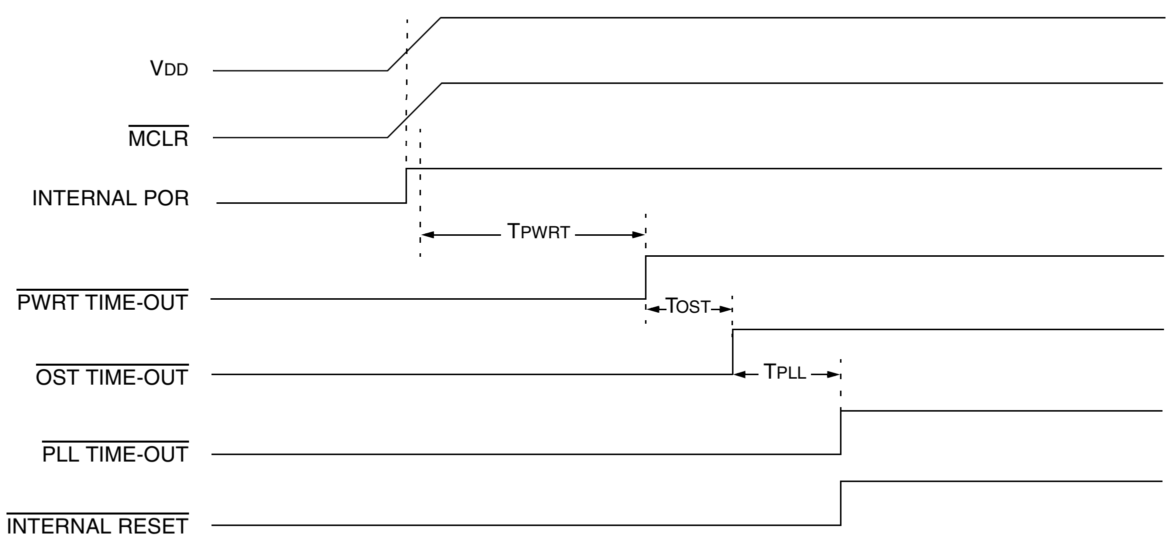


FIGURE 4-7: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POR W/PLL ENABLED ($\overline{MCLR}$ TIED TO VDD)



Note: TOST = 1024 clock cycles.
TPLL ≈ 2 ms max. First three stages of the PWRT timer.

4.6 Reset State of Registers

Most registers are unaffected by a Reset. Their status is unknown on POR and unchanged by all other Resets. The other registers are forced to a “Reset state” depending on the type of Reset that occurred.

Most registers are not affected by a WDT wake-up, since this is viewed as the resumption of normal operation. Status bits from the RCON register, $\overline{RI}$, $\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$, $\overline{POR}$ and $\overline{BOR}$, are set or cleared differently in different Reset situations, as indicated in Table 4-3. These bits are used in software to determine the nature of the Reset.

Table 4-4 describes the Reset states for all of the Special Function Registers. These are categorized by Power-on and Brown-out Resets, Master Clear and WDT Resets and WDT wake-ups.

TABLE 4-3: STATUS BITS, THEIR SIGNIFICANCE AND THE INITIALIZATION CONDITION FOR RCON REGISTER

Condition	Program Counter	RCON Register						STKPTR Register	
		SBOREN	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$	STKFUL	STKUNF
Power-on Reset	0000h	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
RESET Instruction	0000h	u(2)	0	u	u	u	u	u	u
Brown-out Reset	0000h	u(2)	1	1	1	u	0	u	u
$\overline{MCLR}$ during Power-Managed Run Modes	0000h	u(2)	u	1	u	u	u	u	u
$\overline{MCLR}$ during Power-Managed Idle Modes and Sleep Mode	0000h	u(2)	u	1	0	u	u	u	u
WDT Time-out during Full Power or Power-Managed Run Mode	0000h	u(2)	u	0	u	u	u	u	u
$\overline{MCLR}$ during Full Power Execution	0000h	u(2)	u	u	u	u	u	u	u
Stack Full Reset (STVREN = 1)	0000h	u(2)	u	u	u	u	u	1	u
Stack Underflow Reset (STVREN = 1)	0000h	u(2)	u	u	u	u	u	u	1
Stack Underflow Error (not an actual Reset, STVREN = 0)	0000h	u(2)	u	u	u	u	u	u	1
WDT Time-out during Power-Managed Idle or Sleep Modes	PC + 2	u(2)	u	0	0	u	u	u	u
Interrupt Exit from Power-Managed Modes	PC + 2(1)	u(2)	u	u	0	u	u	u	u

Legend: u = unchanged

Note 1: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEH or GIEL bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (008h or 0018h).

2: Reset state is ‘1’ for POR and unchanged for all other Resets when software BOR is enabled (BOREN1:BOREN0 Configuration bits = 01 and SBOREN = 1); otherwise, the Reset state is ‘0’.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 4-4: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	MCLR Resets, WDT Reset, RESET Instruction, Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
TOSU	1230	1330	---0 0000	---0 0000	---0 uuuu(3)
TOSH	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu(3)
TOSL	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu(3)
STKPTR	1230	1330	00-0 0000	uu-0 0000	uu-u uuuu(3)
PCLATU	1230	1330	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
PCLATH	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PCL	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	PC + 2(2)
TBLPTRU	1230	1330	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TBLPTRH	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TBLPTRL	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TABLAT	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PRODH	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PRODL	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
INTCON	1230	1330	0000 000x	0000 000u	uuuu uuuu(1)
INTCON2	1230	1330	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu(1)
INTCON3	1230	1330	1100 0000	1100 0000	uuuu uuuu(1)
INDF0	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTINC0	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTDEC0	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
PREINC0	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
PLUSW0	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
FSR0H	1230	1330	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
FSR0L	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
WREG	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
INDF1	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTINC1	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTDEC1	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
PREINC1	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
PLUSW1	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
FSR1H	1230	1330	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
FSR1L	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
BSR	1230	1330	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 4-3 for Reset value for specific condition.

5: Bits 6 and 7 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled depending on the oscillator mode selected. When not enabled as PORTA pins, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: Reset condition of PWMEN bits depends on the PWMPIN Configuration bit of CONFIG3L.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 4-4: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{MCLR}$ Resets, WDT Reset, RESET Instruction, Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
INDF2	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTINC2	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTDEC2	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
PREINC2	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
PLUSW2	1230	1330	N/A	N/A	N/A
FSR2H	1230	1330	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
FSR2L	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
STATUS	1230	1330	---x xxxx	---u uuuu	---u uuuu
TMR0H	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TMR0L	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
T0CON	1230	1330	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
OSCCON	1230	1330	0100 q000	0100 q000	uuuu uuqu
LVDCON	1230	1330	--00 0101	--00 0101	--uu uuuu
WDTCON	1230	1330	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
RCON(4)	1230	1330	0q-1 11q0	0q-q qquu	uq-u qquu
TMR1H	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TMR1L	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	1230	1330	0000 0000	u0uu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
ADRESH	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
ADRESL	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
ADCON0	1230	1330	0--- 0000	0--- 0000	u--- uuuu
ADCON1	1230	1330	---0 1111	---0 1111	---u uuuu
ADCON2	1230	1330	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
BAUDCON	1230	1330	01-0 0-00	01-0 0-00	--uu uuuu
CVRCON	1230	1330	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
CMCON	1230	1330	000- -000	000- -000	uuu- -uuu
SPBRGH	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SPBRG	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
RCREG	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXREG	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXSTA	1230	1330	0000 0010	0000 0010	uuuu uuuu
RCSTA	1230	1330	0000 000x	0000 000x	uuuu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 4-3 for Reset value for specific condition.

5: Bits 6 and 7 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled depending on the oscillator mode selected. When not enabled as PORTA pins, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: Reset condition of PWMEN bits depends on the PWMPIN Configuration bit of CONFIG3L.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 4-4: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{MCLR}$ Resets, WDT Reset, RESET Instruction, Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
EEADR	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
EEDATA	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
EECON2	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000
EECON1	1230	1330	xx-0 x000	uu-0 u000	uu-0 u000
IPR3	1230	1330	---0 ----	---0 ----	---u ----
PIR3	1230	1330	---0 ----	---0 ----	---u ----
PIE3	1230	1330	---0 ----	---0 ----	---u ----
IPIR2	1230	1330	1--1 -1--	1--1 -1--	u--u -u--
PIR2	1230	1330	0--0 -0--	0--0 -0--	u--u -u--(1)
PIE2	1230	1330	0--0 -0--	0--0 -0--	u--u -u--
IPR1	1230	1330	-111 1111	-111 1111	-uuu uuuu
PIR1	1230	1330	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu(1)
PIE1	1230	1330	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
OSCTUNE	1230	1330	00-0 0000	00-0 0000	uu-u uuuu
PTCON0	1230	1330	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PTCON1	1230	1330	00-- ----	00-- ----	uu-- ----
PTMRL	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTMRH	1230	1330	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
PTPERL	1230	1330	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PTPERH	1230	1330	---- 1111	---- 1111	---- uuuu
TRISB	1230	1330	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISA	1230	1330	1111 1111(5)	1111 1111(5)	uuuu uuuu(5)
PDC0L	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PDC0H	1230	1330	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
PDC1L	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PDC1H	1230	1330	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
PDC2L	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PDC2H	1230	1330	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
FLTCONFIG	1230	1330	0--- -000	0--- -000	u--- -uuu
LATB	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
LATA	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx(5)	uuuu uuuu(5)	uuuu uuuu(5)
SEVTCMPL	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 4-3 for Reset value for specific condition.

5: Bits 6 and 7 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled depending on the oscillator mode selected. When not enabled as PORTA pins, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: Reset condition of PWMEN bits depends on the PWMPIN Configuration bit of CONFIG3L.

TABLE 4-4: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{MCLR}$ Resets, WDT Reset, RESET Instruction, Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
SEVTCMPH	1230	1330	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
PWMCON0	1230	1330	-100 -000(6)	-100 -000(6)	-uuu -uuu(6)
			-000 -000(6)	-000 -000(6)	-uuu -uuu(6)
PWMCON1	1230	1330	0000 0-00	0000 0-00	uuuu u-uu
DTCON	1230	1330	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
OVDCOND	1230	1330	--11 1111	--11 1111	--uu uuuu
OVDCONS	1230	1330	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
PORTB	1230	1330	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTA	1230	1330	xx0x 0000(5)	uu0u 0000(5)	uuuu uuuu(5)

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 4-3 for Reset value for specific condition.

5: Bits 6 and 7 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled depending on the oscillator mode selected. When not enabled as PORTA pins, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: Reset condition of PWMEN bits depends on the PWMPIN Configuration bit of CONFIG3L.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

5.0 MEMORY ORGANIZATION

There are three types of memory in PIC18 Enhanced microcontroller devices:

- Program Memory
- Data RAM
- Data EEPROM

As Harvard architecture devices, the data and program memories use separate busses; this allows for concurrent access of the two memory spaces. The data EEPROM, for practical purposes, can be regarded as a peripheral device, since it is addressed and accessed through a set of control registers.

Additional detailed information on the operation of the Flash program memory is provided in **Section 6.0 "Flash Program Memory"**. Data EEPROM is discussed separately in **Section 7.0 "Data EEPROM Memory"**.

5.1 Program Memory Organization

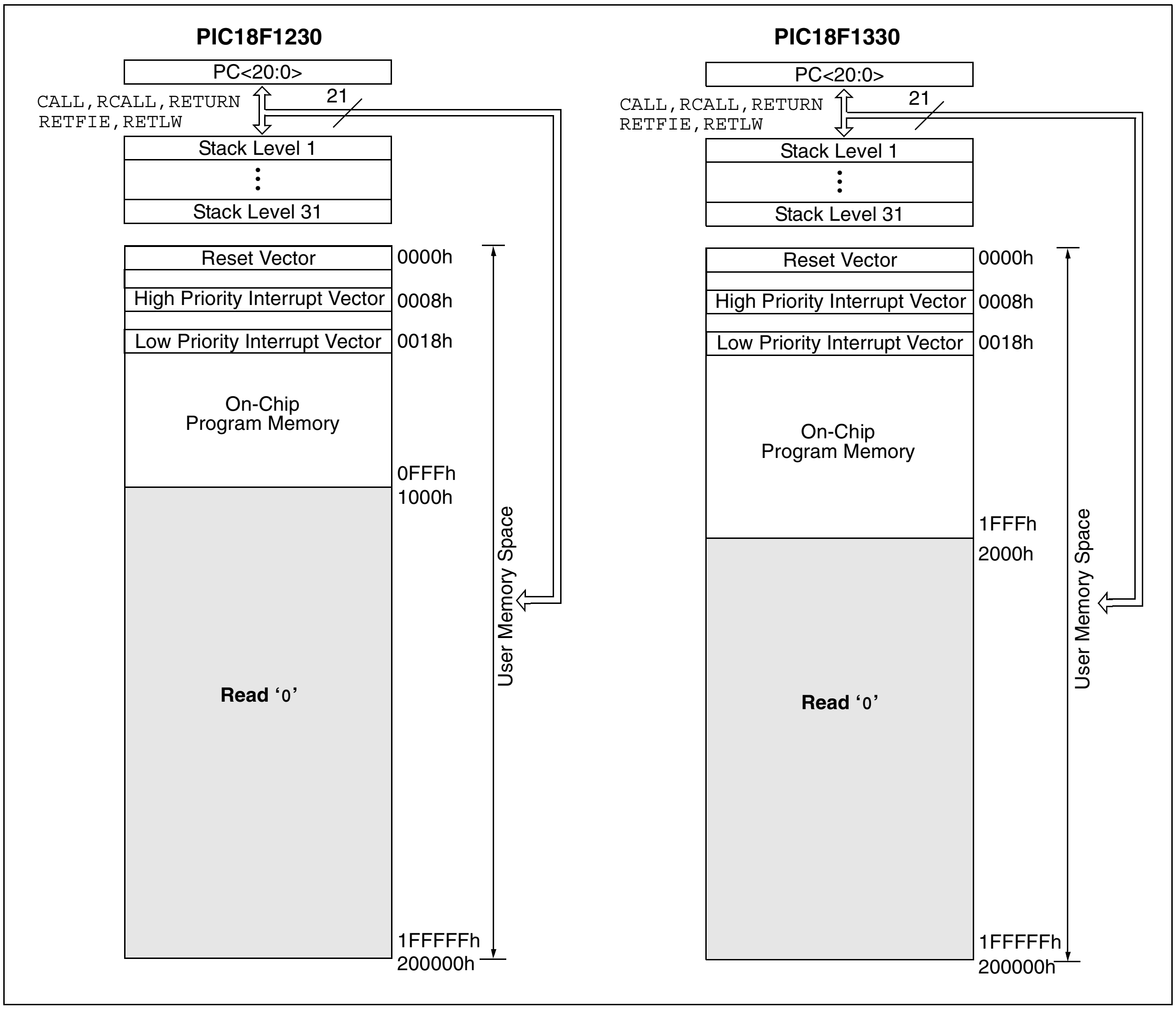
PIC18 microcontrollers implement a 21-bit program counter, which is capable of addressing a 2-Mbyte program memory space. Accessing a location between the upper boundary of the physically implemented memory and the 2-Mbyte address will return all '0's (a NOP instruction).

The PIC18F1230 has 4 Kbytes of Flash memory and can store up to 2,048 single-word instructions. The PIC18F1330 has 8 Kbytes of Flash memory and can store up to 4,096 single-word instructions.

PIC18 devices have two interrupt vectors. The Reset vector address is at 0000h and the interrupt vector addresses are at 0008h and 0018h.

The program memory maps for PIC18F1230 and PIC18F1330 devices are shown in Figure 5-1.

FIGURE 5-1: PROGRAM MEMORY MAP AND STACK FOR PIC18F1230/1330 DEVICES



5.1.1 PROGRAM COUNTER

The Program Counter (PC) specifies the address of the instruction to fetch for execution. The PC is 21 bits wide and is contained in three separate 8-bit registers. The low byte, known as the PCL register, is both readable and writable. The high byte, or PCH register, contains the PC<15:8> bits; it is not directly readable or writable. Updates to the PCH register are performed through the PCLATH register. The upper byte is called PCU. This register contains the PC<20:16> bits; it is also not directly readable or writable. Updates to the PCU register are performed through the PCLATU register.

The contents of PCLATH and PCLATU are transferred to the program counter by any operation that writes to the PCL. Similarly, the upper two bytes of the program counter are transferred to PCLATH and PCLATU by an operation that reads the PCL. This is useful for computed offsets to the PC (see **Section 5.1.4.1 "Computed GOTO"**).

The PC addresses bytes in the program memory. To prevent the PC from becoming misaligned with word instructions, the Least Significant bit of PCL is fixed to a value of '0'. The PC increments by 2 to address sequential instructions in the program memory.

The CALL, RCALL, GOTO and program branch instructions write to the program counter directly. For these instructions, the contents of PCLATH and PCLATU are not transferred to the program counter.

5.1.2 RETURN ADDRESS STACK

The return address stack allows any combination of up to 31 program calls and interrupts to occur. The PC is pushed onto the stack when a CALL or RCALL instruction is executed or an interrupt is Acknowledged. The PC value is pulled off the stack on a RETURN, RETLW or a RETFIE instruction. PCLATU and PCLATH are not affected by any of the RETURN or CALL instructions.

The stack operates as a 31-word by 21-bit RAM and a 5-bit Stack Pointer, STKPTR. The stack space is not part of either program or data space. The Stack Pointer is readable and writable and the address on the top of the stack is readable and writable through the Top-of-Stack Special Function Registers. Data can also be pushed to, or popped from the stack, using these registers.

A CALL type instruction causes a push onto the stack; the Stack Pointer is first incremented and the location pointed to by the Stack Pointer is written with the contents of the PC (already pointing to the instruction following the CALL). A RETURN type instruction causes a pop from the stack; the contents of the location pointed to by the STKPTR are transferred to the PC and then the Stack Pointer is decremented.

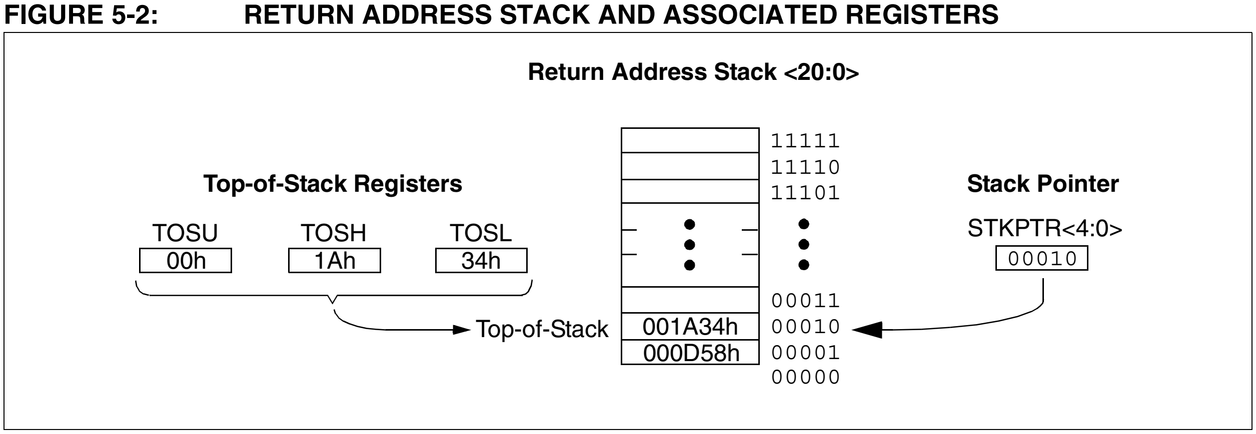
The Stack Pointer is initialized to '00000' after all Resets. There is no RAM associated with the location corresponding to a Stack Pointer value of '00000'; this is only a Reset value. Status bits indicate if the stack is full, has overflowed or has underflowed.

5.1.2.1 Top-of-Stack Access

Only the top of the return address stack (TOS) is readable and writable. A set of three registers, TOSU:TOSH:TOSL, hold the contents of the stack location pointed to by the STKPTR register (Figure 5-2). This allows users to implement a software stack if necessary. After a CALL, RCALL or interrupt, the software can read the pushed value by reading the TOSU:TOSH:TOSL registers. These values can be placed on a user-defined software stack. At return time, the software can return these values to TOSU:TOSH:TOSL and do a return.

The user must disable the global interrupt enable bits while accessing the stack to prevent inadvertent stack corruption.

FIGURE 5-2: RETURN ADDRESS STACK AND ASSOCIATED REGISTERS



 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

5.1.2.2 Return Stack Pointer (STKPTR)

The STKPTR register (Register 5-1) contains the Stack Pointer value, the STKFUL (Stack Full) status bit and the STKUNF (Stack Underflow) status bits. The value of the Stack Pointer can be 0 through 31. The Stack Pointer increments before values are pushed onto the stack and decrements after values are popped off the stack. On Reset, the Stack Pointer value will be zero. The user may read and write the Stack Pointer value. This feature can be used by a Real-Time Operating System (RTOS) for return stack maintenance.

After the PC is pushed onto the stack 31 times (without popping any values off the stack), the STKFUL bit is set. The STKFUL bit is cleared by software or by a POR.

The action that takes place when the stack becomes full depends on the state of the STVREN (Stack Overflow Reset Enable) Configuration bit. (Refer to **Section 19.1 "Configuration Bits"** for a description of the device Configuration bits.) If STVREN is set (default), the 31st push will push the (PC + 2) value onto the stack, set the STKFUL bit and reset the device. The STKFUL bit will remain set and the Stack Pointer will be set to zero.

If STVREN is cleared, the STKFUL bit will be set on the 31st push and the Stack Pointer will increment to 31. Any additional pushes will not overwrite the 31st push and STKPTR will remain at 31.

When the stack has been popped enough times to unload the stack, the next pop will return a value of zero to the PC and sets the STKUNF bit, while the Stack Pointer remains at zero. The STKUNF bit will remain set until cleared by software or until a POR occurs.

> **Note:** Returning a value of zero to the PC on an underflow has the effect of vectoring the program to the Reset vector, where the stack conditions can be verified and appropriate actions can be taken. This is not the same as a Reset, as the contents of the SFRs are not affected.

5.1.2.3 PUSH and POP Instructions

Since the Top-of-Stack is readable and writable, the ability to push values onto the stack and pull values off the stack, without disturbing normal program execution, is a desirable feature. The PIC18 instruction set includes two instructions, `PUSH` and `POP`, that permit the TOS to be manipulated under software control. TOSU, TOSH and TOSL can be modified to place data or a return address on the stack.

The `PUSH` instruction places the current PC value onto the stack. This increments the Stack Pointer and loads the current PC value onto the stack.

The `POP` instruction discards the current TOS by decrementing the Stack Pointer. The previous value pushed onto the stack then becomes the TOS value.

REGISTER 5-1: STKPTR: STACK POINTER REGISTER

R/C-0	R/C-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
STKFUL(1)	STKUNF(1)	—	SP4	SP3	SP2	SP1	SP0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	C = Clearable bit		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **STKFUL:** Stack Full Flag bit(1)
`1` = Stack became full or overflowed
`0` = Stack has not become full or overflowed

bit 6 **STKUNF:** Stack Underflow Flag bit(1)
`1` = Stack underflow occurred
`0` = Stack underflow did not occur

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '`0`'

bit 4-0 **SP4:SP0:** Stack Pointer Location bits

Note 1: Bit 7 and bit 6 are cleared by user software or by a POR.

5.1.2.4 Stack Full and Underflow Resets

Device Resets on stack overflow and stack underflow conditions are enabled by setting the STVREN bit in Configuration Register 4L. When STVREN is set, a full or underflow will set the appropriate STKFUL or STKUNF bit and then cause a device Reset. When STVREN is cleared, a full or underflow condition will set the appropriate STKFUL or STKUNF bit but not cause a device Reset. The STKFUL or STKUNF bit is cleared by the user software or a Power-on Reset.

5.1.3 FAST REGISTER STACK

A Fast Register Stack is provided for the STATUS, WREG and BSR registers, to provide a "fast return" option for interrupts. The stack for each register is only one level deep and is neither readable nor writable. It is loaded with the current value of the corresponding register when the processor vectors for an interrupt. All interrupt sources will push values into the Stack registers. The values in the registers are then loaded back into their associated registers if the `RETFIE, FAST` instruction is used to return from the interrupt.

If both low and high priority interrupts are enabled, the Stack registers cannot be used reliably to return from low priority interrupts. If a high priority interrupt occurs while servicing a low priority interrupt, the Stack register values stored by the low priority interrupt will be overwritten. In these cases, users must save the key registers in software during a low priority interrupt.

If interrupt priority is not used, all interrupts may use the Fast Register Stack for returns from interrupt. If no interrupts are used, the Fast Register Stack can be used to restore the STATUS, WREG and BSR registers at the end of a subroutine call. To use the Fast Register Stack for a subroutine call, a `CALL label, FAST` instruction must be executed to save the STATUS, WREG and BSR registers to the Fast Register Stack. A `RETURN, FAST` instruction is then executed to restore these registers from the Fast Register Stack.

Example 5-1 shows a source code example that uses the Fast Register Stack during a subroutine call and return.

EXAMPLE 5-1: FAST REGISTER STACK CODE EXAMPLE

```
CALL SUB1, FAST    ;STATUS, WREG, BSR
                   ;SAVED IN FAST REGISTER
                   ;STACK
     •
     •

SUB1 •
     •
     RETURN, FAST  ;RESTORE VALUES SAVED
                   ;IN FAST REGISTER STACK
```

5.1.4 LOOK-UP TABLES IN PROGRAM MEMORY

There may be programming situations that require the creation of data structures, or look-up tables, in program memory. For PIC18 devices, look-up tables can be implemented in two ways:

- Computed `GOTO`
- Table Reads

5.1.4.1 Computed GOTO

A computed `GOTO` is accomplished by adding an offset to the program counter. An example is shown in Example 5-2.

A look-up table can be formed with an `ADDWF PCL` instruction and a group of `RETLW nn` instructions. The W register is loaded with an offset into the table before executing a call to that table. The first instruction of the called routine is the `ADDWF PCL` instruction. The next instruction executed will be one of the `RETLW nn` instructions that returns the value 'nn' to the calling function.

The offset value (in WREG) specifies the number of bytes that the program counter should advance and should be multiples of 2 (LSb = 0).

In this method, only one data byte may be stored in each instruction location and room on the return address stack is required.

EXAMPLE 5-2: COMPUTED GOTO USING AN OFFSET VALUE

```
       MOVF    OFFSET, W
       CALL    TABLE
ORG    nn00h
TABLE  ADDWF   PCL
       RETLW   nnh
       RETLW   nnh
       RETLW   nnh
       .
       .
       .
```

5.1.4.2 Table Reads and Table Writes

A better method of storing data in program memory allows two bytes of data to be stored in each instruction location.

Look-up table data may be stored two bytes per program word by using table reads and writes. The Table Pointer (TBLPTR) register specifies the byte address and the Table Latch (TABLAT) register contains the data that is read from or written to program memory. Data is transferred to or from program memory one byte at a time.

Table read and table write operations are discussed further in **Section 6.1 "Table Reads and Table Writes"**.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

5.2 PIC18 Instruction Cycle

5.2.1 CLOCKING SCHEME

The microcontroller clock input, whether from an internal or external source, is internally divided by four to generate four non-overlapping quadrature clocks (Q1, Q2, Q3 and Q4). Internally, the program counter is incremented on every Q1; the instruction is fetched from the program memory and latched into the Instruction Register (IR) during Q4. The instruction is decoded and executed during the following Q1 through Q4. The clocks and instruction execution flow are shown in Figure 5-3.

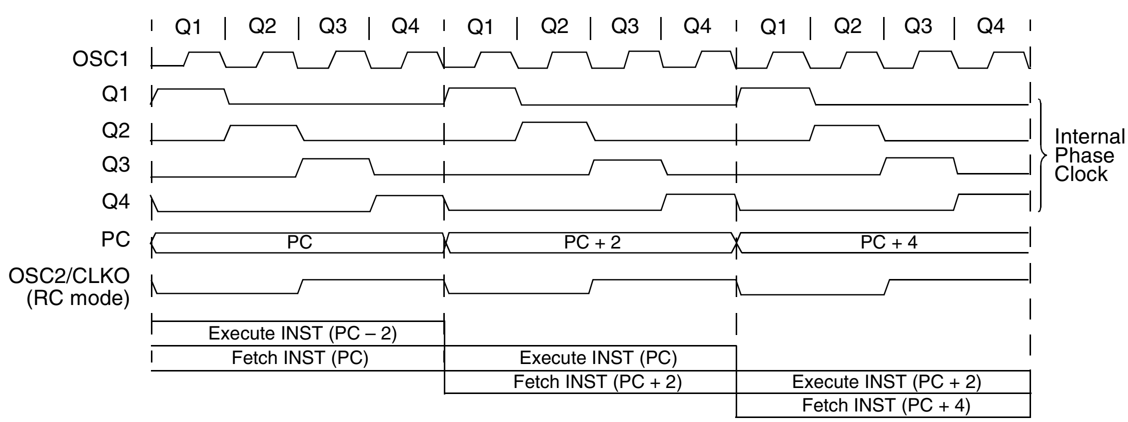
5.2.2 INSTRUCTION FLOW/PIPELINING

An "Instruction Cycle" consists of four Q cycles: Q1 through Q4. The instruction fetch and execute are pipelined in such a manner that a fetch takes one instruction cycle, while the decode and execute take another instruction cycle. However, due to the pipelining, each instruction effectively executes in one cycle. If an instruction causes the program counter to change (e.g., `GOTO`), then two cycles are required to complete the instruction (Example 5-3).

A fetch cycle begins with the Program Counter (PC) incrementing in Q1.

In the execution cycle, the fetched instruction is latched into the Instruction Register (IR) in cycle Q1. This instruction is then decoded and executed during the Q2, Q3 and Q4 cycles. Data memory is read during Q2 (operand read) and written during Q4 (destination write).

FIGURE 5-3: CLOCK/INSTRUCTION CYCLE



EXAMPLE 5-3: INSTRUCTION PIPELINE FLOW

	TCY0	TCY1	TCY2	TCY3	TCY4	TCY5
`1. MOVLW 55h`	Fetch 1	Execute 1				
`2. MOVWF PORTB`		Fetch 2	Execute 2			
`3. BRA SUB_1`			Fetch 3	Execute 3		
`4. BSF PORTA, BIT3 (Forced NOP)`				Fetch 4	Flush (`NOP`)	
`5. Instruction @ address SUB_1`					Fetch SUB_1	Execute SUB_1

All instructions are single cycle, except for any program branches. These take two cycles since the fetch instruction is "flushed" from the pipeline while the new instruction is being fetched and then executed.

5.2.3 INSTRUCTIONS IN PROGRAM MEMORY

The program memory is addressed in bytes. Instructions are stored as two bytes or four bytes in program memory. The Least Significant Byte of an instruction word is always stored in a program memory location with an even address (LSb = `0`). To maintain alignment with instruction boundaries, the PC increments in steps of 2 and the LSb will always read ‘`0`’ (see **Section 5.1.1 “Program Counter”**).

Figure 5-4 shows an example of how instruction words are stored in the program memory.

The `CALL` and `GOTO` instructions have the absolute program memory address embedded into the instruction. Since instructions are always stored on word boundaries, the data contained in the instruction is a word address. The word address is written to PC<20:1>, which accesses the desired byte address in program memory. Instruction #2 in Figure 5-4 shows how the instruction, `GOTO 0006h`, is encoded in the program memory. Program branch instructions, which encode a relative address offset, operate in the same manner. The offset value stored in a branch instruction represents the number of single-word instructions that the PC will be offset by. **Section 21.0 “Instruction Set Summary”** provides further details of the instruction set.

FIGURE 5-4: INSTRUCTIONS IN PROGRAM MEMORY

	Program Memory Byte Locations →		LSB = 1	LSB = 0	Word Address ↓
					000000h
					000002h
					000004h
					000006h
Instruction 1:	`MOVLW`	`055h`	0Fh	55h	000008h
Instruction 2:	`GOTO`	`0006h`	EFh	03h	00000Ah
			F0h	00h	00000Ch
Instruction 3:	`MOVFF`	`123h, 456h`	C1h	23h	00000Eh
			F4h	56h	000010h
					000012h
					000014h

5.2.4 TWO-WORD INSTRUCTIONS

The standard PIC18 instruction set has four two-word instructions: `CALL`, `MOVFF`, `GOTO` and `LSFR`. In all cases, the second word of the instructions always has ‘`1111`’ as its four Most Significant bits; the other 12 bits are literal data, usually a data memory address.

The use of ‘`1111`’ in the 4 MSbs of an instruction specifies a special form of `NOP`. If the instruction is executed in proper sequence – immediately after the first word – the data in the second word is accessed and used by the instruction sequence. If the first word is skipped for some reason and the second word is executed by itself, a `NOP` is executed instead. This is necessary for cases when the two-word instruction is preceded by a conditional instruction that changes the PC. Example 5-4 shows how this works.

> **Note:** See **Section 5.6 “PIC18 Instruction Execution and the Extended Instruction Set”** for information on two-word instructions in the extended instruction set.

EXAMPLE 5-4: TWO-WORD INSTRUCTIONS

CASE 1:

Object Code	**Source Code**
`0110 0110 0000 0000`	`TSTFSZ REG1 ; is RAM location 0?`
`1100 0001 0010 0011`	`MOVFF REG1, REG2 ; No, skip this word`
`1111 0100 0101 0110`	`; Execute this word as a NOP`
`0010 0100 0000 0000`	`ADDWF REG3 ; continue code`

CASE 2:

Object Code	**Source Code**
`0110 0110 0000 0000`	`TSTFSZ REG1 ; is RAM location 0?`
`1100 0001 0010 0011`	`MOVFF REG1, REG2 ; Yes, execute this word`
`1111 0100 0101 0110`	`; 2nd word of instruction`
`0010 0100 0000 0000`	`ADDWF REG3 ; continue code`

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

5.3 Data Memory Organization

Note:	The operation of some aspects of data memory are changed when the PIC18 extended instruction set is enabled. See **Section 5.5 "Data Memory and the Extended Instruction Set"** for more information.

The data memory in PIC18 devices is implemented as static RAM. Each register in the data memory has a 12-bit address, allowing up to 4096 bytes of data memory. The memory space is divided into as many as 16 banks that contain 256 bytes each; PIC18F1230/1330 devices implement 1 bank. Figure 5-5 shows the data memory organization for the PIC18F1230/1330 devices.

The data memory contains Special Function Registers (SFRs) and General Purpose Registers (GPRs). The SFRs are used for control and status of the controller and peripheral functions, while GPRs are used for data storage and scratchpad operations in the user's application. Any read of an unimplemented location will read as '0's.

The instruction set and architecture allow operations across all banks. The entire data memory may be accessed by Direct, Indirect or Indexed Addressing modes. Addressing modes are discussed later in this subsection.

To ensure that commonly used registers (SFRs and select GPRs) can be accessed in a single cycle, PIC18 devices implement an Access Bank. This is a 256-byte memory space that provides fast access to SFRs and the lower portion of GPR Bank 0 without using the BSR. **Section 5.3.2 "Access Bank"** provides a detailed description of the Access RAM.

5.3.1 BANK SELECT REGISTER (BSR)

Large areas of data memory require an efficient addressing scheme to make rapid access to any address possible. Ideally, this means that an entire address does not need to be provided for each read or write operation. For PIC18 devices, this is accomplished with a RAM banking scheme. This divides the memory space into 16 contiguous banks of 256 bytes. Depending on the instruction, each location can be addressed directly by its full 12-bit address, or an 8-bit low-order address and a 4-bit Bank Pointer.

Most instructions in the PIC18 instruction set make use of the Bank Pointer, known as the Bank Select Register (BSR). This SFR holds the four Most Significant bits of a location's address; the instruction itself includes the eight Least Significant bits. Only the four lower bits of the BSR are implemented (BSR3:BSR0). The upper four bits are unused; they will always read '0' and cannot be written to. The BSR can be loaded directly by using the MOVLB instruction.

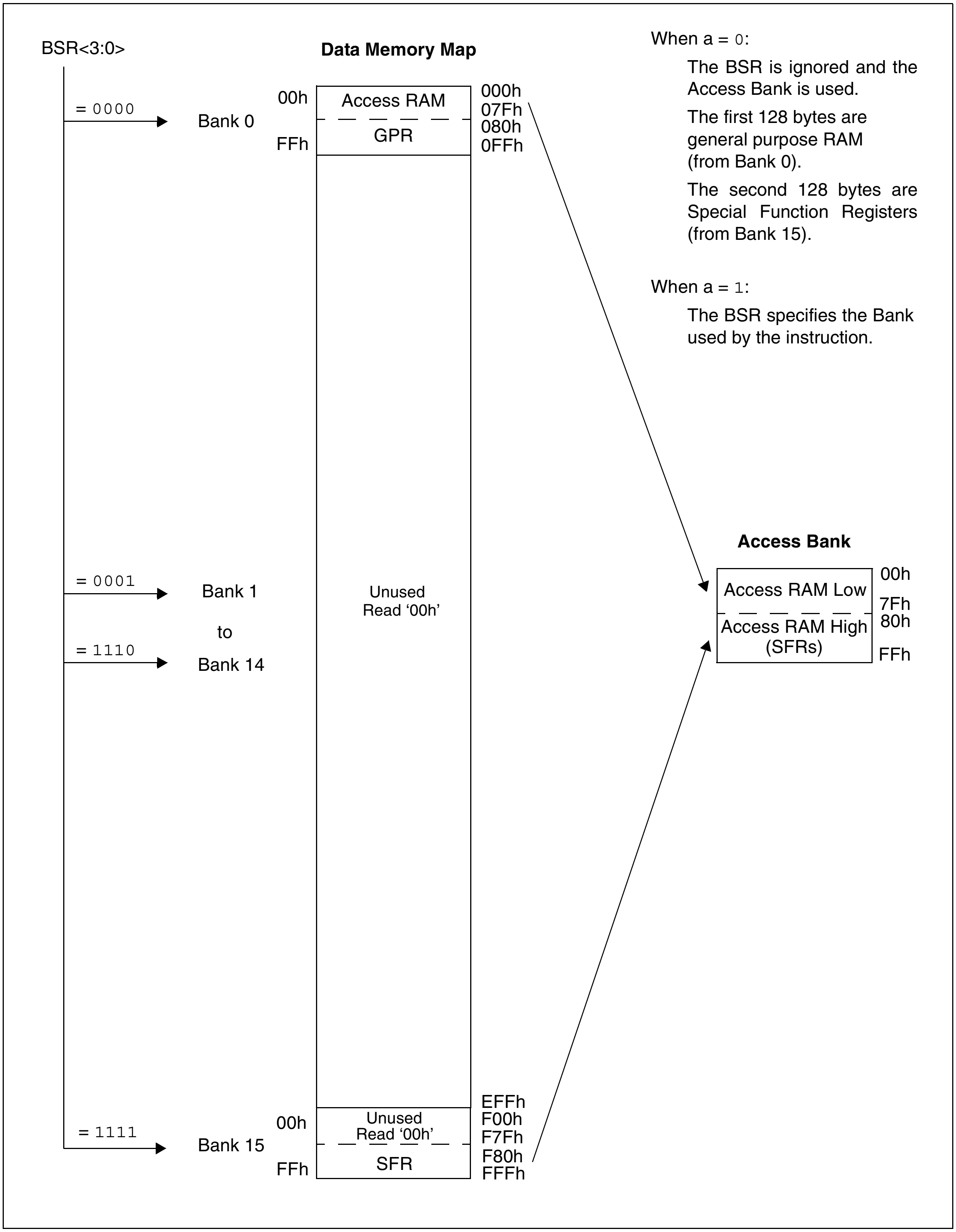
The value of the BSR indicates the bank in data memory. The 8 bits in the instruction show the location in the bank and can be thought of as an offset from the bank's lower boundary. The relationship between the BSR's value and the bank division in data memory is shown in Figure 5-6.

Since up to 16 registers may share the same low-order address, the user must always be careful to ensure that the proper bank is selected before performing a data read or write. For example, writing what should be program data to an 8-bit address of F9h, while the BSR is 0Fh, will end up resetting the program counter.

While any bank can be selected, only those banks that are actually implemented can be read or written to. Writes to unimplemented banks are ignored, while reads from unimplemented banks will return '0's. Even so, the STATUS register will still be affected as if the operation was successful. The data memory map in Figure 5-5 indicates which banks are implemented.

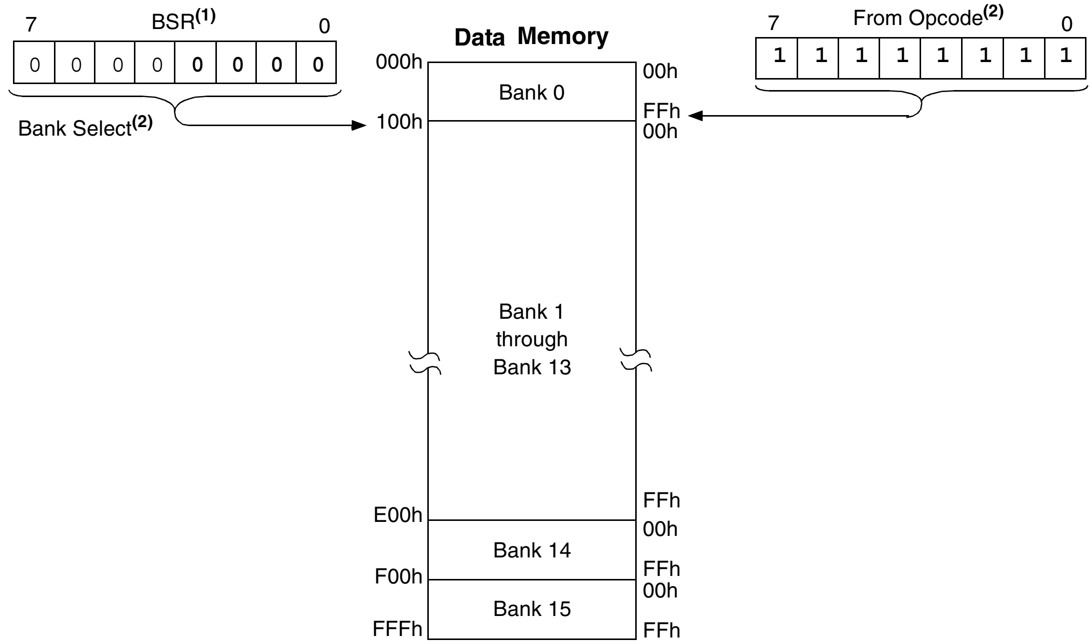
In the core PIC18 instruction set, only the MOVFF instruction fully specifies the 12-bit address of the source and target registers. This instruction ignores the BSR completely when it executes. All other instructions include only the low-order address as an operand and must use either the BSR or the Access Bank to locate their target registers.

FIGURE 5-5: DATA MEMORY MAP FOR PIC18F1230/1330 DEVICES



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 5-6: USE OF THE BANK SELECT REGISTER (DIRECT ADDRESSING)



Note 1: The Access RAM bit of the instruction can be used to force an override of the selected bank (BSR<3:0>) to the registers of the Access Bank.

2: The `MOVFF` instruction embeds the entire 12-bit address in the instruction.

5.3.2 ACCESS BANK

While the use of the BSR with an embedded 8-bit address allows users to address the entire range of data memory, it also means that the user must always ensure that the correct bank is selected. Otherwise, data may be read from or written to the wrong location. This can be disastrous if a GPR is the intended target of an operation, but an SFR is written to instead. Verifying and/or changing the BSR for each read or write to data memory can become very inefficient.

To streamline access for the most commonly used data memory locations, the data memory is configured with an Access Bank, which allows users to access a mapped block of memory without specifying a BSR. The Access Bank consists of the first 128 bytes of memory (00h-7Fh) in Bank 0 and the last 128 bytes of memory (80h-FFh) in Block 15. The lower half is known as the “Access RAM” and is composed of GPRs. The upper half is where the device’s SFRs are mapped. These two areas are mapped contiguously in the Access Bank and can be addressed in a linear fashion by an 8-bit address (Figure 5-5).

The Access Bank is used by core PIC18 instructions that include the Access RAM bit (the ‘a’ parameter in the instruction). When ‘a’ is equal to ‘`1`’, the instruction uses the BSR and the 8-bit address included in the opcode for the data memory address. When ‘a’ is ‘`0`’, however, the instruction is forced to use the Access Bank address map; the current value of the BSR is ignored entirely.

Using this “forced” addressing allows the instruction to operate on a data address in a single cycle without updating the BSR first. For 8-bit addresses of 80h and above, this means that users can evaluate and operate on SFRs more efficiently. The Access RAM below 80h is a good place for data values that the user might need to access rapidly, such as immediate computational results or common program variables. Access RAM also allows for faster and more code efficient context saving and switching of variables.

The mapping of the Access Bank is slightly different when the extended instruction set is enabled (XINST Configuration bit = `1`). This is discussed in more detail in **Section 5.5.3 “Mapping the Access Bank in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing Mode”**.

5.3.3 GENERAL PURPOSE REGISTER FILE

PIC18 devices may have banked memory in the GPR area. This is data RAM which is available for use by all instructions. GPRs start at the bottom of Bank 0 (address 000h) and grow upwards towards the bottom of the SFR area. GPRs are not initialized by a Power-on Reset and are unchanged on all other Resets.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

5.3.4 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

The Special Function Registers (SFRs) are registers used by the CPU and peripheral modules for controlling the desired operation of the device. These registers are implemented as static RAM. SFRs start at the top of data memory (FFFh) and extend downward to occupy the top half of Bank 15 (F80h to FFFh). A list of these registers is given in Table 5-1 and Table 5-2.

The SFRs can be classified into two sets: those associated with the “core” device functionality (ALU, Resets and interrupts) and those related to the peripheral functions. The Reset and Interrupt registers are described in their respective chapters, while the ALU’s STATUS register is described later in this section. Registers related to the operation of a peripheral feature are described in the chapter for that peripheral.

The SFRs are typically distributed among the peripherals whose functions they control. Unused SFR locations are unimplemented and read as ‘0’s.

TABLE 5-1: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER MAP FOR PIC18F1230/1330 DEVICES

Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name
FFFh	TOSU	FDFh	INDF2(1)	FBFh	—(2)	F9Fh	IPR1
FFEh	TOSH	FDEh	POSTINC2(1)	FBEh	—(2)	F9Eh	PIR1
FFDh	TOSL	FDDh	POSTDEC2(1)	FBDh	—(2)	F9Dh	PIE1
FFCh	STKPTR	FDCh	PREINC2(1)	FBCh	—(2)	F9Ch	—(2)
FFBh	PCLATU	FDBh	PLUSW2(1)	FBBh	—(2)	F9Bh	OSCTUNE
FFAh	PCLATH	FDAh	FSR2H	FBAh	—(2)	F9Ah	PTCON0
FF9h	PCL	FD9h	FSR2L	FB9h	—(2)	F99h	PTCON1
FF8h	TBLPTRU	FD8h	STATUS	FB8h	BAUDCON	F98h	PTMRL
FF7h	TBLPTRH	FD7h	TMR0H	FB7h	—(2)	F97h	PTMRH
FF6h	TBLPTRL	FD6h	TMR0L	FB6h	—(2)	F96h	PTPERL
FF5h	TABLAT	FD5h	T0CON	FB5h	CVRCON	F95h	PTPERH
FF4h	PRODH	FD4h	—(2)	FB4h	CMCON	F94h	—(2)
FF3h	PRODL	FD3h	OSCCON	FB3h	—(2)	F93h	TRISB
FF2h	INTCON	FD2h	LVDCON	FB2h	—(2)	F92h	TRISA
FF1h	INTCON2	FD1h	WDTCON	FB1h	—(2)	F91h	PDC0L
FF0h	INTCON3	FD0h	RCON	FB0h	SPBRGH	F90h	PDC0H
FEFh	INDF0(1)	FCFh	TMR1H	FAFh	SPBRG	F8Fh	PDC1L
FEEh	POSTINC0(1)	FCEh	TMR1L	FAEh	RCREG	F8Eh	PDC1H
FEDh	POSTDEC0(1)	FCDh	T1CON	FADh	TXREG	F8Dh	PDC2L
FECh	PREINC0(1)	FCCh	—(2)	FACh	TXSTA	F8Ch	PDC2H
FEBh	PLUSW0(1)	FCBh	—(2)	FABh	RCSTA	F8Bh	FLTCONFIG
FEAh	FSR0H	FCAh	—(2)	FAAh	—(2)	F8Ah	LATB
FE9h	FSR0L	FC9h	—(2)	FA9h	EEADR	F89h	LATA
FE8h	WREG	FC8h	—(2)	FA8h	EEDATA	F88h	SEVTCMPL
FE7h	INDF1(1)	FC7h	—(2)	FA7h	EECON2(1)	F87h	SEVTCMPH
FE6h	POSTINC1(1)	FC6h	—(2)	FA6h	EECON1	F86h	PWMCON0
FE5h	POSTDEC1(1)	FC5h	—(2)	FA5h	IPR3	F85h	PWMCON1
FE4h	PREINC1(1)	FC4h	ADRESH	FA4h	PIR3	F84h	DTCON
FE3h	PLUSW1(1)	FC3h	ADRESL	FA3h	PIE3	F83h	OVDCOND
FE2h	FSR1H	FC2h	ADCON0	FA2h	IPR2	F82h	OVDCONS
FE1h	FSR1L	FC1h	ADCON1	FA1h	PIR2	F81h	PORTB
FE0h	BSR	FC0h	ADCON2	FA0h	PIE2	F80h	PORTA

Note 1: This is not a physical register.
2: Unimplemented registers are read as ‘0’.

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 5-2: REGISTER FILE SUMMARY (PIC18F1230/1330)

File Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Details on page:
TOSU	—	—	—	Top-of-Stack Upper Byte (TOS<20:16>)					---0 0000	41, 46
TOSH	Top-of-Stack High Byte (TOS<15:8>)								0000 0000	41, 46
TOSL	Top-of-Stack Low Byte (TOS<7:0>)								0000 0000	41, 46
STKPTR	STKFUL(5)	STKUNF(5)	—	SP4	SP3	SP2	SP1	SP0	00-0 0000	41, 47
PCLATU	—	—	—	Holding Register for PC<20:16>					---0 0000	41, 46
PCLATH	Holding Register for PC<15:8>								0000 0000	41, 46
PCL	PC Low Byte (PC<7:0>)								0000 0000	41, 46
TBLPTRU	—	—	bit 21	Program Memory Table Pointer Upper Byte (TBLPTR<20:16>)					--00 0000	41, 68
TBLPTRH	Program Memory Table Pointer High Byte (TBLPTR<15:8>)								0000 0000	41, 68
TBLPTRL	Program Memory Table Pointer Low Byte (TBLPTR<7:0>)								0000 0000	41, 68
TABLAT	Program Memory Table Latch								0000 0000	41, 68
PRODH	Product Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	41, 79
PRODL	Product Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	41, 79
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	41, 89
INTCON2	$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	INTEDG3	TMR0IP	INT3IP	RBIP	1111 1111	41, 90
INTCON3	INT2IP	INT1IP	INT3IE	INT2IE	INT1IE	INT3IF	INT2IF	INT1IF	1100 0000	41, 91
INDF0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory – value of FSR0 not changed (not a physical register)								N/A	41, 60
POSTINC0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory – value of FSR0 post-incremented (not a physical register)								N/A	41, 60
POSTDEC0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory – value of FSR0 post-decremented (not a physical register)								N/A	41, 60
PREINC0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory – value of FSR0 pre-incremented (not a physical register)								N/A	41, 60
PLUSW0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory – value of FSR0 pre-incremented (not a physical register) – value of FSR0 offset by W								N/A	41, 60
FSR0H	—	—	—	—	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 0 High Byte				---- 0000	41, 60
FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 0 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	41, 60
WREG	Working Register								xxxx xxxx	41, 48
INDF1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory – value of FSR1 not changed (not a physical register)								N/A	41, 60
POSTINC1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory – value of FSR1 post-incremented (not a physical register)								N/A	41, 60
POSTDEC1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory – value of FSR1 post-decremented (not a physical register)								N/A	41, 60
PREINC1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory – value of FSR1 pre-incremented (not a physical register)								N/A	41, 60
PLUSW1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory – value of FSR1 pre-incremented (not a physical register) – value of FSR1 offset by W								N/A	41, 60
FSR1H	—	—	—	—	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 1 High Byte				---- 0000	41, 60
FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 1 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	41, 60
BSR	—	—	—	—	Bank Select Register				---- 0000	41, 51
INDF2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory – value of FSR2 not changed (not a physical register)								N/A	42, 60
POSTINC2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory – value of FSR2 post-incremented (not a physical register)								N/A	42, 60
POSTDEC2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory – value of FSR2 post-decremented (not a physical register)								N/A	42, 60
PREINC2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory – value of FSR2 pre-incremented (not a physical register)								N/A	42, 60
PLUSW2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory – value of FSR2 pre-incremented (not a physical register) – value of FSR2 offset by W								N/A	42, 60
FSR2H	—	—	—	—	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 2 High Byte				---- 0000	42, 60
FSR2L	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 2 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	42, 60

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: The SBOREN bit is only available when the BOREN1:BOREN0 Configuration bits = 01; otherwise, it is disabled and reads as '0'. See **Section 4.4 "Brown-out Reset (BOR)"**.

2: The PLLEN bit is only available in specific oscillator configuration; otherwise, it is disabled and reads as '0'. See **Section 2.6.4 "PLL in INTOSC Modes"**.

3: The RA5 bit is only available when Master Clear Reset is disabled (MCLRE Configuration bit = 0); otherwise, RA5 reads as '0'. This bit is read-only.

4: RA6/RA7 and their associated latch and direction bits are individually configured as port pins based on various primary oscillator modes. When disabled, these bits read as '0'.

5: Bit 7 and bit 6 are cleared by user software or by a POR.

6: Reset condition of PWMEN bits depends on the PWMPIN Configuration bit of CONFIG3L.

7: This bit has no effect if the Configuration bit, WDTEN, is enabled.

TABLE 5-2: REGISTER FILE SUMMARY (PIC18F1230/1330) (CONTINUED)

File Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Details on page:
STATUS	—	—	—	N	OV	Z	DC	C	---x xxxx	42, 58
TMR0H	Timer0 Register High Byte								0000 0000	42, 103
TMR0L	Timer0 Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	42, 103
T0CON	TMR0ON	T016BIT	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	T0PS2	T0PS1	T0PS0	1111 1111	42, 101
OSCCON	IDLEN	IRCF2	IRCF1	IRCF0	OSTS	IOFS	SCS1	SCS0	0100 q000	42, 22
LVDCON	—	—	IRVST	LVDEN	LVDL3	LVDL2	LVDL1	LVDL0	--00 0101	42, 179
WDTCON	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWDTEN(7)	---- ---0	42, 195
RCON	IPEN	SBOREN(1)	—	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$	0q-1 11q0	42, 34
TMR1H	Timer1 Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	42, 109
TMR1L	Timer1 Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	42, 109
T1CON	RD16	T1RUN	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{T1SYNC}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0000 0000	42, 105
ADRESH	A/D Result Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	42, 172
ADRESL	A/D Result Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	42, 172
ADCON0	SEVTEN	—	—	—	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{DONE}$	ADON	0--- 0000	42, 163
ADCON1	—	—	—	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	---0 1111	42, 164
ADCON2	ADFM	—	ACQT2	ACQT1	ACQT0	ADCS2	ADCS1	ADCS0	0-00 0000	42, 165
BAUDCON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	01-0 0-00	42, 144
CVRCON	CVREN	—	CVRR	CVRSS	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0	0-00 0000	42, 177
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C0OUT	—	—	CMEN2	CMEN1	CMEN0	000- -000	42, 173
SPBRGH	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register High Byte								0000 0000	42, 146
SPBRG	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register Low Byte								0000 0000	42, 146
RCREG	EUSART Receive Register								0000 0000	42, 153
TXREG	EUSART Transmit Register								0000 0000	42, 151
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	42, 142
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	42, 143
EEADR	EEPROM Address Register								0000 0000	43, 75
EEDATA	EEPROM Data Register								0000 0000	43, 75
EECON2	EEPROM Control Register 2 (not a physical register)								0000 0000	43, 66
EECON1	EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	xx-0 x000	42, 67
IPR3	—	—	—	PTIP	—	—	—	—	---1 ----	43, 97
PIR3	—	—	—	PTIF	—	—	—	—	---0 ----	43, 93
PIE3	—	—	—	PTIE	—	—	—	—	---0 ----	43, 95
IPR2	OSCFIP	—	—	EEIP	—	LVDIP	—	—	1--1 -1--	43, 97
PIR2	OSCFIF	—	—	EEIF	—	LVDIF	—	—	0--0 -0--	43, 93
PIE2	OSCFIE	—	—	EEIE	—	LVDIE	—	—	0--0 -0--	43, 95
IPR1	—	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	CMP2IP	CMP1IP	CMP0IP	TMR1IP	-111 1111	43, 96
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	CMP2IF	CMP1IF	CMP0IF	TMR1IF	-000 0000	43, 92
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	CMP2IE	CMP1IE	CMP0IE	TMR1IE	-000 0000	43, 94
OSCTUNE	INTSRC	PLLEN(2)	—	TUN4	TUN3	TUN2	TUN1	TUN0	00-0 0000	43, 19
PTCON0	PTOPS3	PTOPS2	PTOPS1	PTOPS0	PTCKPS1	PTCKPS0	PTMOD1	PTMOD0	0000 0000	43, 116
PTCON1	PTEN	PTDIR	—	—	—	—	—	—	00-- ----	43, 116

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: The SBOREN bit is only available when the BOREN1:BOREN0 Configuration bits = 01; otherwise, it is disabled and reads as '0'. See **Section 4.4 "Brown-out Reset (BOR)"**.

2: The PLLEN bit is only available in specific oscillator configuration; otherwise, it is disabled and reads as '0'. See **Section 2.6.4 "PLL in INTOSC Modes"**.

3: The RA5 bit is only available when Master Clear Reset is disabled (MCLRE Configuration bit = 0); otherwise, RA5 reads as '0'. This bit is read-only.

4: RA6/RA7 and their associated latch and direction bits are individually configured as port pins based on various primary oscillator modes. When disabled, these bits read as '0'.

5: Bit 7 and bit 6 are cleared by user software or by a POR.

6: Reset condition of PWMEN bits depends on the PWMPIN Configuration bit of CONFIG3L.

7: This bit has no effect if the Configuration bit, WDTEN, is enabled.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 5-2: REGISTER FILE SUMMARY (PIC18F1230/1330) (CONTINUED)

File Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Details on page:
PTMRL	PWM Time Base Register (lower 8 bits)								0000 0000	43, 119
PTMRH	—	—	—	—	PWM Time Base Register (upper 4 bits)				---- 0000	43, 119
PTPERL	PWM Time Base Period Register (lower 8 bits)								1111 1111	43, 119
PTPERH	—	—	—	—	PWM Time Base Period Register (upper 4 bits)				---- 1111	43, 119
TRISB	PORTB Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	43, 84
TRISA	TRISA7(4)	TRISA6(4)	PORTA Data Direction Control Register						1111 1111	43, 81
PDC0L	PWM Duty Cycle #0L Register (lower 8 bits)								0000 0000	43, 125
PDC0H	—	—	PWM Duty Cycle #0H Register (upper 6 bits)						--00 0000	43, 125
PDC1L	PWM Duty Cycle #1L Register (lower 8 bits)								0000 0000	43, 125
PDC1H	—	—	PWM Duty Cycle #1H Register (upper 6 bits)						--00 0000	43, 125
PDC2L	PWM Duty Cycle #2L Register (lower 8 bits)								0000 0000	43, 125
PDC2H	—	—	PWM Duty Cycle #2H Register (upper 6 bits)						--00 0000	43, 125
FLTCONFIG	BRFEN	—	—	—	—	FLTAS	FLTAMOD	FLTAEN	0--- -000	43, 137
LATB	PORTB Data Latch Register (Read and Write to Data Latch)								xxxx xxxx	43, 84
LATA	LATA7(4)	LATA6(4)	PORTA Data Latch Register (Read and Write to Data Latch)						xxxx xxxx	43, 81
SEVTCMPL	PWM Special Event Compare Register (lower 8 bits)								0000 0000	43, 138
SEVTCMPH	—	—	—	—	PWM Special Event Compare Register (upper 4 bits)				---- 0000	44, 138
PWMCON0	—	PWMEN2(6)	PWMEN1(6)	PWMEN0(6)	—	PMOD2	PMOD1	PMOD0	-100 -000 -000 -000	44, 117
PWMCON1	SEVOPS3	SEVOPS2	SEVOPS1	SEVOPS0	SEVTDIR	—	UDIS	OSYNC	0000 0-00	44, 118
DTCON	DTPS1	DTPS0	DT5	DT4	DT3	DT2	DT1	DT0	0000 0000	44, 130
OVDCOND	—	—	POVD5	POVD4	POVD3	POVD2	POVD1	POVD0	--11 1111	44, 134
OVDCONS	—	—	POUT5	POUT4	POUT3	POUT2	POUT1	POUT0	--00 0000	44, 134
PORTB	RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	RB3	RB2	RB1	RB0	xxxx xxxx	44, 84
PORTA	RA7(4)	RA6(4)	RA5(3)	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	xx0x xxxx	44, 81

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: The SBOREN bit is only available when the BOREN1:BOREN0 Configuration bits = 01; otherwise, it is disabled and reads as '0'. See **Section 4.4 "Brown-out Reset (BOR)"**.

2: The PLLEN bit is only available in specific oscillator configuration; otherwise, it is disabled and reads as '0'. See **Section 2.6.4 "PLL in INTOSC Modes"**.

3: The RA5 bit is only available when Master Clear Reset is disabled (MCLRE Configuration bit = 0); otherwise, RA5 reads as '0'. This bit is read-only.

4: RA6/RA7 and their associated latch and direction bits are individually configured as port pins based on various primary oscillator modes. When disabled, these bits read as '0'.

5: Bit 7 and bit 6 are cleared by user software or by a POR.

6: Reset condition of PWMEN bits depends on the PWMPIN Configuration bit of CONFIG3L.

7: This bit has no effect if the Configuration bit, WDTEN, is enabled.

5.3.5 STATUS REGISTER

The STATUS register, shown in Register 5-2, contains the arithmetic status of the ALU. As with any other SFR, it can be the operand for any instruction.

If the STATUS register is the destination for an instruction that affects the Z, DC, C, OV or N bits, the results of the instruction are not written; instead, the STATUS register is updated according to the instruction performed. Therefore, the result of an instruction with the STATUS register as its destination may be different than intended. As an example, `CLRF STATUS` will set the Z bit and leave the remaining Status bits unchanged ('`000u u1uu`').

It is recommended that only `BCF`, `BSF`, `SWAPF`, `MOVFF` and `MOVWF` instructions are used to alter the STATUS register because these instructions do not affect the Z, C, DC, OV or N bits in the STATUS register.

For other instructions that do not affect Status bits, see the instruction set summaries in Table 21-2 and Table 21-3.

Note:	The C and DC bits operate as the $\overline{\text{borrow}}$ and $\overline{\text{digit borrow}}$ bits, respectively, in subtraction.

REGISTER 5-2: STATUS REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
—	—	—	N	OV	Z	DC(1)	C(2)
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '`0`'

bit 4 **N:** Negative bit
This bit is used for signed arithmetic (2's complement). It indicates whether the result was negative (ALU MSB = `1`).
`1` = Result was negative
`0` = Result was positive

bit 3 **OV:** Overflow bit
This bit is used for signed arithmetic (2's complement). It indicates an overflow of the 7-bit magnitude which causes the sign bit (bit 7 of the result) to change state.
`1` = Overflow occurred for signed arithmetic (in this arithmetic operation)
`0` = No overflow occurred

bit 2 **Z:** Zero bit
`1` = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is zero
`0` = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is not zero

bit 1 **DC:** Digit Carry/$\overline{\text{borrow}}$ bit(1)
For `ADDWF`, `ADDLW`, `SUBLW` and `SUBWF` instructions:
`1` = A carry-out from the 4th low-order bit of the result occurred
`0` = No carry-out from the 4th low-order bit of the result

bit 0 **C:** Carry/$\overline{\text{borrow}}$ bit(2)
For `ADDWF`, `ADDLW`, `SUBLW` and `SUBWF` instructions:
`1` = A carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred
`0` = No carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred

Note 1: For $\overline{\text{borrow}}$, the polarity is reversed. A subtraction is executed by adding the 2's complement of the second operand. For rotate (`RRF`, `RLF`) instructions, this bit is loaded with either bit 4 or bit 3 of the source register.

2: For $\overline{\text{borrow}}$, the polarity is reversed. A subtraction is executed by adding the 2's complement of the second operand. For rotate (`RRF`, `RLF`) instructions, this bit is loaded with either the high or low-order bit of the source register.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

5.4 Data Addressing Modes

Note:	The execution of some instructions in the core PIC18 instruction set are changed when the PIC18 extended instruction set is enabled. See **Section 5.5 "Data Memory and the Extended Instruction Set"** for more information.

The data memory space can be addressed in several ways. For most instructions, the addressing mode is fixed. Other instructions may use up to three modes, depending on which operands are used and whether or not the extended instruction set is enabled.

The addressing modes are:

- Inherent
- Literal
- Direct
- Indirect

An additional addressing mode, Indexed Literal Offset, is available when the extended instruction set is enabled (XINST Configuration bit = `1`). Its operation is discussed in greater detail in **Section 5.5.1 "Indexed Addressing with Literal Offset"**.

5.4.1 INHERENT AND LITERAL ADDRESSING

Many PIC18 control instructions do not need any argument at all; they either perform an operation that globally affects the device or they operate implicitly on one register. This addressing mode is known as Inherent Addressing. Examples include `SLEEP`, `RESET` and `DAW`.

Other instructions work in a similar way but require an additional explicit argument in the opcode. This is known as Literal Addressing mode because they require some literal value as an argument. Examples include `ADDLW` and `MOVLW`, which respectively, add or move a literal value to the W register. Other examples include `CALL` and `GOTO`, which include a 20-bit program memory address.

5.4.2 DIRECT ADDRESSING

Direct Addressing specifies all or part of the source and/or destination address of the operation within the opcode itself. The options are specified by the arguments accompanying the instruction.

In the core PIC18 instruction set, bit-oriented and byte-oriented instructions use some version of Direct Addressing by default. All of these instructions include some 8-bit literal address as their Least Significant Byte. This address specifies either a register address in one of the banks of data RAM (**Section 5.3.3 "General Purpose Register File"**) or a location in the Access Bank (**Section 5.3.2 "Access Bank"**) as the data source for the instruction.

The Access RAM bit 'a' determines how the address is interpreted. When 'a' is '`1`', the contents of the BSR (**Section 5.3.1 "Bank Select Register (BSR)"**) are used with the address to determine the complete 12-bit address of the register. When 'a' is '`0`', the address is interpreted as being a register in the Access Bank. Addressing that uses the Access RAM is sometimes also known as Direct Forced Addressing mode.

A few instructions, such as `MOVFF`, include the entire 12-bit address (either source or destination) in their opcodes. In these cases, the BSR is ignored entirely.

The destination of the operation's results is determined by the destination bit 'd'. When 'd' is '`1`', the results are stored back in the source register, overwriting its original contents. When 'd' is '`0`', the results are stored in the W register. Instructions without the 'd' argument have a destination that is implicit in the instruction; their destination is either the target register being operated on or the W register.

5.4.3 INDIRECT ADDRESSING

Indirect Addressing allows the user to access a location in data memory without giving a fixed address in the instruction. This is done by using File Select Registers (FSRs) as pointers to the locations to be read or written to. Since the FSRs are themselves located in RAM as Special Function Registers, they can also be directly manipulated under program control. This makes FSRs very useful in implementing data structures, such as tables and arrays in data memory.

The registers for Indirect Addressing are also implemented with Indirect File Operands (INDFs) that permit automatic manipulation of the pointer value with auto-incrementing, auto-decrementing or offsetting with another value. This allows for efficient code, using loops, such as the example of clearing an entire RAM bank in Example 5-5.

EXAMPLE 5-5: HOW TO CLEAR RAM (BANK 0) USING INDIRECT ADDRESSING

```
        LFSR   FSR0, 00h  ;
NEXT    CLRF   POSTINC0   ; Clear INDF
                          ; register then
                          ; inc pointer
        BTFSS  FSR0H, 0   ; All done with
                          ; Bank0?
        BRA    NEXT       ; NO, clear next
CONTINUE                  ; YES, continue
```

5.4.3.1 FSR Registers and the INDF Operand

At the core of Indirect Addressing are three sets of registers: FSR0, FSR1 and FSR2. Each represents a pair of 8-bit registers, FSRnH and FSRnL. The four upper bits of the FSRnH register are not used so each FSR pair holds a 12-bit value. This represents a value that can address the entire range of the data memory in a linear fashion. The FSR register pairs, then, serve as pointers to data memory locations.

Indirect Addressing is accomplished with a set of Indirect File Operands, INDF0 through INDF2. These can be thought of as “virtual” registers: they are mapped in the SFR space but are not physically implemented. Reading or writing to a particular INDF register actually accesses its corresponding FSR register pair. A read from INDF1, for example, reads the data at the address indicated by FSR1H:FSR1L. Instructions that use the INDF registers as operands actually use the contents of their corresponding FSR as a pointer to the instruction’s target. The INDF operand is just a convenient way of using the pointer.

Because Indirect Addressing uses a full 12-bit address, data RAM banking is not necessary. Thus, the current contents of the BSR and the Access RAM bit have no effect on determining the target address.

5.4.3.2 FSR Registers and POSTINC, POSTDEC, PREINC and PLUSW

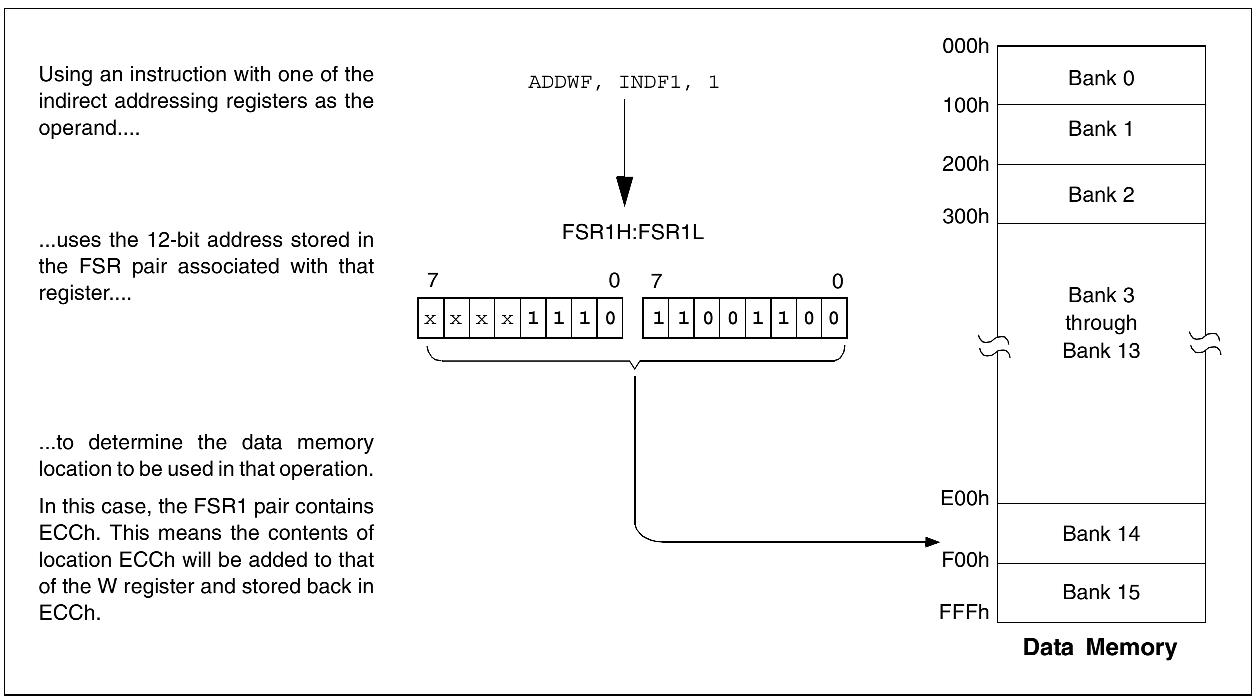
In addition to the INDF operand, each FSR register pair also has four additional indirect operands. Like INDF, these are “virtual” registers that cannot be indirectly read or written to. Accessing these registers actually accesses the associated FSR register pair, but also performs a specific action on its stored value. They are:

- POSTDEC: accesses the FSR value, then automatically decrements it by 1 afterwards
- POSTINC: accesses the FSR value, then automatically increments it by 1 afterwards
- PREINC: increments the FSR value by 1, then uses it in the operation
- PLUSW: adds the signed value of the W register (range of -127 to 128) to that of the FSR and uses the new value in the operation.

In this context, accessing an INDF register uses the value in the FSR registers without changing them. Similarly, accessing a PLUSW register gives the FSR value offset by that in the W register; neither value is actually changed in the operation. Accessing the other virtual registers changes the value of the FSR registers.

Operations on the FSRs with POSTDEC, POSTINC and PREINC affect the entire register pair; that is, rollovers of the FSRnL register from FFh to 00h carry over to the FSRnH register. On the other hand, results of these operations do not change the value of any flags in the STATUS register (e.g., Z, N, OV, etc.).

FIGURE 5-7: INDIRECT ADDRESSING



 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

The PLUSW register can be used to implement a form of Indexed Addressing in the data memory space. By manipulating the value in the W register, users can reach addresses that are fixed offsets from pointer addresses. In some applications, this can be used to implement some powerful program control structure, such as software stacks, inside of data memory.

5.4.3.3 Operations by FSRs on FSRs

Indirect Addressing operations that target other FSRs or virtual registers represent special cases. For example, using an FSR to point to one of the virtual registers will not result in successful operations. As a specific case, assume that FSR0H:FSR0L contains FE7h, the address of INDF1. Attempts to read the value of the INDF1 using INDF0 as an operand will return 00h. Attempts to write to INDF1 using INDF0 as the operand will result in a `NOP`.

On the other hand, using the virtual registers to write to an FSR pair may not occur as planned. In these cases, the value will be written to the FSR pair but without any incrementing or decrementing. Thus, writing to INDF2 or POSTDEC2 will write the same value to the FSR2H:FSR2L.

Since the FSRs are physical registers mapped in the SFR space, they can be manipulated through all direct operations. Users should proceed cautiously when working on these registers, particularly if their code uses Indirect Addressing.

Similarly, operations by Indirect Addressing are generally permitted on all other SFRs. Users should exercise the appropriate caution that they do not inadvertently change settings that might affect the operation of the device.

5.5 Data Memory and the Extended Instruction Set

Enabling the PIC18 extended instruction set (XINST Configuration bit = `1`) significantly changes certain aspects of data memory and its addressing. Specifically, the use of the Access Bank for many of the core PIC18 instructions is different; this is due to the introduction of a new addressing mode for the data memory space.

What does not change is just as important. The size of the data memory space is unchanged, as well as its linear addressing. The SFR map remains the same. Core PIC18 instructions can still operate in both Direct and Indirect Addressing mode; inherent and literal instructions do not change at all. Indirect Addressing with FSR0 and FSR1 also remains unchanged.

5.5.1 INDEXED ADDRESSING WITH LITERAL OFFSET

Enabling the PIC18 extended instruction set changes the behavior of Indirect Addressing using the FSR2 register pair within Access RAM. Under the proper conditions, instructions that use the Access Bank – that is, most bit-oriented and byte-oriented instructions – can invoke a form of Indexed Addressing using an offset specified in the instruction. This special addressing mode is known as Indexed Addressing with Literal Offset, or Indexed Literal Offset mode.

When using the extended instruction set, this addressing mode requires the following:

- The use of the Access Bank is forced (‘a’ = `0`); and
- The file address argument is less than or equal to 5Fh.

Under these conditions, the file address of the instruction is not interpreted as the lower byte of an address (used with the BSR in Direct Addressing), or as an 8-bit address in the Access Bank. Instead, the value is interpreted as an offset value to an Address Pointer, specified by FSR2. The offset and the contents of FSR2 are added to obtain the target address of the operation.

5.5.2 INSTRUCTIONS AFFECTED BY INDEXED LITERAL OFFSET MODE

Any of the core PIC18 instructions that can use Direct Addressing are potentially affected by the Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode. This includes all byte-oriented and bit-oriented instructions, or almost one-half of the standard PIC18 instruction set. Instructions that only use Inherent or Literal Addressing modes are unaffected.

Additionally, byte-oriented and bit-oriented instructions are not affected if they do not use the Access Bank (Access RAM bit is ‘`1`’), or include a file address of 60h or above. Instructions meeting these criteria will continue to execute as before. A comparison of the different possible addressing modes when the extended instruction set is enabled is shown in Figure 5-8.

Those who desire to use bit-oriented or byte-oriented instructions in the Indexed Literal Offset mode should note the changes to assembler syntax for this mode. This is described in more detail in **Section 21.2.1 “Extended Instruction Syntax”**.

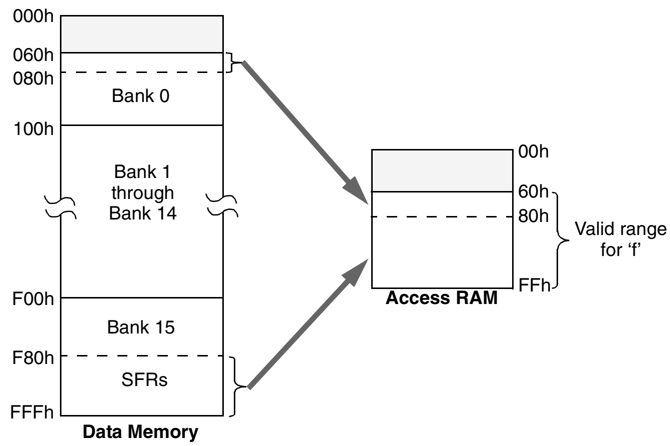
FIGURE 5-8: COMPARING ADDRESSING OPTIONS FOR BIT-ORIENTED AND BYTE-ORIENTED INSTRUCTIONS (EXTENDED INSTRUCTION SET ENABLED)

EXAMPLE INSTRUCTION: `ADDWF, f, d, a` (Opcode: `0010 01da ffff ffff`)

When 'a' = `0` and f ≥ 60h:

The instruction executes in Direct Forced mode. 'f' is interpreted as a location in the Access RAM between 060h and 0FFh. This is the same as locations 060h to 07Fh (Bank 0) and F80h to FFFh (Bank 15) of data memory.

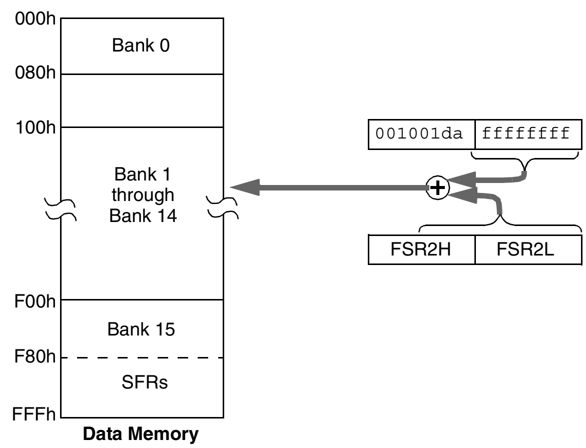
Locations below 60h are not available in this addressing mode.



When 'a' = `0` and f ≤ 5Fh:

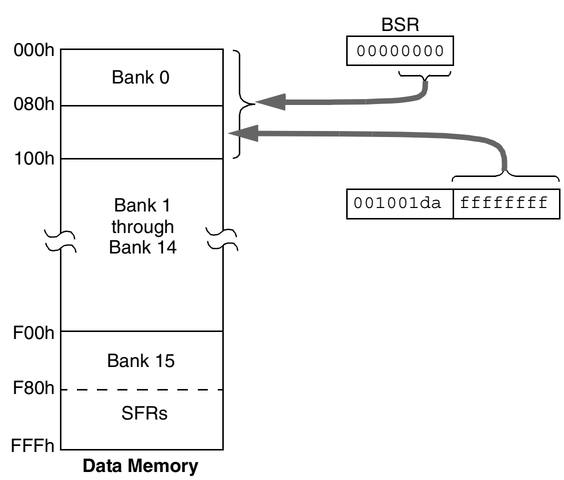
The instruction executes in Indexed Literal Offset mode. 'f' is interpreted as an offset to the address value in FSR2. The two are added together to obtain the address of the target register for the instruction. The address can be anywhere in the data memory space.

Note that in this mode, the correct syntax is now:
`ADDWF [k], d`
where 'k' is the same as 'f'.



When 'a' = `1` (all values of f):

The instruction executes in Direct mode (also known as Direct Long mode). 'f' is interpreted as a location in one of the 16 banks of the data memory space. The bank is designated by the Bank Select Register (BSR). The address can be in any implemented bank in the data memory space.



 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

5.5.3 MAPPING THE ACCESS BANK IN INDEXED LITERAL OFFSET ADDRESSING MODE

The use of Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode effectively changes how the first 96 locations of Access RAM (00h to 5Fh) are mapped. Rather than containing just the contents of the bottom half of Bank 0, this mode maps the contents from Bank 0 and a user-defined "window" that can be located anywhere in the data memory space. The value of FSR2 establishes the lower boundary of the addresses mapped into the window, while the upper boundary is defined by FSR2 plus 95 (5Fh). Addresses in the Access RAM above 5Fh are mapped as previously described (see **Section 5.3.2 "Access Bank"**). An example of Access Bank remapping in this addressing mode is shown in Figure 5-9.

Remapping of the Access Bank applies *only* to operations using the Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode. Operations that use the BSR (Access RAM bit is '1') will continue to use Direct Addressing as before.

5.6 PIC18 Instruction Execution and the Extended Instruction Set

Enabling the extended instruction set adds eight additional commands to the existing PIC18 instruction set. These instructions are executed as described in **Section 21.2 "Extended Instruction Set"**.

FIGURE 5-9: REMAPPING THE ACCESS BANK WITH INDEXED LITERAL OFFSET ADDRESSING MODE

Example Situation:

`ADDWF f, d, a`

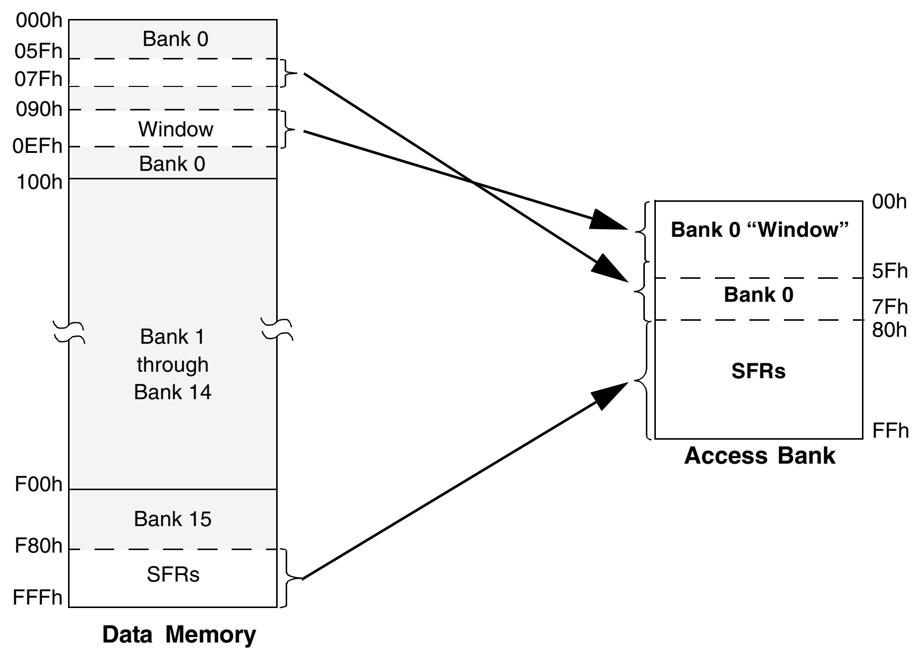
FSR2H:FSR2L = 090h

Locations in the region from the FSR2 Pointer (090h) to the pointer plus 05Fh (0EFh) are mapped to the bottom of the Access RAM (000h-05Fh).

Locations in Bank 0 from 060h to 07Fh are mapped, as usual, to the middle of the Access Bank.

Special Function Registers at F80h through FFFh are mapped to 80h through FFh, as usual.

Bank 0 addresses below 5Fh can still be addressed by using the BSR.



NOTES:

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

6.0 FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

The Flash program memory is readable, writable and erasable during normal operation over the entire V_{DD} range.

A read from program memory is executed on one byte at a time. A write to program memory is executed on blocks of 8 bytes at a time. Program memory is erased in blocks of 64 bytes at a time. A bulk erase operation may not be issued from user code.

Writing or erasing program memory will cease instruction fetches until the operation is complete. The program memory cannot be accessed during the write or erase, therefore, code cannot execute. An internal programming timer terminates program memory writes and erases.

A value written to program memory does not need to be a valid instruction. Executing a program memory location that forms an invalid instruction results in a NOP.

6.1 Table Reads and Table Writes

In order to read and write program memory, there are two operations that allow the processor to move bytes between the program memory space and the data RAM:

- Table Read (TBLRD)
- Table Write (TBLWT)

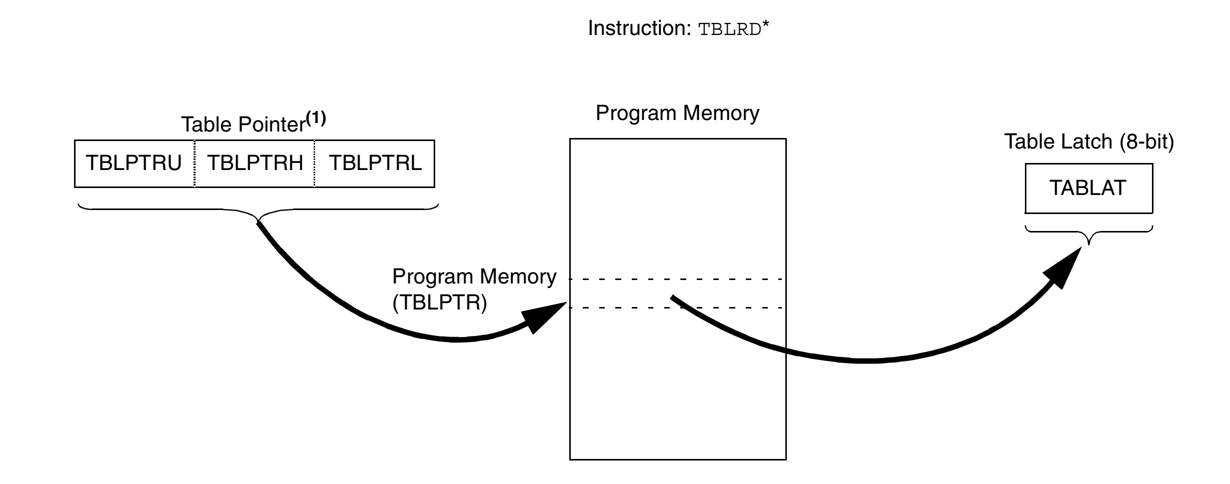
The program memory space is 16 bits wide, while the data RAM space is 8 bits wide. Table reads and table writes move data between these two memory spaces through an 8-bit register (TABLAT).

Table read operations retrieve data from program memory and place it into the data RAM space. Figure 6-1 shows the operation of a table read with program memory and data RAM.

Table write operations store data from the data memory space into holding registers in program memory. The procedure to write the contents of the holding registers into program memory is detailed in **Section 6.5 "Writing to Flash Program Memory"**. Figure 6-2 shows the operation of a table write with program memory and data RAM.

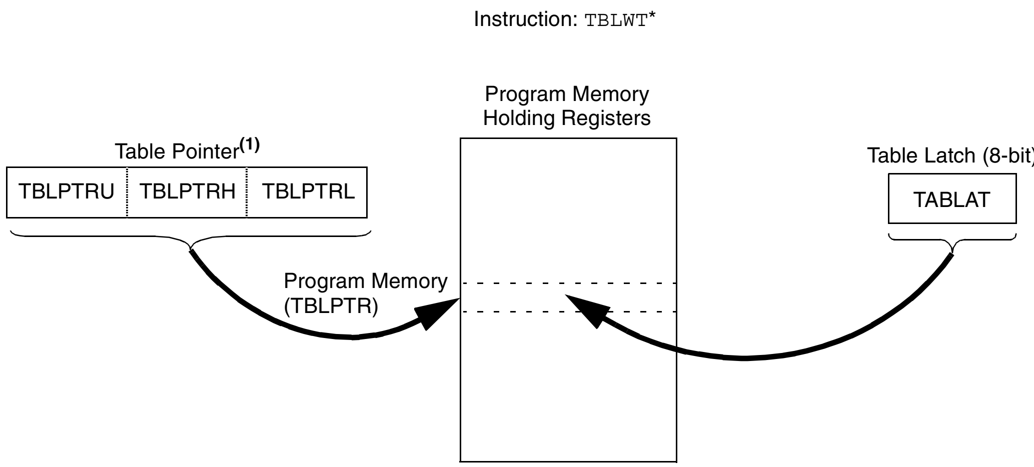
Table operations work with byte entities. A table block containing data, rather than program instructions, is not required to be word-aligned. Therefore, a table block can start and end at any byte address. If a table write is being used to write executable code into program memory, program instructions will need to be word-aligned.

FIGURE 6-1: TABLE READ OPERATION



Note 1: Table Pointer register points to a byte in program memory.

FIGURE 6-2: TABLE WRITE OPERATION



Note 1: Table Pointer actually points to one of 8 holding registers, the address of which is determined by TBLPTRL<5:0>. The process for physically writing data to the program memory array is discussed in **Section 6.5 "Writing to Flash Program Memory"**.

6.2 Control Registers

Several control registers are used in conjunction with the TBLRD and TBLWT instructions. These include the:

- EECON1 register
- EECON2 register
- TABLAT register
- TBLPTR registers

6.2.1 EECON1 AND EECON2 REGISTERS

The EECON1 register (Register 6-1) is the control register for memory accesses. The EECON2 register is not a physical register; it is used exclusively in the memory write and erase sequences. Reading EECON2 will read all '0's.

The EEPGD control bit determines if the access will be a program or data EEPROM memory access. When clear, any subsequent operations will operate on the data EEPROM memory. When set, any subsequent operations will operate on the program memory.

The CFGS control bit determines if the access will be to the Configuration/Calibration registers or to program memory/data EEPROM memory. When set, subsequent operations will operate on Configuration registers regardless of EEPGD (see **Section 19.0 "Special Features of the CPU"**). When clear, memory selection access is determined by EEPGD.

The FREE bit, when set, will allow a program memory erase operation. When FREE is set, the erase operation is initiated on the next WR command. When FREE is clear, only writes are enabled.

The WREN bit, when set, will allow a write operation. On power-up, the WREN bit is clear. The WRERR bit is set in hardware when the WR bit is set and cleared when the internal programming timer expires and the write operation is complete.

Note:	During normal operation, the WRERR may read as '1'. This can indicate that a write operation was prematurely terminated by a Reset, or a write operation was attempted improperly.

The WR control bit initiates write operations. The bit cannot be cleared, only set, in software; it is cleared in hardware at the completion of the write operation.

Note:	The EEIF interrupt flag bit (PIR2<4>) is set when the write is complete. It must be cleared in software.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 6-1: EECON1: EEPROM CONTROL REGISTER 1

R/W-x	R/W-x	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-x	R/W-0	R/S-0	R/S-0
EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR(1)	WREN	WR	RD
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	S = Settable bit		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **EEPGD:** Flash Program or Data EEPROM Memory Select bit
1 = Access Flash program memory
0 = Access data EEPROM memory

bit 6 **CFGS:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM or Configuration Select bit
1 = Access Configuration registers
0 = Access Flash program or data EEPROM memory

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 4 **FREE:** Flash Row Erase Enable bit
1 = Erase the program memory row addressed by TBLPTR on the next WR command (cleared by completion of erase operation)
0 = Perform write-only

bit 3 **WRERR:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM Error Flag bit(1)
1 = A write operation is prematurely terminated (any Reset during self-timed programming in normal operation, or an improper write attempt)
0 = The write operation completed

bit 2 **WREN:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM Write Enable bit
1 = Allows write cycles to Flash program/data EEPROM
0 = Inhibits write cycles to Flash program/data EEPROM

bit 1 **WR:** Write Control bit
1 = Initiates a data EEPROM erase/write cycle or a program memory erase cycle or write cycle. (The operation is self-timed and the bit is cleared by hardware once write is complete. The WR bit can only be set (not cleared) in software.)
0 = Write cycle to the EEPROM is complete

bit 0 **RD:** Read Control bit
1 = Initiates an EEPROM read. (Read takes one cycle. RD is cleared in hardware. The RD bit can only be set (not cleared) in software. RD bit cannot be set when EEPGD = 1 or CFGS = 1.)
0 = Does not initiate an EEPROM read

Note 1: When a WRERR occurs, the EEPGD and CFGS bits are not cleared. This allows tracing of the error condition.

6.2.2 TABLAT – TABLE LATCH REGISTER

The Table Latch (TABLAT) is an 8-bit register mapped into the SFR space. The Table Latch register is used to hold 8-bit data during data transfers between program memory and data RAM.

6.2.3 TBLPTR – TABLE POINTER REGISTER

The Table Pointer (TBLPTR) register addresses a byte within the program memory. The TBLPTR is comprised of three SFR registers: Table Pointer Upper Byte, Table Pointer High Byte and Table Pointer Low Byte (TBLPTRU:TBLPTRH:TBLPTRL). These three registers join to form a 22-bit wide pointer. The low-order 21 bits allow the device to address up to 2 Mbytes of program memory space. The 22nd bit allows access to the device ID, the user ID and the Configuration bits.

The Table Pointer register, TBLPTR, is used by the `TBLRD` and `TBLWT` instructions. These instructions can update the TBLPTR in one of four ways based on the table operation. These operations are shown in Table 6-1. These operations on the TBLPTR only affect the low-order 21 bits.

6.2.4 TABLE POINTER BOUNDARIES

TBLPTR is used in reads, writes and erases of the Flash program memory.

When a `TBLRD` is executed, all 22 bits of the TBLPTR determine which byte is read from program memory into TABLAT.

When a `TBLWT` is executed, the three LSbs of the Table Pointer register (TBLPTR<2:0>) determine which of the 8 program memory holding registers is written to. When the timed write to program memory begins (via the WR bit), the 19 MSbs of the TBLPTR (TBLPTR<21:3>) determine which program memory block of 8 bytes is written to. For more detail, see **Section 6.5 "Writing to Flash Program Memory"**.

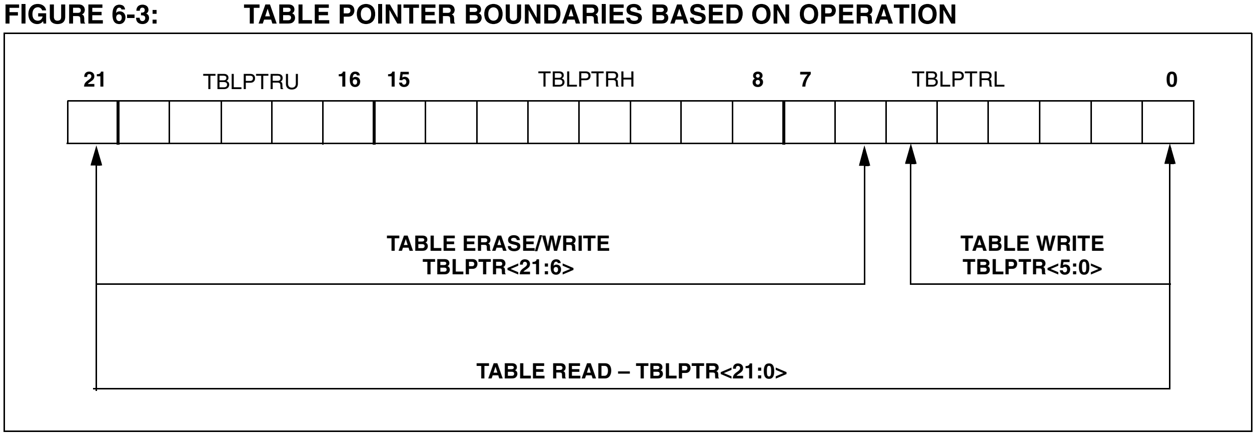
When an erase of program memory is executed, the 16 MSbs of the Table Pointer register (TBLPTR<21:6>) point to the 64-byte block that will be erased. The Least Significant bits (TBLPTR<5:0>) are ignored.

Figure 6-3 describes the relevant boundaries of TBLPTR based on Flash program memory operations.

TABLE 6-1: TABLE POINTER OPERATIONS WITH `TBLRD` AND `TBLWT` INSTRUCTIONS

Example	Operation on Table Pointer
`TBLRD*` `TBLWT*`	TBLPTR is not modified
`TBLRD*+` `TBLWT*+`	TBLPTR is incremented after the read/write
`TBLRD*-` `TBLWT*-`	TBLPTR is decremented after the read/write
`TBLRD+*` `TBLWT+*`	TBLPTR is incremented before the read/write

FIGURE 6-3: TABLE POINTER BOUNDARIES BASED ON OPERATION



 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

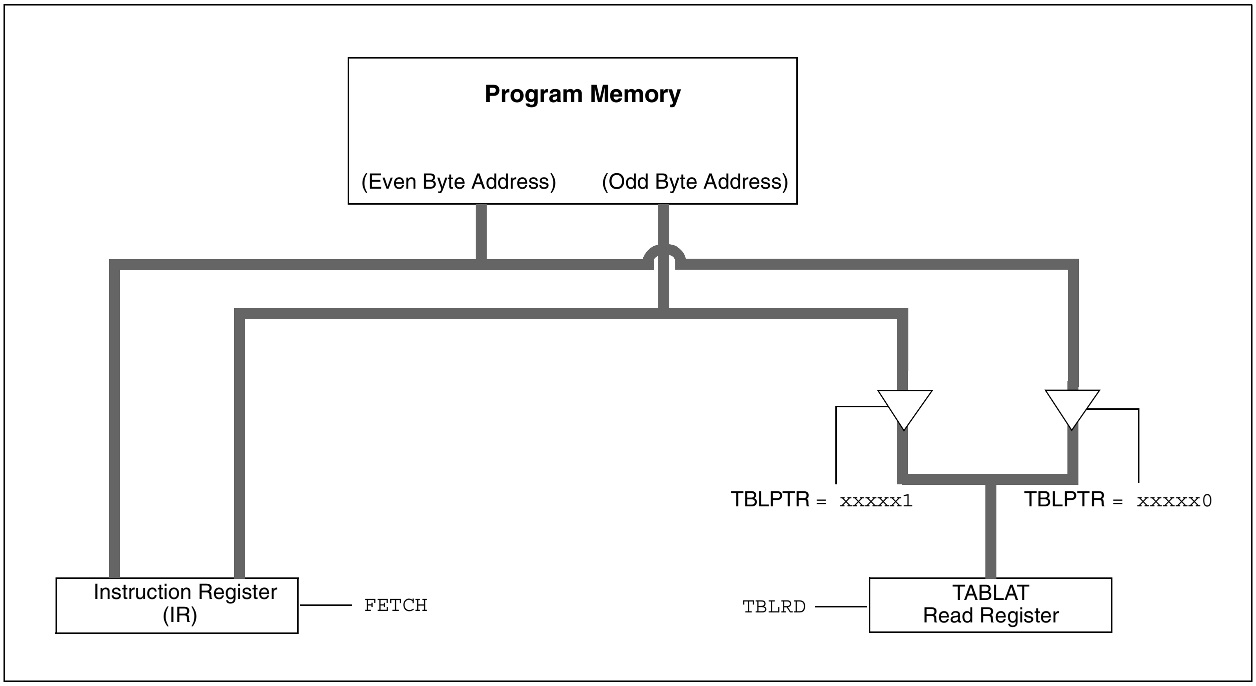
6.3 Reading the Flash Program Memory

The TBLRD instruction is used to retrieve data from program memory and places it into data RAM. Table reads from program memory are performed one byte at a time.

TBLPTR points to a byte address in program space. Executing TBLRD places the byte pointed to into TABLAT. In addition, TBLPTR can be modified automatically for the next table read operation.

The internal program memory is typically organized by words. The Least Significant bit of the address selects between the high and low bytes of the word. Figure 6-4 shows the interface between the internal program memory and the TABLAT.

FIGURE 6-4: READS FROM FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY



EXAMPLE 6-1: READING A FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY WORD

```
          MOVLW    CODE_ADDR_UPPER      ; Load TBLPTR with the base
          MOVWF    TBLPTRU              ; address of the word
          MOVLW    CODE_ADDR_HIGH
          MOVWF    TBLPTRH
          MOVLW    CODE_ADDR_LOW
          MOVWF    TBLPTRL
READ_WORD
          TBLRD*+                       ; read into TABLAT and increment
          MOVF     TABLAT, W            ; get data
          MOVWF    WORD_EVEN
          TBLRD*+                       ; read into TABLAT and increment
          MOVF     TABLAT, W            ; get data
          MOVWF    WORD_ODD
```

6.4 Erasing Flash Program Memory

The minimum erase block is 32 words or 64 bytes. Only through the use of an external programmer, or through ICSP control, can larger blocks of program memory be bulk erased. Word erase in the Flash array is not supported.

When initiating an erase sequence from the microcontroller itself, a block of 64 bytes of program memory is erased. The Most Significant 16 bits of the TBLPTR<21:6> point to the block being erased. TBLPTR<5:0> are ignored.

The EECON1 register commands the erase operation. The EEPGD bit must be set to point to the Flash program memory. The WREN bit must be set to enable write operations. The FREE bit is set to select an erase operation.

For protection, the write initiate sequence for EECON2 must be used.

A long write is necessary for erasing the internal Flash. Instruction execution is halted while in a long write cycle. The long write will be terminated by the internal programming timer.

6.4.1 FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY ERASE SEQUENCE

The sequence of events for erasing a block of internal program memory location is:

1. Load Table Pointer register with address of row being erased.
2. Set the EECON1 register for the erase operation:
   - set EEPGD bit to point to program memory;
   - clear the CFGS bit to access program memory;
   - set WREN bit to enable writes;
   - set FREE bit to enable the erase.
3. Disable interrupts.
4. Write 55h to EECON2.
5. Write 0AAh to EECON2.
6. Set the WR bit. This will begin the row erase cycle.
7. The CPU will stall for duration of the erase (about 2 ms using internal timer).
8. Re-enable interrupts.

EXAMPLE 6-2: ERASING A FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY ROW

```
                  MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_UPPER        ; load TBLPTR with the base
                  MOVWF   TBLPTRU                ; address of the memory block
                  MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_HIGH
                  MOVWF   TBLPTRH
                  MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_LOW
                  MOVWF   TBLPTRL
        ERASE_ROW
                  BSF     EECON1, EEPGD          ; point to Flash program memory
                  BCF     EECON1, CFGS           ; access Flash program memory
                  BSF     EECON1, WREN           ; enable write to memory
                  BSF     EECON1, FREE           ; enable Row Erase operation
                  BCF     INTCON, GIE            ; disable interrupts
    Required      MOVLW   55h
    Sequence      MOVWF   EECON2                 ; write 55h
                  MOVLW   0AAh
                  MOVWF   EECON2                 ; write 0AAh
                  BSF     EECON1, WR             ; start erase (CPU stall)
                  BSF     INTCON, GIE            ; re-enable interrupts
```

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

6.5 Writing to Flash Program Memory

The minimum programming block is 4 words or 8 bytes. Word or byte programming is not supported.

Table writes are used internally to load the holding registers needed to program the Flash memory. There are 8 holding registers used by the table writes for programming.

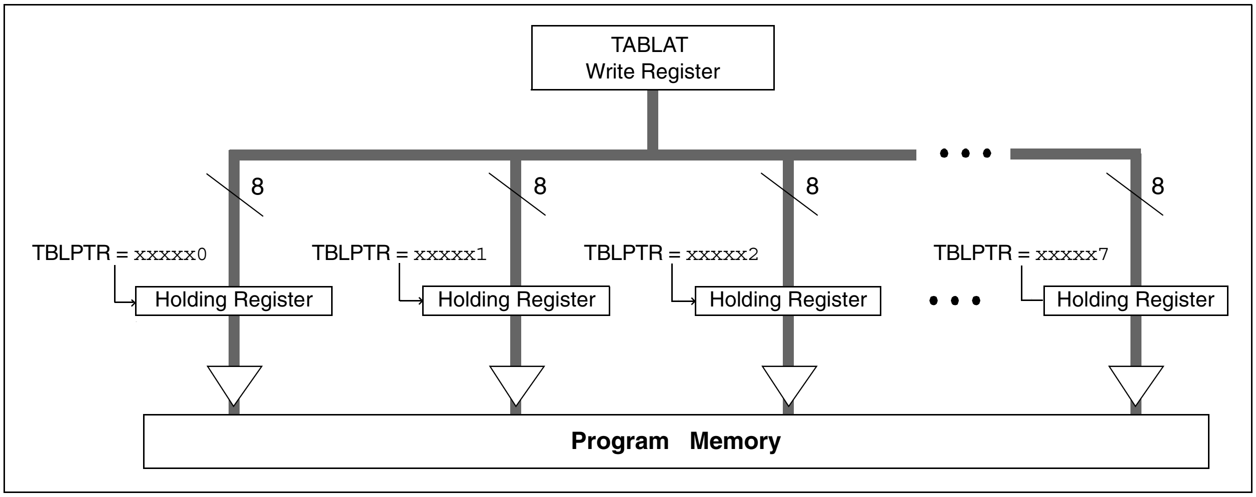
Since the Table Latch (TABLAT) is only a single byte, the `TBLWT` instruction may need to be executed 8 times for each programming operation. All of the table write operations will essentially be short writes because only the holding registers are written. At the end of updating the 8 holding registers, the EECON1 register must be written to in order to start the programming operation with a long write.

The long write is necessary for programming the internal Flash. Instruction execution is halted while in a long write cycle. The long write will be terminated by the internal programming timer.

The EEPROM on-chip timer controls the write time. The write/erase voltages are generated by an on-chip charge pump, rated to operate over the voltage range of the device.

> **Note:** The default value of the holding registers on device Resets and after write operations is FFh. A write of FFh to a holding register does not modify that byte. This means that individual bytes of program memory may be modified, provided that the change does not attempt to change any bit from a '0' to a '1'. When modifying individual bytes, it is not necessary to load all 8 holding registers before executing a write operation.

FIGURE 6-5: TABLE WRITES TO FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY



6.5.1 FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY WRITE SEQUENCE

The sequence of events for programming an internal program memory location should be:

1. Read 8 bytes into RAM.
2. Update data values in RAM as necessary.
3. Load Table Pointer register with address being erased.
4. Execute the row erase procedure.
5. Load Table Pointer register with address of first byte being written.
6. Write the 8 bytes into the holding registers with auto-increment.
7. Set the EECON1 register for the write operation:
   - set EEPGD bit to point to program memory;
   - clear the CFGS bit to access program memory;
   - set WREN to enable byte writes.
8. Disable interrupts.
9. Write 55h to EECON2.
10. Write 0AAh to EECON2.
11. Set the WR bit. This will begin the write cycle.
12. The CPU will stall for duration of the write (about 2 ms using internal timer).
13. Re-enable interrupts.
14. Verify the memory (table read).

This procedure will require about 6 ms to update one row of 8 bytes of memory. An example of the required code is given in Example 6-3.

> **Note:** Before setting the WR bit, the Table Pointer address needs to be within the intended address range of the 8 bytes in the holding register.

EXAMPLE 6-3: WRITING TO FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

```
               MOVLW   D'8                          ; number of bytes in erase block
               MOVWF   COUNTER
               MOVLW   BUFFER_ADDR_HIGH             ; point to buffer
               MOVWF   FSR0H
               MOVLW   BUFFER_ADDR_LOW
               MOVWF   FSR0L
               MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_UPPER              ; Load TBLPTR with the base
               MOVWF   TBLPTRU                      ; address of the memory block
               MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_HIGH
               MOVWF   TBLPTRH
               MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_LOW
               MOVWF   TBLPTRL
READ_BLOCK
               TBLRD*+                              ; read into TABLAT, and inc
               MOVF    TABLAT, W                    ; get data
               MOVWF   POSTINC0                     ; store data
               DECFSZ  COUNTER                      ; done?
               BRA     READ_BLOCK                   ; repeat
MODIFY_WORD
               MOVLW   DATA_ADDR_HIGH               ; point to buffer
               MOVWF   FSR0H
               MOVLW   DATA_ADDR_LOW
               MOVWF   FSR0L
               MOVLW   NEW_DATA_LOW                 ; update buffer word
               MOVWF   POSTINC0
               MOVLW   NEW_DATA_HIGH
               MOVWF   INDF0
ERASE_BLOCK
               MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_UPPER              ; load TBLPTR with the base
               MOVWF   TBLPTRU                      ; address of the memory block
               MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_HIGH
               MOVWF   TBLPTRH
               MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_LOW
               MOVWF   TBLPTRL
               BSF     EECON1, EEPGD                ; point to Flash program memory
               BCF     EECON1, CFGS                 ; access Flash program memory
               BSF     EECON1, WREN                 ; enable write to memory
               BSF     EECON1, FREE                 ; enable Row Erase operation
               BCF     INTCON, GIE                  ; disable interrupts
               MOVLW   55h
Required       MOVWF   EECON2                       ; write 55h
Sequence       MOVLW   0AAh
               MOVWF   EECON2                       ; write 0AAh
               BSF     EECON1, WR                   ; start erase (CPU stall)
               BSF     INTCON, GIE                  ; re-enable interrupts
               TBLRD*-                              ; dummy read decrement
               MOVLW   BUFFER_ADDR_HIGH             ; point to buffer
               MOVWF   FSR0H
               MOVLW   BUFFER_ADDR_LOW
               MOVWF   FSR0L
WRITE_BUFFER_BACK
               MOVLW   D’8                          ; number of bytes in holding register
               MOVWF   COUNTER
WRITE_BYTE_TO_HREGS
               MOVFF   POSTINC0, WREG               ; get low byte of buffer data
               MOVWF   TABLAT                       ; present data to table latch
               TBLWT+*                              ; write data, perform a short write
                                                    ; to internal TBLWT holding register.
               DECFSZ  COUNTER                      ; loop until buffers are full
               BRA     WRITE_WORD_TO_HREGS
```

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

EXAMPLE 6-3: WRITING TO FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY (CONTINUED)

```
PROGRAM_MEMORY
               BSF     EECON1, EEPGD           ; point to Flash program memory
               BCF     EECON1, CFGS            ; access Flash program memory
               BSF     EECON1, WREN            ; enable write to memory
               BCF     INTCON, GIE             ; disable interrupts
               MOVLW   55h
    Required   MOVWF   EECON2                  ; write 55h
    Sequence   MOVLW   0AAh
               MOVWF   EECON2                  ; write 0AAh
               BSF     EECON1, WR              ; start program (CPU stall)
               BSF     INTCON, GIE             ; re-enable interrupts
               BCF     EECON1, WREN            ; disable write to memory
```

6.5.2 WRITE VERIFY

Depending on the application, good programming practice may dictate that the value written to the memory should be verified against the original value. This should be used in applications where excessive writes can stress bits near the specification limit.

6.5.3 UNEXPECTED TERMINATION OF WRITE OPERATION

If a write is terminated by an unplanned event, such as loss of power or an unexpected Reset, the memory location just programmed should be verified and reprogrammed, if needed. If the write operation is interrupted by a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset or a WDT Time-out Reset during normal operation, the user can check the WRERR bit and rewrite the location(s) as needed.

6.5.4 PROTECTION AGAINST SPURIOUS WRITES

To protect against spurious writes to Flash program memory, the write initiate sequence must also be followed. See **Section 19.0 "Special Features of the CPU"** for more detail.

6.6 Flash Program Operation During Code Protection

See **Section 19.5 "Program Verification and Code Protection"** for details on code protection of Flash program memory.

TABLE 6-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PROGRAM FLASH MEMORY

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
TBLPTRU	—	—	bit 21	Program Memory Table Pointer Upper Byte (TBLPTR<20:16>)					41
TBPLTRH	Program Memory Table Pointer High Byte (TBLPTR<15:8>)								41
TBLPTRL	Program Memory Table Pointer Low Byte (TBLPTR<7:0>)								41
TABLAT	Program Memory Table Latch								41
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
EECON2	EEPROM Control Register 2 (not a physical register)								43
EECON1	EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	43
IPR2	OSCFIP	—	—	EEIP	—	LVDIP	—	—	43
PIR2	OSCFIF	—	—	EEIF	—	LVDIF	—	—	43
PIE2	OSCFIE	—	—	EEIE	—	LVDIE	—	—	43

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used during Flash/EEPROM access.

NOTES:

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

7.0 DATA EEPROM MEMORY

The data EEPROM is readable and writable during normal operation over the entire VDD range. The data memory is not directly mapped in the register file space. Instead, it is indirectly addressed through the Special Function Registers (SFR).

There are four SFRs used to read and write the program and data EEPROM memory. These registers are:

- EECON1
- EECON2
- EEDATA
- EEADR

The EEPROM data memory allows byte read and write. When interfacing to the data memory block, EEDATA holds the 8-bit data for read/write and EEADR holds the address of the EEPROM location being accessed. These devices have 128 bytes of data EEPROM with an address range from 00h to FFh.

The EEPROM data memory is rated for high erase/write cycle endurance. A byte write automatically erases the location and writes the new data (erase-before-write). The write time is controlled by an on-chip timer. The write time will vary with voltage and temperature, as well as from chip-to-chip. Please refer to parameter D122 (Table 22-1 in **Section 22.0 “Electrical Characteristics”**) for exact limits.

7.1 EEADR Register

The EEPROM Address register can address 256 bytes of data EEPROM.

7.2 EECON1 and EECON2 Registers

EECON1 is the control register for memory accesses.

EECON2 is not a physical register. Reading EECON2 will read all ‘0’s. The EECON2 register is used exclusively in the memory write and erase sequences.

Control bit, EEPGD, determines if the access will be to program or data EEPROM memory. When clear, operations will access the data EEPROM memory. When set, program memory is accessed.

Control bit, CFGS, determines if the access will be to the Configuration registers or to program memory/data EEPROM memory. When set, subsequent operations access Configuration registers. When CFGS is clear, the EEPGD bit selects either program Flash or data EEPROM memory.

The WREN bit enables and disables erase and write operations. When set, erase and write operations are allowed. When clear, erase and write operations are disabled; the WR bit cannot be set while the WREN bit is clear. This mechanism helps to prevent accidental writes to memory due to errant (unexpected) code execution.

Firmware should keep the WREN bit clear at all times, except when starting erase or write operations. Once firmware has set the WR bit, the WREN bit may be cleared. Clearing the WREN bit will not affect the operation in progress.

The WRERR bit is set when a write operation is interrupted by a Reset. In these situations, the user can check the WRERR bit and rewrite the location. It is necessary to reload the data and address registers (EEDATA and EEADR), as these registers have cleared as a result of the Reset.

Control bits, RD and WR, start read and erase/write operations, respectively. These bits are set by firmware and cleared by hardware at the completion of the operation.

The RD bit cannot be set when accessing program memory (EEPGD = 1). Program memory is read using table read instructions. See **Section 6.1 “Table Reads and Table Writes”** regarding table reads.

Note:	Interrupt flag bit, EEIF in the PIR2 register, is set when write is complete. It must be cleared in software.

REGISTER 7-1: EECON1: EEPROM CONTROL REGISTER 1

R/W-x	R/W-x	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-x	R/W-0	R/S-0	R/S-0
EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR(1)	WREN	WR	RD
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	S = Settable bit		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **EEPGD:** Flash Program or Data EEPROM Memory Select bit
1 = Access Flash program memory
0 = Access data EEPROM memory

bit 6 **CFGS:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM or Configuration Select bit
1 = Access Configuration registers
0 = Access Flash program or data EEPROM memory

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 4 **FREE:** Flash Row Erase Enable bit
1 = Erase the program memory row addressed by TBLPTR on the next WR command (cleared by completion of erase operation)
0 = Perform write-only

bit 3 **WRERR:** EEPROM Error Flag bit(1)
1 = A write operation is prematurely terminated (MCLR or WDT Reset during self-timed erase or program operation)
0 = The write operation completed

bit 2 **WREN:** Erase/Write Enable bit
1 = Allows erase/write cycles
0 = Inhibits erase/write cycles

bit 1 **WR:** Write Control bit
1 = Initiates a data EEPROM erase/write cycle or a program memory erase cycle or write cycle. (The operation is self-timed and the bit is cleared by hardware once write is complete. The WR bit can only be set (not cleared) in software.)
0 = Write cycle to is completed

bit 0 **RD:** Read Control bit
1 = Initiates a memory read. (Read takes one cycle. RD is cleared in hardware. The RD bit can only be set (not cleared) in software. RD bit cannot be set when EEPGD = 1.)
0 = Read completed

Note 1: When a WRERR occurs, the EEPGD or FREE bit is not cleared. This allows tracing of the error condition.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

7.3 Reading the Data EEPROM Memory

To read a data memory location, the user must write the address to the EEADR register, clear the EEPGD control bit (EECON1<7>) and then set control bit RD (EECON1<0>). The data is available for the very next instruction cycle; therefore, the EEDATA register can be read by the next instruction. EEDATA will hold this value until another read operation, or until it is written to by the user (during a write operation).

7.4 Writing to the Data EEPROM Memory

To write an EEPROM data location, the address must first be written to the EEADR register and the data written to the EEDATA register. The sequence in Example 7-2 must be followed to initiate the write cycle.

The write will not begin if this sequence is not exactly followed (write 55h to EECON2, write 0AAh to EECON2, then set WR bit) for each byte. It is strongly recommended that interrupts be disabled during this code segment.

Additionally, the WREN bit in EECON1 must be set to enable writes. This mechanism prevents accidental writes to data EEPROM due to unexpected code execution (i.e., runaway programs). The WREN bit should be kept clear at all times, except when updating the EEPROM. The WREN bit is not cleared by hardware.

After a write sequence has been initiated, EECON1, EEADR and EEDATA cannot be modified. The WR bit will be inhibited from being set unless the WREN bit is set. The WREN bit must be set on a previous instruction. Both WR and WREN cannot be set with the same instruction.

At the completion of the write cycle, the WR bit is cleared in hardware and the EEPROM Interrupt Flag bit (EEIF) is set. The user may either enable this interrupt or poll this bit. EEIF must be cleared by software.

7.5 Write Verify

Depending on the application, good programming practice may dictate that the value written to the memory should be verified against the original value. This should be used in applications where excessive writes can stress bits near the specification limit.

7.6 Protection Against Spurious Write

There are conditions when the device may not want to write to the data EEPROM memory. To protect against spurious EEPROM writes, various mechanisms have been built-in. On power-up, the WREN bit is cleared. Also, the Power-up Timer (72 ms duration) prevents EEPROM write.

The write initiate sequence and the WREN bit together help prevent an accidental write during brown-out, power glitch, or software malfunction.

EXAMPLE 7-1: DATA EEPROM READ

```
      MOVLW   DATA_EE_ADDR            ;
      MOVWF   EEADR                   ; Data Memory Address to read
      BCF     EECON1, EEPGD           ; Point to DATA memory
      BSF     EECON1, RD              ; EEPROM Read
      MOVF    EEDATA, W               ; W = EEDATA
```

EXAMPLE 7-2: DATA EEPROM WRITE

```
            MOVLW   DATA_EE_ADDR            ;
            MOVWF   EEADR                   ; Data Memory Address to write
            MOVLW   DATA_EE_DATA            ;
            MOVWF   EEDATA                  ; Data Memory Value to write
            BCF     EECON1, EEPGD           ; Point to DATA memory
            BSF     EECON1, WREN            ; Enable writes
            BCF     INTCON, GIE             ; Disable Interrupts
            MOVLW   55h                     ;
Required    MOVWF   EECON2                  ; Write 55h
Sequence    MOVLW   0AAh                    ;
            MOVWF   EECON2                  ; Write 0AAh
            BSF     EECON1, WR              ; Set WR bit to begin write
            BSF     INTCON, GIE             ; Enable Interrupts

            SLEEP                           ; Wait for interrupt to signal write complete
            BCF     EECON1, WREN            ; Disable writes
```

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

7.7 Operation During Code-Protect

Data EEPROM memory has its own code-protect bits in Configuration Words. External read and write operations are disabled if either of these mechanisms are enabled.

The microcontroller itself can both read and write to the internal data EEPROM, regardless of the state of the code-protect Configuration bit. Refer to **Section 19.0 "Special Features of the CPU"** for additional information.

7.8 Using the Data EEPROM

The data EEPROM is a high-endurance, byte addressable array that has been optimized for the storage of frequently changing information (e.g., program variables or other data that are updated often). Frequently changing values will typically be updated more often than specification D124 or D124A. If this is not the case, an array refresh must be performed. For this reason, variables that change infrequently (such as constants, IDs, calibration, etc.) should be stored in Flash program memory.

A simple data EEPROM refresh routine is shown in Example 7-3.

Note:	If data EEPROM is only used to store constants and/or data that changes rarely, an array refresh is likely not required. See specification D124 or D124A.

EXAMPLE 7-3: DATA EEPROM REFRESH ROUTINE

```
        CLRF    EEADR                   ; Start at address 0
        BCF     EECON1, CFGS            ; Set for memory
        BCF     EECON1, EEPGD           ; Set for Data EEPROM
        BCF     INTCON, GIE             ; Disable interrupts
        BSF     EECON1, WREN            ; Enable writes
LOOP                                    ; Loop to refresh array
        BSF     EECON1, RD              ; Read current address
        MOVLW   55h                     ;
        MOVWF   EECON2                  ; Write 55h
        MOVLW   0AAh                    ;
        MOVWF   EECON2                  ; Write 0AAh
        BSF     EECON1, WR              ; Set WR bit to begin write
        BTFSC   EECON1, WR              ; Wait for write to complete
        BRA     $-2
        INCFSZ  EEADR, F                ; Increment address
        BRA     Loop                    ; Not zero, do it again

        BCF     EECON1, WREN            ; Disable writes
        BSF     INTCON, GIE             ; Enable interrupts
```

TABLE 7-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH DATA EEPROM MEMORY

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
EEADR	EEPROM Address Register								43
EEDATA	EEPROM Data Register								43
EECON2	EEPROM Control Register 2 (not a physical register)								43
EECON1	EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	43
IPR2	OSCFIP	—	—	EEIP	—	LVDIP	—	—	43
PIR2	OSCFIF	—	—	EEIF	—	LVDIF	—	—	43
PIE2	OSCFIE	—	—	EEIE	—	LVDIE	—	—	43

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used during Flash/EEPROM access.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

8.0 8 x 8 HARDWARE MULTIPLIER

8.1 Introduction

All PIC18 devices include an 8 x 8 hardware multiplier as part of the ALU. The multiplier performs an unsigned operation and yields a 16-bit result that is stored in the Product register pair, PRODH:PRODL. The multiplier's operation does not affect any flags in the STATUS register.

Making multiplication a hardware operation allows it to be completed in a single instruction cycle. This has the advantages of higher computational throughput and reduced code size for multiplication algorithms and allows the PIC18 devices to be used in many applications previously reserved for digital signal processors. A comparison of various hardware and software multiply operations, along with the savings in memory and execution time, is shown in Table 8-1.

8.2 Operation

Example 8-1 shows the instruction sequence for an 8 x 8 unsigned multiplication. Only one instruction is required when one of the arguments is already loaded in the WREG register.

Example 8-2 shows the sequence to do an 8 x 8 signed multiplication. To account for the sign bits of the arguments, each argument's Most Significant bit (MSb) is tested and the appropriate subtractions are done.

EXAMPLE 8-1: 8 x 8 UNSIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
MOVF    ARG1, W     ;
MULWF   ARG2        ; ARG1 * ARG2 ->
                    ; PRODH:PRODL
```

EXAMPLE 8-2: 8 x 8 SIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
MOVF    ARG1, W
MULWF   ARG2        ; ARG1 * ARG2 ->
                    ; PRODH:PRODL
BTFSC   ARG2, SB    ; Test Sign Bit
SUBWF   PRODH, F    ; PRODH = PRODH
                    ;         - ARG1
MOVF    ARG2, W
BTFSC   ARG1, SB    ; Test Sign Bit
SUBWF   PRODH, F    ; PRODH = PRODH
                    ;         - ARG2
```

TABLE 8-1: PERFORMANCE COMPARISON FOR VARIOUS MULTIPLY OPERATIONS

Routine	Multiply Method	Program Memory (Words)	Cycles (Max)	Time @ 40 MHz	Time @ 10 MHz	Time @ 4 MHz
8 x 8 unsigned	Without hardware multiply	13	69	6.9 µs	27.6 µs	69 µs
	Hardware multiply	1	1	100 ns	400 ns	1 µs
8 x 8 signed	Without hardware multiply	33	91	9.1 µs	36.4 µs	91 µs
	Hardware multiply	6	6	600 ns	2.4 µs	6 µs
16 x 16 unsigned	Without hardware multiply	21	242	24.2 µs	96.8 µs	242 µs
	Hardware multiply	28	28	2.8 µs	11.2 µs	28 µs
16 x 16 signed	Without hardware multiply	52	254	25.4 µs	102.6 µs	254 µs
	Hardware multiply	35	40	4.0 µs	16.0 µs	40 µs

Example 8-3 shows the sequence to do a 16 x 16 unsigned multiplication. Equation 8-1 shows the algorithm that is used. The 32-bit result is stored in four registers (RES3:RES0).

EQUATION 8-1: 16 x 16 UNSIGNED MULTIPLICATION ALGORITHM

$$
\begin{aligned}
RES3:RES0 &= ARG1H:ARG1L \bullet ARG2H:ARG2L \\
&= (ARG1H \bullet ARG2H \bullet 2^{16}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1H \bullet ARG2L \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1L \bullet ARG2H \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1L \bullet ARG2L)
\end{aligned}
$$

EXAMPLE 8-3: 16 x 16 UNSIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
    MOVF    ARG1L, W
    MULWF   ARG2L       ; ARG1L * ARG2L->
                        ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVFF   PRODH, RES1 ;
    MOVFF   PRODL, RES0 ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W
    MULWF   ARG2H       ; ARG1H * ARG2H->
                        ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVFF   PRODH, RES3 ;
    MOVFF   PRODL, RES2 ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1L, W
    MULWF   ARG2H       ; ARG1L * ARG2H->
                        ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVF    PRODL, W    ;
    ADDWF   RES1, F     ; Add cross
    MOVF    PRODH, W    ; products
    ADDWFC  RES2, F     ;
    CLRF    WREG        ;
    ADDWFC  RES3, F     ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W    ;
    MULWF   ARG2L       ; ARG1H * ARG2L->
                        ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVF    PRODL, W    ;
    ADDWF   RES1, F     ; Add cross
    MOVF    PRODH, W    ; products
    ADDWFC  RES2, F     ;
    CLRF    WREG        ;
    ADDWFC  RES3, F     ;
```

Example 8-4 shows the sequence to do a 16 x 16 signed multiply. Equation 8-2 shows the algorithm used. The 32-bit result is stored in four registers (RES3:RES0). To account for the sign bits of the arguments, the MSb for each argument pair is tested and the appropriate subtractions are done.

EQUATION 8-2: 16 x 16 SIGNED MULTIPLICATION ALGORITHM

$$
\begin{aligned}
RES3:RES0 &= ARG1H:ARG1L \bullet ARG2H:ARG2L \\
&= (ARG1H \bullet ARG2H \bullet 2^{16}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1H \bullet ARG2L \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1L \bullet ARG2H \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1L \bullet ARG2L) + \\
&\quad (-1 \bullet ARG2H\langle 7\rangle \bullet ARG1H:ARG1L \bullet 2^{16}) + \\
&\quad (-1 \bullet ARG1H\langle 7\rangle \bullet ARG2H:ARG2L \bullet 2^{16})
\end{aligned}
$$

EXAMPLE 8-4: 16 x 16 SIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
    MOVF    ARG1L, W
    MULWF   ARG2L       ; ARG1L * ARG2L ->
                        ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVFF   PRODH, RES1 ;
    MOVFF   PRODL, RES0 ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W
    MULWF   ARG2H       ; ARG1H * ARG2H ->
                        ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVFF   PRODH, RES3 ;
    MOVFF   PRODL, RES2 ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1L, W
    MULWF   ARG2H       ; ARG1L * ARG2H ->
                        ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVF    PRODL, W    ;
    ADDWF   RES1, F     ; Add cross
    MOVF    PRODH, W    ; products
    ADDWFC  RES2, F     ;
    CLRF    WREG        ;
    ADDWFC  RES3, F     ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W    ;
    MULWF   ARG2L       ; ARG1H * ARG2L ->
                        ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVF    PRODL, W    ;
    ADDWF   RES1, F     ; Add cross
    MOVF    PRODH, W    ; products
    ADDWFC  RES2, F     ;
    CLRF    WREG        ;
    ADDWFC  RES3, F     ;
;
    BTFSS   ARG2H, 7    ; ARG2H:ARG2L neg?
    BRA     SIGN_ARG1   ; no, check ARG1
    MOVF    ARG1L, W    ;
    SUBWF   RES2        ;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W    ;
    SUBWFB  RES3
;
SIGN_ARG1
    BTFSS   ARG1H, 7    ; ARG1H:ARG1L neg?
    BRA     CONT_CODE   ; no, done
    MOVF    ARG2L, W    ;
    SUBWF   RES2        ;
    MOVF    ARG2H, W    ;
    SUBWFB  RES3
;
CONT_CODE
   :
```

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

9.0 I/O PORTS

Depending on the device selected and features enabled, there are up to five ports available. Some pins of the I/O ports are multiplexed with an alternate function from the peripheral features on the device. In general, when a peripheral is enabled, that pin may not be used as a general purpose I/O pin.

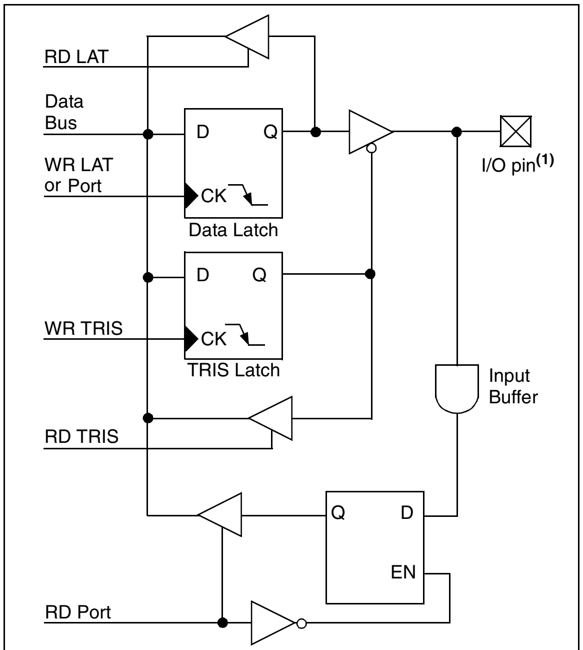
Each port has three registers for its operation. These registers are:

- TRIS register (data direction register)
- PORT register (reads the levels on the pins of the device)
- LAT register (output latch)

The Data Latch (LAT register) is useful for read-modify-write operations on the value that the I/O pins are driving.

A simplified model of a generic I/O port, without the interfaces to other peripherals, is shown in Figure 9-1.

FIGURE 9-1: GENERIC I/O PORT OPERATION



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to V_{DD} and V_{SS}.

9.1 PORTA, TRISA and LATA Registers

PORTA is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISA. Setting a TRISA bit (= `1`) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISA bit (= `0`) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Reading the PORTA register reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it, will write to the port latch.

The Data Latch (LATA) register is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATA register read and write the latched output value for PORTA.

Pins RA6 and RA7 are multiplexed with the main oscillator pins; they are enabled as oscillator or I/O pins by the selection of the main oscillator in the Configuration register (see **Section 19.1 "Configuration Bits"** for details). When they are not used as port pins, RA6 and RA7 and their associated TRIS and LAT bits are read as '`0`'.

The RA0 pin is multiplexed with one of the analog inputs, one of the external interrupt inputs, one of the interrupt-on-change inputs and one of the analog comparator inputs to become RA0/AN0/INT0/KBI0/CMP0 pin.

The RA1 pin is multiplexed with one of the analog inputs, one of the external interrupt inputs and one of the interrupt-on-change inputs to become RA1/AN1/INT1/KBI1 pin.

Pins RA2 and RA3 are multiplexed with the Enhanced USART transmission and reception input (see **Section 19.1 "Configuration Bits"** for details).

The RA4 pin is multiplexed with the Timer0 module clock input, one of the analog inputs and the analog $V_{REF}+$ input to become the RA4/T0CKI/AN2/$V_{REF}+$ pin.

The Fault detect input for PWM $\overline{FLTA}$ is multiplexed with pins RA5 and RA7. Its placement is decided by clearing or setting the FLTAMX bit of Configuration Register 3H.

Note:	On a Power-on Reset, RA0, RA1, RA4 and RA5 are configured as analog inputs and read as '`0`'. RA2 and RA3 are configured as digital inputs.

The TRISA register controls the direction of the PORTA pins, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user must ensure the bits in the TRISA register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs.

EXAMPLE 9-1: INITIALIZING PORTA

```
CLRF    PORTA   ; Initialize PORTA by
                ; clearing output
                ; data latches
CLRF    LATA    ; Alternate method
                ; to clear output
                ; data latches
MOVLW   07h     ; Configure A/D
MOVWF   ADCON1  ; for digital inputs
MOVWF   07h     ; Configure comparators
MOVWF   CMCON   ; for digital input
MOVLW   0CFh    ; Value used to
                ; initialize data
                ; direction
MOVWF   TRISA   ; Set RA<7:6,3:0> as inputs
                ; RA<5:4> as outputs
```

TABLE 9-1: PORTA I/O SUMMARY

Pin	Function	TRIS Setting	I/O	I/O Type	Description
RA0/AN0/INT0/ KBI0/CMP0	RA0	0	O	DIG	LATA<0> data output; not affected by analog input.
		1	I	TTL	PORTA<0> data input; disabled when analog input enabled.
	AN0	1	I	ANA	Analog input 0.
	INT0	1	I	ST	External interrupt 0.
	KBI0	1	I	TTL	Interrupt-on-change pin.
	CMP0	1	I	ANA	Comparator 0 input.
RA1/AN1/INT1/ KBI1	RA1	0	O	DIG	LATA<1> data output; not affected by analog input.
		1	I	TTL	PORTA<1> data input; disabled when analog input enabled.
	AN1	1	I	ANA	Analog input 1.
	INT1	1	I	ST	External interrupt 1.
	KBI1	1	I	TTL	Interrupt-on-change pin.
RA2/TX/CK	RA2	0	O	DIG	LATA<2> data output; not affected by analog input. Disabled when CVREF output enabled.
		1	I	TTL	PORTA<2> data input. Disabled when analog functions enabled; disabled when CVREF output enabled.
	TX	0	0	DIG	EUSART asynchronous transmit.
	CK	0	O	DIG	EUSART synchronous clock.
		1	I	ST	
RA3/RX/DT	RA3	0	O	DIG	LATA<3> data output; not affected by analog input.
		1	I	TTL	PORTA<3> data input; disabled when analog input enabled.
	RX	1	I	ANA	EUSART asynchronous receive.
	DT	0	O	DIG	EUSART synchronous data.
		1	I	TTL	
RA4/T0CKI/AN2/ VREF+	RA4	0	O	DIG	LATA<4> data output.
		1	I	ST	PORTA<4> data input; default configuration on POR.
	T0CKI	1	I	ST	Timer0 external clock input.
	AN2	1	I	ANA	Analog input 2.
	VREF+	1	I	ANA	A/D reference voltage (high) input.
$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP/RA5/ $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$	1	I	ST	Master Clear (Reset) input. This pin is an active-low Reset to the device.
	VPP	1	I	ANA	Programming voltage input.
	RA5	1	I	ST	Digital input.
	$\overline{\text{FLTA}}$(1)	1	I	ST	Fault detect input for PWM.
RA6/OSC2/CLKO/ T1OSO/T1CKI/AN3	RA6	0	O	DIG	LATA<6> data output. Enabled in RCIO, INTIO2 and ECIO modes only.
		1	I	ST	PORTA<6> data input. Enabled in RCIO, INTIO2 and ECIO modes only.
	OSC2	0	O	ANA	Oscillator crystal output or external clock source output.
	CLKO	0	O	ANA	Oscillator crystal output.
	T1OSO(2)	0	O	ANA	Timer1 oscillator output.
	T1CKI(2)	1	I	ST	Timer1 clock input.
	AN3	1	I	ANA	Analog input 3.
RA7/OSC1/CLKI/ T1OSI/$\overline{\text{FLTA}}$	RA7	0	O	DIG	LATA<7> data output. Disabled in external oscillator modes.
		1	I	TTL	PORTA<7> data input. Disabled in external oscillator modes.
	OSC1	1	I	ANA	Oscillator crystal input or external clock source input.
	CLKI	1	I	ANA	External clock source input.
	T1OSI(2)	1	I	ANA	Timer1 oscillator input.
	$\overline{\text{FLTA}}$(1)	1	I	ST	Fault detect input for PWM.

Legend: DIG = Digital level output; TTL = TTL input buffer; ST = Schmitt Trigger input buffer; ANA = Analog level input/output; x = Don't care (TRIS bit does not affect port direction or is overridden for this option).

Note 1: Placement of $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ depends on the value of Configuration bit, FLTAMX, of CONFIG3H.

2: Placement of T1OSI and T1OSO/T1CKI depends on the value of Configuration bit, T1OSCMX, of CONFIG3H.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 9-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTA

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
PORTA	RA7(1)	RA6(1)	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	44
LATA	LATA7(1)	LATA6(1)	PORTA Data Latch Register (Read and Write to Data Latch)						43
TRISA	TRISA7(1)	TRISA6(1)	PORTA Data Direction Control Register						43
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
INTCON2	$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	INTEDG3	TMR0IP	INT3IP	RBIP	41
ADCON1	—	—	—	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	42
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C0OUT	—	—	CMEN2	CMEN1	CMEN0	42
CVRCON	CVREN	—	CVRR	CVRSS	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0	42

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTA.

Note 1: RA7:RA6 and their associated latch and data direction bits are enabled as I/O pins based on oscillator configuration; otherwise, they are read as '0'.

9.2 PORTB, TRISB and LATB Registers

PORTB is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISB. Setting a TRISB bit (= `1`) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISB bit (= `0`) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

The Data Latch register (LATB) is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATB register read and write the latched output value for PORTB.

EXAMPLE 9-2: INITIALIZING PORTB

```
CLRF    PORTB   ; Initialize PORTB by
                ; clearing output
                ; data latches
CLRF    LATB    ; Alternate method
                ; to clear output
                ; data latches
MOVLW   0Fh     ; Set RB<4:0> as
MOVWF   ADCON1  ; digital I/O pins
                ; (required if config bit
                ; PBADEN is set)
MOVLW   0CFh    ; Value used to
                ; initialize data
                ; direction
MOVWF   TRISB   ; Set RB<3:0> as inputs
                ; RB<5:4> as outputs
                ; RB<7:6> as inputs
```

Each of the PORTB pins has a weak internal pull-up. A single control bit can turn on all the pull-ups. This is performed by clearing bit, $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ (INTCON2<7>). The weak pull-up is automatically turned off when the port pin is configured as an output. The pull-ups are disabled on a Power-on Reset.

> **Note:** On a Power-on Reset, PORTB is configured as digital inputs except for RB2 and RB3.
>
> RB2 and RB3 are configured as analog inputs when the T1OSCMX bit of Configuration Register 3H is cleared. Otherwise, RB2 and RB3 are also configured as digital inputs.

Pins RB0, RB1 and RB4:RB7 are multiplexed with the power control PWM outputs.

Pins RB2 and RB3 are multiplexed with external interrupt inputs, interrupt-on-change input, the analog comparator inputs and the Timer1 oscillator input and output to become RB2/INT2/KBI2/CMP2/T1OSO/T1CKI and RB3/INT3/KNBI3/CMP1/T1OSI respectively.

When the interrupt-on-change feature is enabled, only pins configured as inputs can cause this interrupt to occur (i.e., any RB2, RB3, RA0 and RA1 pin configured as an output is excluded from the interrupt-on-change comparison). The input pins (RB2, RB3, RA0 and RA1) are compared with the old value latched on the last read of PORTA and PORTB. The "mismatch" outputs of these pins are ORed together to generate the RB Port Change Interrupt with Flag bit, RBIF (INTCON<0>).

This interrupt can wake the device from Sleep mode, or any of the Idle modes. The user, in the Interrupt Service Routine, can clear the interrupt in the following manner:

a) Any read or write of PORTA and/or PORTB (except with the `MOVFF (ANY), PORTA` and `MOVFF (ANY), PORTB` instructions).
b) Clear flag bit, RBIF.

A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit, RBIF. Reading PORTA and PORTB will end the mismatch condition and allow flag bit, RBIF, to be cleared.

The interrupt-on-change feature is recommended for wake-up on key depression operation and operations where PORTA and PORTB are used for the interrupt-on-change feature. Polling of PORTA and PORTB is not recommended while using the interrupt-on-change feature.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 9-3: PORTB I/O SUMMARY

Pin	Function	TRIS Setting	I/O	I/O Type	Description
RB0/PWM0	RB0	0	O	DIG	LATB<0> data output; not affected by analog input.
		1	I	TTL	PORTB<0> data input; weak pull-up when $\overline{RBPU}$ bit is cleared. Disabled when analog input enabled.(1)
	PWM0	0	O	DIG	PWM module output PWM0.
RB1PWM1	RB1	0	O	DIG	LATB<1> data output; not affected by analog input.
		1	I	TTL	PORTB<1> data input; weak pull-up when $\overline{RBPU}$ bit is cleared. Disabled when analog input enabled.(1)
	PWM1	0	O	DIG	PWM module output PWM1.
RB2/INT2/KBI2/CMP2/T1OSO/T1CKI	RB2	0	O	DIG	LATB<2> data output; not affected by analog input.
		1	I	TTL	PORTB<2> data input; weak pull-up when $\overline{RBPU}$ bit is cleared. Disabled when analog input enabled.(1)
	INT2	1	I	ST	External interrupt 2 input.
	KBI2	1	I	TTL	Interrupt-on-change pin.
	CMP2	1	I	ANA	Comparator 2 input.
	T1OSO(2)	0	O	ANA	Timer1 oscillator output.
	T1CKI(2)	1	I	ST	Timer1 clock input.
RB3/INT3/KBI3/CMP1/T1OSI	RB3	0	O	DIG	LATB<3> data output; not affected by analog input.
		1	I	TTL	PORTB<3> data input; weak pull-up when $\overline{RBPU}$ bit is cleared. Disabled when analog input enabled.(1)
	INT3	1	I	ST	External interrupt 3 input.
	KBI3	1	I	TTL	Interrupt-on-change pin.
	CMP1	1	I	ANA	Comparator 1 input.
	T1OSI(2)	1	I	ANA	Timer1 oscillator input.
RB4/PWM2	RB4	0	O	DIG	LATB<4> data output; not affected by analog input.
		1	I	TTL	PORTB<4> data input; weak pull-up when $\overline{RBPU}$ bit is cleared. Disabled when analog input enabled.(1)
	PWM2	0	O	DIG	PWM module output PWM2.
RB5/PWM3	RB5	0	O	DIG	LATB<5> data output.
		1	I	TTL	PORTB<5> data input; weak pull-up when $\overline{RBPU}$ bit is cleared.
	PWM3	0	O	DIG	PWM module output PWM3.
RB6/PWM4/PGC	RB6	0	O	DIG	LATB<6> data output.
		1	I	TTL	PORTB<6> data input; weak pull-up when $\overline{RBPU}$ bit is cleared.
	PWM4	0	O	DIG	PWM module output PWM4.
	PGC	1	I	ST	In-Circuit Debugger and ICSP™ programming clock pin.
RB7/PWM5/PGD	RB7	0	O	DIG	LATB<7> data output.
		1	I	TTL	PORTB<7> data input; weak pull-up when $\overline{RBPU}$ bit is cleared.
	PWM5	0	O	TTL	PWM module output PWM4.
	PGD	0	O	DIG	In-Circuit Debugger and ICSP programming data pin.

Legend: DIG = Digital level output; TTL = TTL input buffer; ST = Schmitt Trigger input buffer; ANA = Analog level input/output; x = Don't care (TRIS bit does not affect port direction or is overridden for this option).

Note 1: Configuration on POR is determined by the PBADEN Configuration bit. Pins are configured as analog inputs by default when PBADEN is set and digital inputs when PBADEN is cleared.

2: Placement of T1OSI and T1OSO/T1CKI depends on the value of Configuration bit, T1OSCMX, of CONFIG3H.

TABLE 9-4: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTB

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
PORTB	RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	RB3	RB2	RB1	RB0	44
LATB	PORTB Data Latch Register (Read and Write to Data Latch)								43
TRISB	PORTB Data Direction Control Register								43
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
INTCON2	$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	INTEDG3	TMR0IP	INT3IP	RBIP	41
INTCON3	INT2IP	INT1IP	INT3IE	INT2IE	INT1IE	INT3IF	INT2IF	INT1IF	41
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C0OUT	—	—	CMEN2	CMEN1	CMEN0	42

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by PORTB.

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

10.0 INTERRUPTS

The PIC18F1230/1330 devices have multiple interrupt sources and an interrupt priority feature that allows most interrupt sources to be assigned a high priority level or a low priority level. The high priority interrupt vector is at 0008h and the low priority interrupt vector is at 0018h. High priority interrupt events will interrupt any low priority interrupts that may be in progress.

There are thirteen registers which are used to control interrupt operation. These registers are:

- RCON
- INTCON
- INTCON2
- INTCON3
- PIR1, PIR2, PIR3
- PIE1, PIE2, PIE3
- IPR1, IPR2, IPR3

It is recommended that the Microchip header files supplied with MPLAB® IDE be used for the symbolic bit names in these registers. This allows the assembler/compiler to automatically take care of the placement of these bits within the specified register.

In general, interrupt sources have three bits to control their operation. They are:

- **Flag bit** to indicate that an interrupt event occurred
- **Enable bit** that allows program execution to branch to the interrupt vector address when the flag bit is set
- **Priority bit** to select high priority or low priority

The interrupt priority feature is enabled by setting the IPEN bit (RCON<7>). When interrupt priority is enabled, there are two bits which enable interrupts globally. Setting the GIEH bit (INTCON<7>) enables all interrupts that have the priority bit set (high priority). Setting the GIEL bit (INTCON<6>) enables all interrupts that have the priority bit cleared (low priority). When the interrupt flag, enable bit and appropriate global interrupt enable bit are set, the interrupt will vector immediately to address 0008h or 0018h, depending on the priority bit setting. Individual interrupts can be disabled through their corresponding enable bits.

When the IPEN bit is cleared (default state), the interrupt priority feature is disabled and interrupts are compatible with PICmicro® mid-range devices. In Compatibility mode, the interrupt priority bits for each source have no effect. INTCON<6> is the PEIE bit, which enables/disables all peripheral interrupt sources. INTCON<7> is the GIE bit, which enables/disables all interrupt sources. All interrupts branch to address 0008h in Compatibility mode.

When an interrupt is responded to, the global interrupt enable bit is cleared to disable further interrupts. If the IPEN bit is cleared, this is the GIE bit. If interrupt priority levels are used, this will be either the GIEH or GIEL bit. High priority interrupt sources can interrupt a low priority interrupt. Low priority interrupts are not processed while high priority interrupts are in progress.

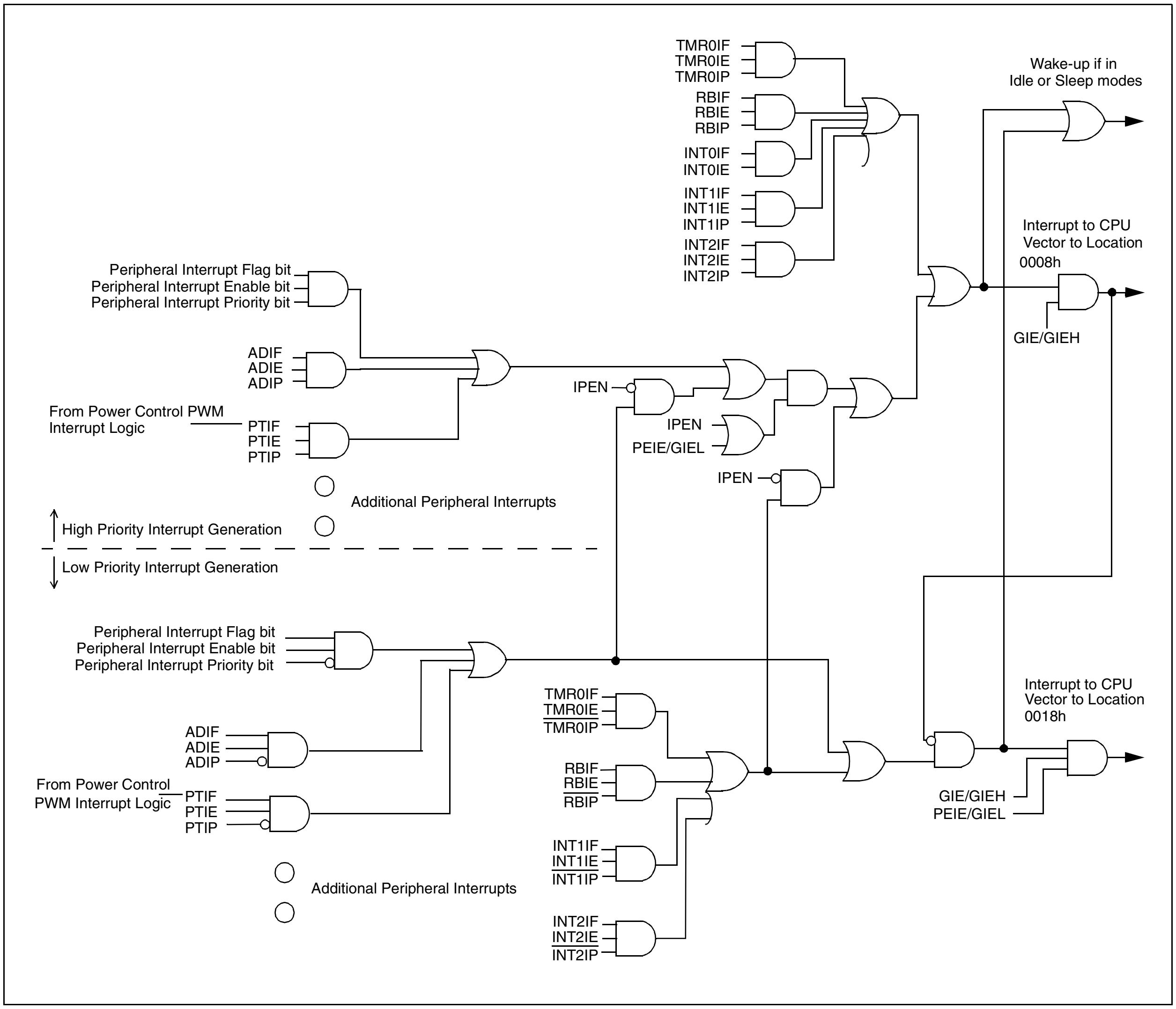
The return address is pushed onto the stack and the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector address (0008h or 0018h). Once in the Interrupt Service Routine, the source(s) of the interrupt can be determined by polling the interrupt flag bits. The interrupt flag bits must be cleared in software before re-enabling interrupts to avoid recursive interrupts.

The “return from interrupt” instruction, `RETFIE`, exits the interrupt routine and sets the GIE bit (GIEH or GIEL if priority levels are used), which re-enables interrupts.

For external interrupt events, such as the INT pins or the PORTB input change interrupt, the interrupt latency will be three to four instruction cycles. The exact latency is the same for one or two-cycle instructions. Individual interrupt flag bits are set, regardless of the status of their corresponding enable bit or the GIE bit.

Note:	Do not use the `MOVFF` instruction to modify any of the interrupt control registers while **any** interrupt is enabled. Doing so may cause erratic microcontroller behavior.

FIGURE 10-1: PIC18 INTERRUPT LOGIC



  © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

10.1 INTCON Registers

The INTCON registers are readable and writable registers, which contain various enable, priority and flag bits.

Note:	Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global interrupt enable bit. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt. This feature allows for software polling.

REGISTER 10-1: INTCON: INTERRUPT CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-x
GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF(1)
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **GIE/GIEH:** Global Interrupt Enable bit
When IPEN = 0:
1 = Enables all unmasked interrupts
0 = Disables all interrupts
When IPEN = 1:
1 = Enables all high priority interrupts
0 = Disables all interrupts

bit 6 **PEIE/GIEL:** Peripheral Interrupt Enable bit
When IPEN = 0:
1 = Enables all unmasked peripheral interrupts
0 = Disables all peripheral interrupts
When IPEN = 1:
1 = Enables all low priority peripheral interrupts
0 = Disables all low priority peripheral interrupts

bit 5 **TMR0IE:** TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR0 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR0 overflow interrupt

bit 4 **INT0IE:** INT0 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT0 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT0 external interrupt

bit 3 **RBIE:** RB Port Change Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the RB port change interrupt
0 = Disables the RB port change interrupt

bit 2 **TMR0IF:** TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR0 register has overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = TMR0 register did not overflow

bit 1 **INT0IF:** INT0 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT0 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT0 external interrupt did not occur

bit 0 **RBIF:** RB Port Change Interrupt Flag bit(1)
1 = At least one of the RB7:RB4 pins changed state (must be cleared in software)
0 = None of the RB7:RB4 pins have changed state

Note 1: A mismatch condition will continue to set this bit. Reading PORTB will end the mismatch condition and allow the bit to be cleared.

REGISTER 10-2: INTCON2: INTERRUPT CONTROL REGISTER 2

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	INTEDG3	TMR0IP	INT3IP	RBIP
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$:** PORTB Pull-up Enable bit
1 = All PORTB pull-ups are disabled
0 = PORTB pull-ups are enabled by individual port latch values

bit 6 **INTEDG0:** External Interrupt 0 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 5 **INTEDG1:** External Interrupt 1 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 4 **INTEDG2:** External Interrupt 2 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 3 **INTEDG3:** External Interrupt 3 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 2 **TMR0IP:** TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 1 **INT3IP:** INT3 External Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 0 **RBIP:** RB Port Change Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global interrupt enable bit. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt. This feature allows for software polling.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 10-3: INTCON3: INTERRUPT CONTROL REGISTER 3

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
INT2IP	INT1IP	INT3IE	INT2IE	INT1IE	INT3IF	INT2IF	INT1IF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **INT2IP:** INT2 External Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 6 **INT1IP:** INT1 External Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 5 **INT3IE:** INT3 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT3 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT3 external interrupt

bit 4 **INT2IE:** INT2 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT2 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT2 external interrupt

bit 3 **INT1IE:** INT1 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT1 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT1 external interrupt

bit 2 **INT3IF:** INT3 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT3 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT3 external interrupt did not occur

bit 1 **INT2IF:** INT2 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT2 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT2 external interrupt did not occur

bit 0 **INT1IF:** INT1 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT1 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT1 external interrupt did not occur

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global interrupt enable bit. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt. This feature allows for software polling.

10.2 PIR Registers

The PIR registers contain the individual flag bits for the peripheral interrupts. Due to the number of peripheral interrupt sources, there are three Peripheral Interrupt Request (Flag) registers (PIR1, PIR2 and PIR3).

Note 1: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the Global Interrupt Enable bit, GIE (INTCON<7>).

2: User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are cleared prior to enabling an interrupt and after servicing that interrupt.

REGISTER 10-4: PIR1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST (FLAG) REGISTER 1

U-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	CMP2IF	CMP1IF	CMP0IF	TMR1IF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **ADIF:** A/D Converter Interrupt Flag bit
1 = An A/D conversion completed (must be cleared in software)
0 = The A/D conversion is not complete

bit 5 **RCIF:** EUSART Receive Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The EUSART receive buffer, RCREG, is full (cleared when RCREG is read)
0 = The EUSART receive buffer is empty

bit 4 **TXIF:** EUSART Transmit Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The EUSART transmit buffer, TXREG, is empty (cleared when TXREG is written)
0 = The EUSART transmit buffer is full

bit 3 **CMP2IF:** Analog Comparator 2 Flag bit
1 = The output of CMP2 has changed since last read
0 = The output of CMP2 has not changed since last read

bit 2 **CMP1IF:** Analog Comparator 1 Flag bit
1 = The output of CMP1 has changed since last read
0 = The output of CMP1 has not changed since last read

bit 1 **CMP0IF:** Analog Comparator 0 Flag bit
1 = The output of CMP0 has changed since last read
0 = The output of CMP0 has not changed since last read

bit 0 **TMR1IF:** TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR1 register overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = TMR1 register did not overflow

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 10-5: PIR2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST (FLAG) REGISTER 2

R/W-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0
OSCFIF	—	—	EEIF	—	LVDIF	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **OSCFIF:** Oscillator Fail Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Device oscillator failed, clock input has changed to INTOSC (must be cleared in software)
0 = Device clock operating

bit 6-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **EEIF:** Data EEPROM/Flash Write Operation Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The write operation is complete (must be cleared in software)
0 = The write operation is not complete or has not been started

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **LVDIF:** Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Flag bit
1 = A low-voltage condition occurred
0 = A low-voltage condition has not occurred

bit 1-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

REGISTER 10-6: PIR3: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST (FLAG) REGISTER 3

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
—	—	—	PTIF	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **PTIF:** PWM Time Base Interrupt bit
1 = PWM time base matched the value in PTPER register. Interrupt is issued according to the postscaler settings. PTIF must be cleared in software.
0 = PWM time base has not matched the value in PTPER register

bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

10.3 PIE Registers

The PIE registers contain the individual enable bits for the peripheral interrupts. Due to the number of peripheral interrupt sources, there are three Peripheral Interrupt Enable registers (PIE1, PIE2 and PIE3). When IPEN = 0, the PEIE bit must be set to enable any of these peripheral interrupts.

REGISTER 10-7: PIE1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 1

U-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	CMP2IE	CMP1IE	CMP0IE	TMR1IE
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 6 **ADIE:** A/D Converter Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the A/D interrupt
0 = Disables the A/D interrupt

bit 5 **RCIE:** EUSART Receive Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the EUSART receive interrupt
0 = Disables the EUSART receive interrupt

bit 4 **TXIE:** EUSART Transmit Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the EUSART transmit interrupt
0 = Disables the EUSART transmit interrupt

bit 3 **CMP2IE:** Analog Comparator 2 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CMP2 interrupt
0 = Disables the CMP2 interrupt

bit 2 **CMP1IE:** Analog Comparator 1 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = The output of CMP1 has changed since last read
0 = The output of CMP1 has not changed since last read

bit 1 **CMP0IE:** Analog Comparator 0 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = The output of CMP0 has changed since last read
0 = The output of CMP0 has not changed since last read

bit 0 **TMR1IE:** TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR1 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR1 overflow interrupt

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 10-8: PIE2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 2

R/W-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0
OSCFIE	—	—	EEIE	—	LVDIE	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **OSCFIE:** Oscillator Fail Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enabled
0 = Disabled

bit 6-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **EEIE:** Data EEPROM/Flash Write Operation Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enabled
0 = Disabled

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **LVDIE:** Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enabled
0 = Disabled

bit 1-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

REGISTER 10-9: PIE3: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 3

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
—	—	—	PTIE	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **PTIE:** PWM Time Base Interrupt Enable bit
1 = PWM enabled
0 = PWM disabled

bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

10.4 IPR Registers

The IPR registers contain the individual priority bits for the peripheral interrupts. Due to the number of peripheral interrupt sources, there are three Peripheral Interrupt Priority registers (IPR1, IPR2 and IPR3). Using the priority bits requires that the Interrupt Priority Enable (IPEN) bit be set.

REGISTER 10-10: IPR1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT PRIORITY REGISTER 1

U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
—	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	CMP2IP	CMP1IP	CMP0IP	TMR1IP
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **ADIP:** A/D Converter Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 5 **RCIP:** EUSART Receive Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 4 **TXIP:** EUSART Transmit Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 3 **CMP2IP:** Analog Comparator 2 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = Enables the CMP2 interrupt
0 = Disables the CMP2 interrupt

bit 2 **CMP1IP:** Analog Comparator 1 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = The output of CMP1 has changed since last read
0 = The output of CMP1 has not changed since last read

bit 1 **CMP0IP:** Analog Comparator 0 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = The output of CMP0 has changed since last read
0 = The output of CMP0 has not changed since last read

bit 0 **TMR1IP:** TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 10-11: IPR2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT PRIORITY REGISTER 2

R/W-1	U-0	U-0	R/W-1	U-0	R/W-1	U-0	U-0
OSCFIP	—	—	EEIP	—	LVDIP	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **OSCFIP:** Oscillator Fail Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 6-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 4 **EEIP:** Data EEPROM/Flash Write Operation Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 2 **LVDIP:** Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 1-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

REGISTER 10-12: IPR3: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT PRIORITY REGISTER 3

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
—	—	—	PTIP	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 4 **PTIP:** PWM Time Base Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

10.5 RCON Register

The RCON register contains flag bits which are used to determine the cause of the last Reset or wake-up from Idle or Sleep modes. RCON also contains the IPEN bit which enables interrupt priorities.

The operation of the SBOREN bit and the Reset flag bits is discussed in more detail in **Section 4.1 "RCON Register"**.

REGISTER 10-13: RCON: RESET CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-1(1)	U-0	R/W-1	R-1	R-1	R/W-0(2)	R/W-0
IPEN	SBOREN	—	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **IPEN:** Interrupt Priority Enable bit
1 = Enable priority levels on interrupts
0 = Disable priority levels on interrupts (PIC16CXXX Compatibility mode)

bit 6 **SBOREN:** BOR Software Enable bit(1)
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-1.

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **$\overline{RI}$:** RESET Instruction Flag bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-1.

bit 3 **$\overline{TO}$:** Watchdog Time-out Flag bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-1.

bit 2 **$\overline{PD}$:** Power-Down Detection Flag bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-1.

bit 1 **$\overline{POR}$:** Power-on Reset Status bit(2)
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-1.

bit 0 **$\overline{BOR}$:** Brown-out Reset Status bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-1.

Note 1: If SBOREN is enabled, its Reset state is '1'; otherwise, it is '0'. See Register 4-1 for additional information.

2: The actual Reset value of $\overline{POR}$ is determined by the type of device Reset. See Register 4-1 for additional information.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

10.6 INTn Pin Interrupts

External interrupts on the RA0/INT0, RA1/INT1, RB2/INT2 and RB3/INT3 pins are edge-triggered. If the corresponding INTEDGx bit in the INTCON2 register is set (= 1), the interrupt is triggered by a rising edge; if the bit is clear, the trigger is on the falling edge. When a valid edge appears on the pin, the corresponding flag bit, INTxIF, is set. This interrupt can be disabled by clearing the corresponding enable bit, INTxIE. Flag bit, INTxIF, must be cleared in software in the Interrupt Service Routine before re-enabling the interrupt.

All external interrupts (INT0, INT1, INT2 and INT3) can wake-up the processor from Idle or Sleep modes if bit INTxIE was set prior to going into those modes. If the Global Interrupt Enable bit, GIE, is set, the processor will branch to the interrupt vector following wake-up.

Interrupt priority for INT1, INT2 and INT3 is determined by the value contained in the interrupt priority bits, INT1IP (INTCON3<6>), INT2IP (INTCON3<7>) and INT3IP (INTCON2<1>). There is no priority bit associated with INT0. It is always a high priority interrupt source.

10.7 TMR0 Interrupt

In 8-bit mode (which is the default), an overflow in the TMR0 register (FFh $\rightarrow$ 00h) will set flag bit, TMR0IF. In 16-bit mode, an overflow in the TMR0H:TMR0L register pair (FFFFh $\rightarrow$ 0000h) will set TMR0IF. The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit, TMR0IE (INTCON<5>). Interrupt priority for Timer0 is determined by the value contained in the interrupt priority bit, TMR0IP (INTCON2<2>). See **Section 11.0 "Timer0 Module"** for further details on the Timer0 module.

10.8 Interrupt-on-Change

An input change on PORTA<1:0> and/or PORTB<2:3> sets flag bit, RBIF (INTCON<0>). The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit, RBIE (INTCON<3>). Interrupt priority for interrupt-on-change is determined by the value contained in the interrupt priority bit, RBIP (INTCON2<0>).

10.9 Context Saving During Interrupts

During interrupts, the return PC address is saved on the stack. Additionally, the WREG, STATUS and BSR registers are saved on the fast return stack. If a fast return from interrupt is not used (see **Section 5.3 "Data Memory Organization"**), the user may need to save the WREG, STATUS and BSR registers on entry to the Interrupt Service Routine. Depending on the user's application, other registers may also need to be saved. Example 10-1 saves and restores the WREG, STATUS and BSR registers during an Interrupt Service Routine.

EXAMPLE 10-1: SAVING STATUS, WREG AND BSR REGISTERS IN RAM

```
MOVWF   W_TEMP                      ; W_TEMP is in virtual bank
MOVFF   STATUS, STATUS_TEMP         ; STATUS_TEMP located anywhere
MOVFF   BSR, BSR_TEMP               ; BSR_TMEP located anywhere
;
; USER ISR CODE
;
MOVFF   BSR_TEMP, BSR               ; Restore BSR
MOVF    W_TEMP, W                   ; Restore WREG
MOVFF   STATUS_TEMP, STATUS         ; Restore STATUS
```

NOTES:

  © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

11.0 TIMER0 MODULE

The Timer0 module has the following features:

- Software selectable as an 8-bit or 16-bit timer/counter
- Readable and writable
- Dedicated 8-bit software programmable prescaler
- Clock source selectable to be external or internal
- Interrupt on overflow from FFh to 00h in 8-bit mode and FFFFh to 0000h in 16-bit mode
- Edge select for external clock

Figure 11-1 shows a simplified block diagram of the Timer0 module in 8-bit mode and Figure 11-2 shows a simplified block diagram of the Timer0 module in 16-bit mode.

The T0CON register (Register 11-1) is a readable and writable register that controls all the aspects of Timer0, including the prescale selection.

REGISTER 11-1: T0CON: TIMER0 CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
TMR0ON	T016BIT	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	T0PS2	T0PS1	T0PS0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **TMR0ON:** Timer0 On/Off Control bit
1 = Enables Timer0
0 = Stops Timer0

bit 6 **T016BIT**: Timer0 16-Bit Control bit
1 = Timer0 is configured as an 8-bit timer/counter
0 = Timer0 is configured as a 16-bit timer/counter

bit 5 **T0CS**: Timer0 Clock Source Select bit
1 = Transition on T0CKI pin
0 = Internal instruction cycle clock (CLKO)

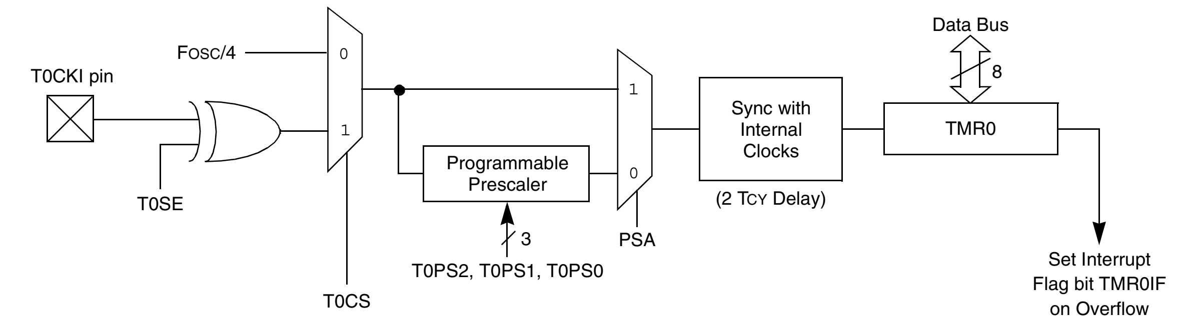
bit 4 **T0SE**: Timer0 Source Edge Select bit
1 = Increment on high-to-low transition on T0CKI pin
0 = Increment on low-to-high transition on T0CKI pin

bit 3 **PSA**: Timer0 Prescaler Assignment bit
1 = TImer0 prescaler is NOT assigned. Timer0 clock input bypasses prescaler.
0 = Timer0 prescaler is assigned. Timer0 clock input comes from prescaler output.

bit 2-0 **T0PS2:T0PS0**: Timer0 Prescaler Select bits
111 = 1:256 Prescale value
110 = 1:128 Prescale value
101 = 1:64 Prescale value
100 = 1:32 Prescale value
011 = 1:16 Prescale value
010 = 1:8 Prescale value
001 = 1:4 Prescale value
000 = 1:2 Prescale value

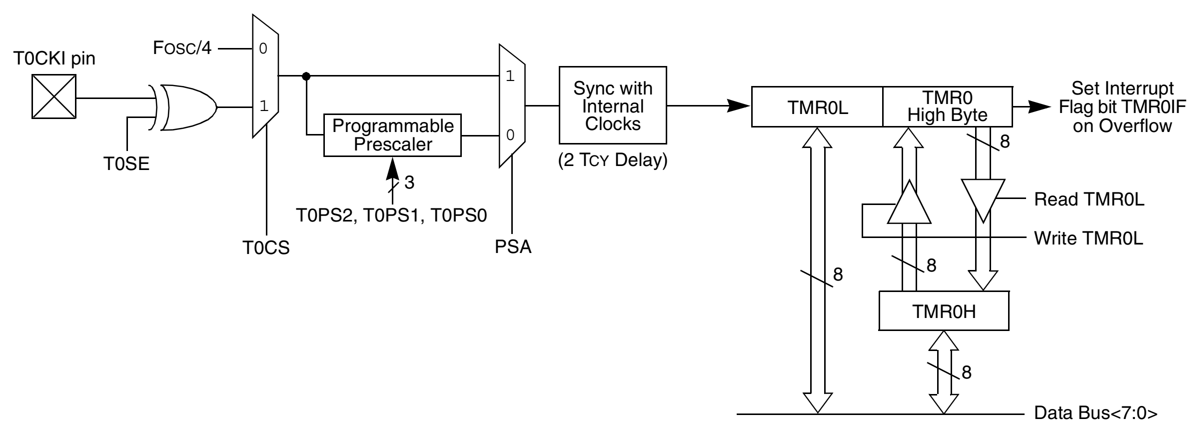
© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 11-1: TIMER0 BLOCK DIAGRAM IN 8-BIT MODE



Note: Upon Reset, Timer0 is enabled in 8-bit mode with clock input from T0CKI maximum prescale.

FIGURE 11-2: TIMER0 BLOCK DIAGRAM IN 16-BIT MODE



Note: Upon Reset, Timer0 is enabled in 8-bit mode with clock input from T0CKI maximum prescale.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

11.1 Timer0 Operation

Timer0 can operate as a timer or as a counter.

Timer mode is selected by clearing the T0CS bit. In Timer mode, the Timer0 module will increment every instruction cycle (without prescaler). If the TMR0 register is written, the increment is inhibited for the following two instruction cycles. The user can work around this by writing an adjusted value to the TMR0 register.

Counter mode is selected by setting the T0CS bit. In Counter mode, Timer0 will increment, either on every rising or falling edge of pin RA4/T0CKI/AN2/VREF+. The incrementing edge is determined by the Timer0 Source Edge Select bit (T0SE). Clearing the T0SE bit selects the rising edge.

When an external clock input is used for Timer0, it must meet certain requirements. The requirements ensure the external clock can be synchronized with the internal phase clock (TOSC). Also, there is a delay in the actual incrementing of Timer0 after synchronization.

11.2 Prescaler

An 8-bit counter is available as a prescaler for the Timer0 module. The prescaler is not readable or writable.

The PSA and T0PS2:T0PS0 bits determine the prescaler assignment and prescale ratio.

Clearing bit PSA will assign the prescaler to the Timer0 module. When the prescaler is assigned to the Timer0 module, prescale values of 1:2, 1:4, ..., 1:256 are selectable.

When assigned to the Timer0 module, all instructions writing to the TMR0 register (e.g., `CLRF TMR0`, `MOVWF TMR0`, `BSF TMR0, x`..., etc.) will clear the prescaler count.

Note:	Writing to TMR0, when the prescaler is assigned to Timer0, will clear the prescaler count but will not change the prescaler assignment.

11.2.1 SWITCHING PRESCALER ASSIGNMENT

The prescaler assignment is fully under software control (i.e., it can be changed "on-the-fly" during program execution).

11.3 Timer0 Interrupt

The TMR0 interrupt is generated when the TMR0 register overflows from FFh to 00h in 8-bit mode, or FFFFh to 0000h in 16-bit mode. This overflow sets the TMR0IF bit. The interrupt can be masked by clearing the TMR0IE bit. The TMR0IF bit must be cleared in software by the Timer0 module Interrupt Service Routine before re-enabling this interrupt. The TMR0 interrupt cannot awaken the processor from Sleep mode, since the timer requires clock cycles even when T0CS is set.

11.4 16-Bit Mode Timer Reads and Writes

TMR0H is not the high byte of the timer/counter in 16-bit mode, but is actually a buffered version of the high byte of Timer0 (refer to Figure 11-2). The high byte of the Timer0 counter/timer is not directly readable nor writable. TMR0H is updated with the contents of the high byte of Timer0 during a read of TMR0L. This provides the ability to read all 16 bits of Timer0 without having to verify that the read of the high and low byte were valid due to a rollover between successive reads of the high and low byte.

A write to the high byte of Timer0 must also take place through the TMR0H Buffer register. Timer0 high byte is updated with the contents of TMR0H when a write occurs to TMR0L. This allows all 16 bits of Timer0 to be updated at once.

TABLE 11-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER0

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
TMR0L	Timer0 Register Low Byte								42
TMR0H	Timer0 Register High Byte								42
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
T0CON	TMR0ON	T016BIT	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	T0PS2	T0PS1	T0PS0	42
TRISA	RA7(1)	RA6(1)	PORTA Data Direction Control Register						43

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by Timer0.

Note 1: RA6 and RA7 are enabled as I/O pins depending on the oscillator mode selected in CONFIG1H.

NOTES:

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

12.0 TIMER1 MODULE

The Timer1 timer/counter module has the following features:

- 16-bit timer/counter (two 8-bit registers; TMR1H and TMR1L)
- Readable and writable (both registers)
- Internal or external clock select
- Interrupt on overflow from FFFFh to 0000h
- Status of system clock operation

Figure 12-1 is a simplified block diagram of the Timer1 module.

Register 12-1 details the Timer1 Control register. This register controls the operating mode of the Timer1 module and contains the Timer1 Oscillator Enable bit (T1OSCEN). Timer1 can be enabled or disabled by setting or clearing control bit, TMR1ON (T1CON<0>).

The Timer1 oscillator can be used as a secondary clock source in power-managed modes. When the T1RUN bit is set, the Timer1 oscillator provides the system clock. If the Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is enabled and the Timer1 oscillator fails while providing the system clock, polling the T1RUN bit will indicate whether the clock is being provided by the Timer1 oscillator or another source.

Timer1 can also be used to provide Real-Time Clock (RTC) functionality to applications with only a minimal addition of external components and code overhead.

REGISTER 12-1: T1CON: TIMER1 CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RD16	T1RUN	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **RD16:** 16-Bit Read/Write Mode Enable bit
1 = Enables register read/write of Timer1 in one 16-bit operation
0 = Enables register read/write of Timer1 in two 8-bit operations

bit 6 **T1RUN:** Timer1 System Clock Status bit
1 = Device clock is derived from Timer1 oscillator
0 = Device clock is derived from another source

bit 5-4 **T1CKPS1:T1CKPS0:** Timer1 Input Clock Prescale Select bits
11 = 1:8 Prescale value
10 = 1:4 Prescale value
01 = 1:2 Prescale value
00 = 1:1 Prescale value

bit 3 **T1OSCEN:** Timer1 Oscillator Enable bit
1 = Timer1 oscillator is enabled
0 = Timer1 oscillator is shut off
The oscillator inverter and feedback resistor are turned off to eliminate power drain.

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$:** Timer1 External Clock Input Synchronization Select bit
When TMR1CS = 1:
1 = Do not synchronize external clock input
0 = Synchronize external clock input
When TMR1CS = 0:
This bit is ignored. Timer1 uses the internal clock when TMR1CS = 0.

bit 1 **TMR1CS:** Timer1 Clock Source Select bit
1 = External clock from T1OSO/T1CKI (on the rising edge)[(1)]
0 = Internal clock (FOSC/4)

bit 0 **TMR1ON:** Timer1 On bit
1 = Enables Timer1
0 = Stops Timer1

Note 1: Placement of T1OSI and T1OSO/T1CKI depends on the value of the Configuration bit, T1OSCMX, of CONFIG3H.

12.1 Timer1 Operation

Timer1 can operate in one of these modes:

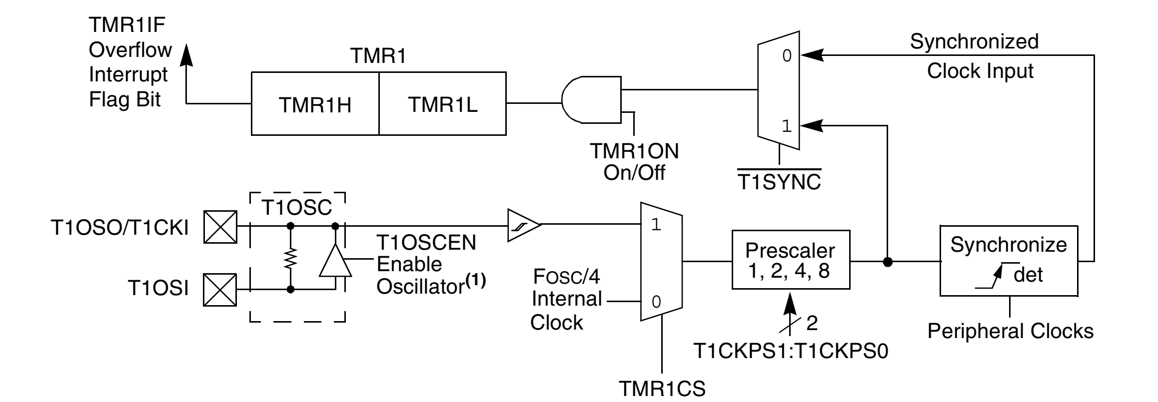
- As a timer
- As a synchronous counter
- As an asynchronous counter

The operating mode is determined by the Clock Select bit, TMR1CS (T1CON<1>).

When TMR1CS = `0`, Timer1 increments every instruction cycle. When TMR1CS = `1`, Timer1 increments on every rising edge of the external clock input or the Timer1 oscillator, if enabled.

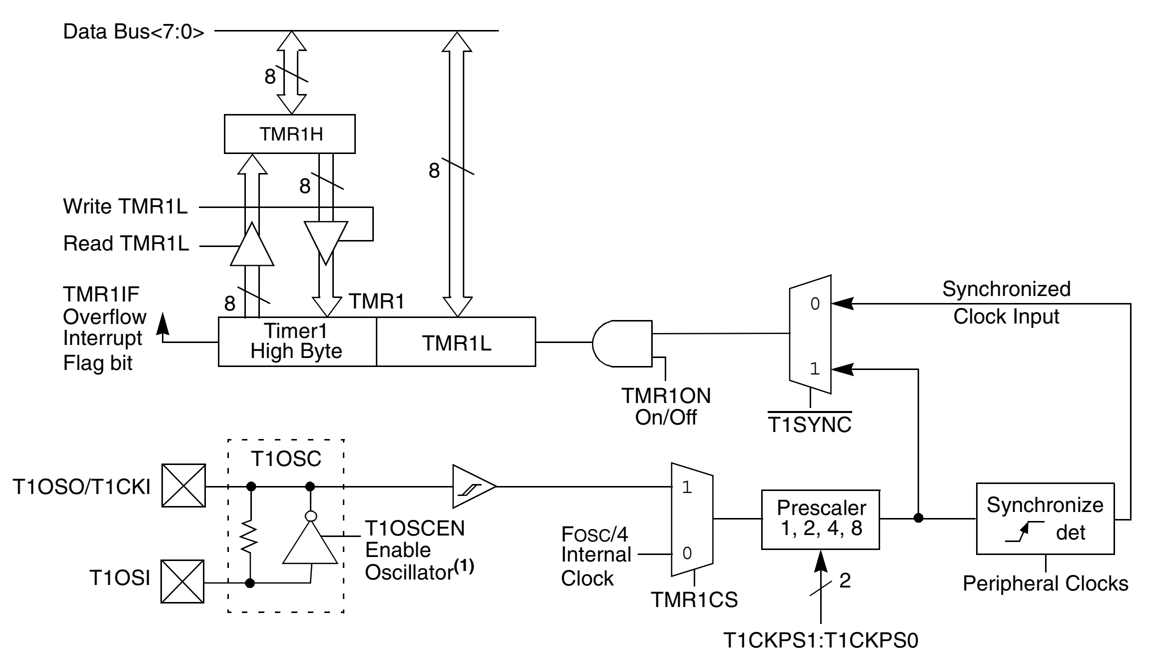
When the Timer1 oscillator is enabled (T1OSCEN is set), the T1OSI and T1OSO/T1CKI pins become inputs. That is, the corresponding TRISA bit value is ignored, and the pins are read as '`0`'.

FIGURE 12-1: TIMER1 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: When enable bit T1OSCEN is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This eliminates power drain.

FIGURE 12-2: TIMER1 BLOCK DIAGRAM: 16-BIT READ/WRITE MODE



Note 1: When enable bit T1OSCEN is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This eliminates power drain.

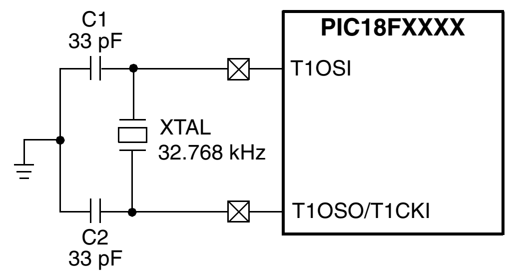
 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

12.2 Timer1 Oscillator

A crystal oscillator circuit is built-in between pins T1OSI (input) and T1OSO/TICKI (amplifier output). The placement of these pins depends on the value of Configuration bit, T1OSCMX (see **Section 19.1 "Configuration Bits"**). It is enabled by setting control bit T1OSCEN (T1CON<3>). The oscillator is a low-power oscillator rated for 32 kHz crystals. It will continue to run during all power-managed modes. The circuit for a typical LP oscillator is shown in Figure 12-3. Table 12-1 shows the capacitor selection for the Timer1 oscillator.

The user must provide a software time delay to ensure proper start-up of the Timer1 oscillator.

FIGURE 12-3: EXTERNAL COMPONENTS FOR THE TIMER1 LP OSCILLATOR



Note: See the notes with Table 12-1 for additional information about capacitor selec-

TABLE 12-1: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR THE TIMER OSCILLATOR

Osc Type	Freq	C1	C2
LP	32 kHz	27 pF(1)	27 pF(1)

Note 1: Microchip suggests this value as a starting point in validating the oscillator circuit.

2: Higher capacitance increases the stability of the oscillator, but also increases the start-up time.

3: Since each resonator/crystal has its own characteristics, the user should consult the resonator/crystal manufacturer for appropriate values of external components.

4: Capacitor values are for design guidance only.

12.2.1 USING TIMER1 AS A CLOCK SOURCE

The Timer1 oscillator is also available as a clock source in power-managed modes. By setting the System Clock Select bits, SCS1:SCS0 (OSCCON<1:0>), to '`01`', the device switches to SEC_RUN mode; both the CPU and peripherals are clocked from the Timer1 oscillator. If the IDLEN bit (OSCCON<7>) is cleared and a `SLEEP` instruction is executed, the device enters SEC_IDLE mode. Additional details are available in **Section 3.0 "Power-Managed Modes"**.

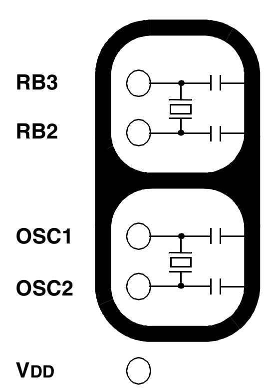
Whenever the Timer1 oscillator is providing the clock source, the Timer1 system clock status flag, T1RUN (T1CON<6>), is set. This can be used to determine the controller's current clocking mode. It can also indicate the clock source being currently used by the Fail-Safe Clock Monitor. If the Clock Monitor is enabled and the Timer1 oscillator fails while providing the clock, polling the T1RUN bit will indicate whether the clock is being provided by the Timer1 oscillator or another source.

12.3 Timer1 Oscillator Layout Considerations

The oscillator circuit, shown in Figure 12-3, should be located as close as possible to the microcontroller. There should be no circuits passing within the oscillator circuit boundaries other than VSS or VDD.

If a high-speed circuit must be located near the oscillator (such as the PWM pin, or the primary oscillator using the OSC2 pin), a grounded guard ring around the oscillator circuit, as shown in Figure 12-4, may be helpful when used on a single-sided PCB, or in addition to a ground plane.

FIGURE 12-4: OSCILLATOR CIRCUIT WITH GROUNDED GUARD RING



Note: Not drawn to scale.

12.4 Timer1 Interrupt

The TMR1 register pair (TMR1H:TMR1L) increments from 0000h to FFFFh and rolls over to 0000h. The Timer1 interrupt, if enabled, is generated on overflow which is latched in interrupt flag bit, TMR1IF (PIR1<0>). This interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing Timer1 interrupt enable bit, TMR1IE (PIE1<0>).

12.5 Timer1 16-Bit Read/Write Mode

Timer1 can be configured for 16-bit reads and writes (see Figure 12-2). When the RD16 control bit (T1CON<7>) is set, the address for TMR1H is mapped to a buffer register for the high byte of Timer1. A read from TMR1L will load the contents of the high byte of Timer1 into the Timer1 High Byte Buffer register. This provides the user with the ability to accurately read all 16 bits of Timer1 without having to determine whether a read of the high byte, followed by a read of the low byte, is valid due to a rollover between reads.

A write to the high byte of Timer1 must also take place through the TMR1H Buffer register. Timer1 high byte is updated with the contents of TMR1H when a write occurs to TMR1L. This allows a user to write all 16 bits to both the high and low bytes of Timer1 at once.

The high byte of Timer1 is not directly readable or writable in this mode. All reads and writes must take place through the Timer1 High Byte Buffer register. Writes to TMR1H do not clear the Timer1 prescaler. The prescaler is only cleared on writes to TMR1L.

12.6 Using Timer1 as a Real-Time Clock

Adding an external LP oscillator to Timer1 (such as the one described in **Section 12.2 "Timer1 Oscillator"**), gives users the option to include RTC functionality to their applications. This is accomplished with an inexpensive watch crystal to provide an accurate time base and several lines of application code to calculate the time. When operating in Sleep mode and using a battery or super capacitor as a power source, it can completely eliminate the need for a separate RTC device and battery backup.

The application code routine, `RTCisr`, shown in Example 12-1, demonstrates a simple method to increment a counter at one-second intervals using an Interrupt Service Routine. Incrementing the TMR1 register pair to overflow triggers the interrupt and calls the routine, which increments the seconds counter by one. Additional counters for minutes and hours are incremented as the previous counter overflow.

Since the register pair is 16 bits wide, counting up to overflow the register directly from a 32.768 kHz clock would take 2 seconds. To force the overflow at the required one-second intervals, it is necessary to preload it. The simplest method is to set the MSb of TMR1H with a `BSF` instruction. Note that the TMR1L register is never preloaded or altered; doing so may introduce cumulative error over many cycles.

For this method to be accurate, Timer1 must operate in Asynchronous mode and the Timer1 overflow interrupt must be enabled (PIE1<0> `= 1`), as shown in the routine, `RTCinit`. The Timer1 oscillator must also be enabled and running at all times.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

EXAMPLE 12-1: IMPLEMENTING A REAL-TIME CLOCK USING A TIMER1 INTERRUPT SERVICE

```
RTCinit
          MOVLW     0x80                     ; Preload TMR1 register pair
          MOVWF     TMR1H                    ; for 1 second overflow
          CLRF      TMR1L
          MOVLW     b'00001111'              ; Configure for external clock,
          MOVWF     T1OSC                    ; Asynchronous operation, external oscillator
          CLRF      secs                     ; Initialize timekeeping registers
          CLRF      mins                     ;
          MOVLW     .12
          MOVWF     hours
          BSF       PIE1, TMR1IE             ; Enable Timer1 interrupt
          RETURN
RTCisr
          BSF       TMR1H, 7                 ; Preload for 1 sec overflow
          BCF       PIR1, TMR1IF             ; Clear interrupt flag
          INCF      secs, F                  ; Increment seconds
          MOVLW     .59                      ; 60 seconds elapsed?
          CPFSGT    secs
          RETURN                             ; No, done
          CLRF      secs                     ; Clear seconds
          INCF      mins, F                  ; Increment minutes
          MOVLW     .59                      ; 60 minutes elapsed?
          CPFSGT    mins
          RETURN                             ; No, done
          CLRF      mins                     ; clear minutes
          INCF      hours, F                 ; Increment hours
          MOVLW     .23                      ; 24 hours elapsed?
          CPFSGT    hours
          RETURN                             ; No, done
          MOVLW     .01                      ; Reset hours to 1
          MOVWF     hours
          RETURN                             ; Done
```

TABLE 12-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER1 AS A TIMER/COUNTER

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	CMP2IF	CMP1IF	CMP0IF	TMR1IF	43
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	CMP2IE	CMP1IE	CMP0IE	TMR1IE	43
IPR1	—	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	CMP2IP	CMP1IP	CMP0IP	TMR1IP	43
TMR1L	Timer1 Register Low Byte								42
TMR1H	Timer1 Register High Byte								42
T1CON	RD16	T1RUN	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	42

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented, read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used by the Timer1 module.

NOTES:

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

13.0 POWER CONTROL PWM MODULE

The Power Control PWM module simplifies the task of generating multiple, synchronized Pulse-Width Modulated (PWM) outputs for use in the control of motor controllers and power conversion applications. In particular, the following power and motion control applications are supported by the PWM module:

- Three-Phase and Single-Phase AC Induction Motors
- Switched Reluctance Motors
- Brushless DC (BLDC) Motors
- Uninterruptible Power Supplies (UPS)
- Multiple DC Brush Motors

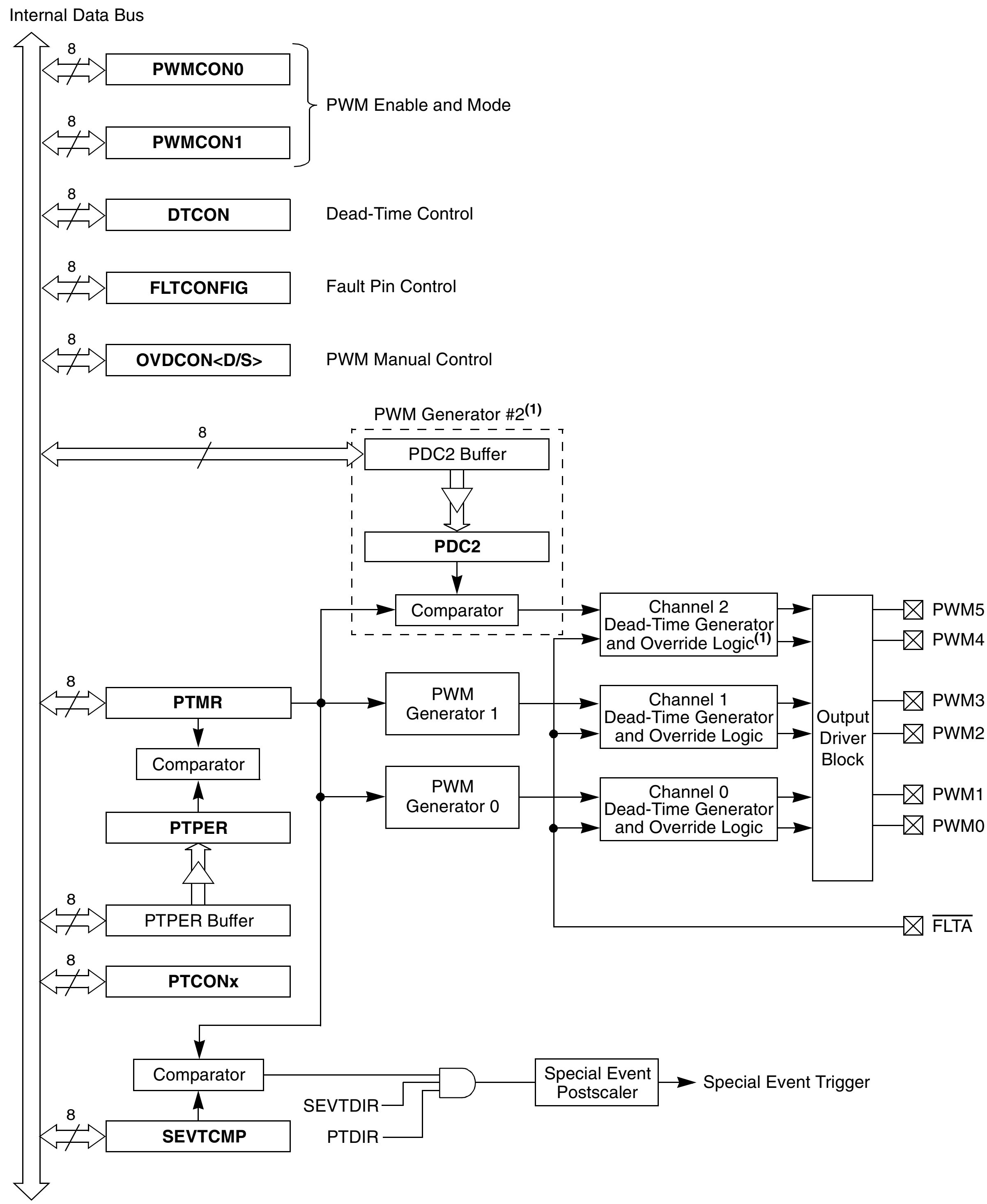
The PWM module has the following features:

- Up to six PWM I/O pins with three duty cycle generators. Pins can be paired to acquire a complete half-bridge control.
- Up to 14-bit resolution, depending upon the PWM period.
- “On-the-fly” PWM frequency changes.
- Edge and Center-Aligned Output modes.
- Single-Pulse Generation mode.
- Programmable dead-time control between paired PWMs.
- Interrupt support for asymmetrical updates in Center-Aligned mode.
- Output override for Electrically Commutated Motor (ECM) operation; for example, BLDC.
- Special Event Trigger comparator for triggering A/D conversion.
- PWM outputs disable feature sets PWM outputs to their inactive state when in Debug mode.

The Power Control PWM module supports three PWM generators and six output channels on PIC18F1230/1330 devices. A simplified block diagram of the module is shown in Figure 13-1. Figure 13-2 and Figure 13-3 show how the module hardware is configured for each PWM output pair for the Complementary and Independent Output modes.

Each functional unit of the PWM module will be discussed in subsequent sections.

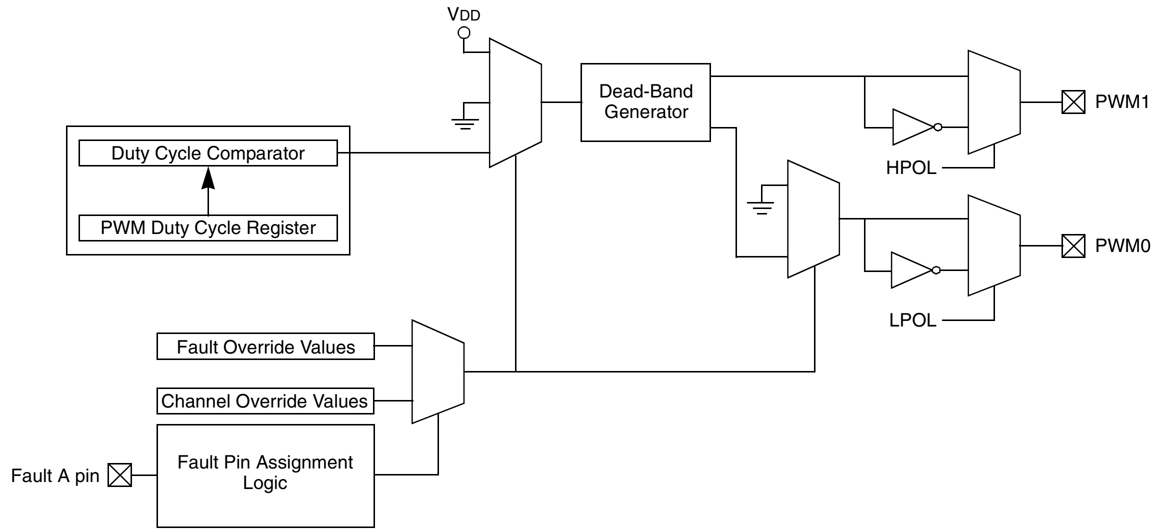
FIGURE 13-1: POWER CONTROL PWM MODULE BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: Only PWM Generator 2 is shown in detail. The other generators are identical; their details are omitted for clarity.

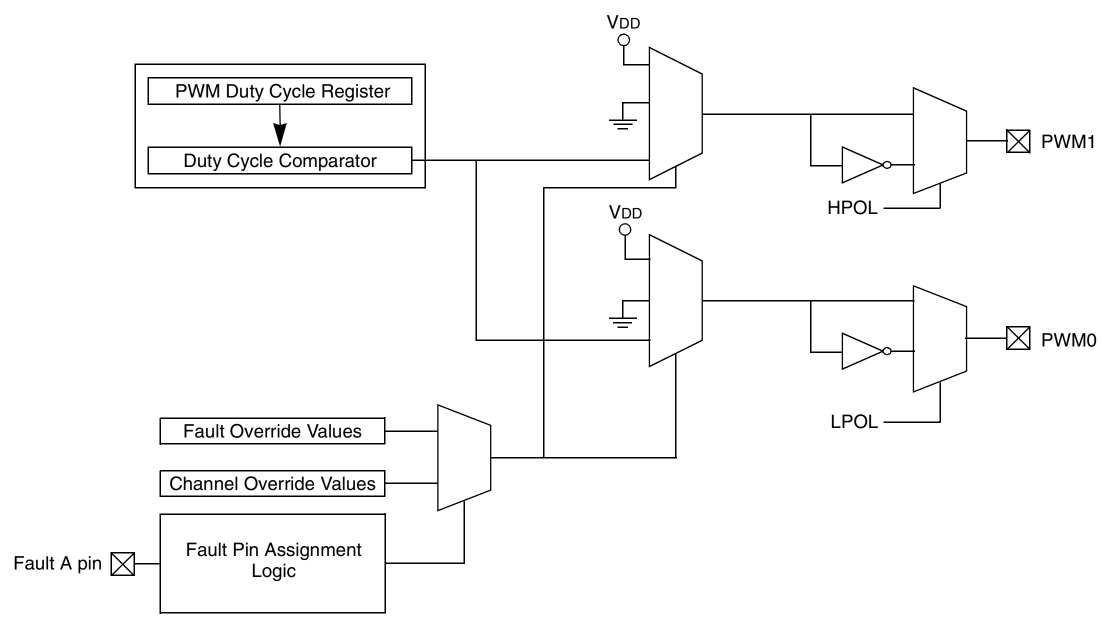
 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 13-2: PWM MODULE BLOCK DIAGRAM, ONE OUTPUT PAIR, COMPLEMENTARY MODE



Note: In the Complementary mode, the even channel cannot be forced active by a Fault or override event when the odd channel is active. The even channel is always the complement of the odd channel and is inactive, with dead time inserted, before the odd channel is driven to its active state.

FIGURE 13-3: PWM MODULE BLOCK DIAGRAM, ONE OUTPUT PAIR, INDEPENDENT MODE



This module contains three duty cycle generators, numbered 0 through 2. The module has six PWM output pins, numbered 0 through 5. The six PWM outputs are grouped into output pairs of even and odd numbered outputs. In Complementary modes, the even PWM pins must always be the complement of the corresponding odd PWM pins. For example, PWM0 will be the complement of PWM1 and PWM2 will be the complement of PWM3. The dead-time generator inserts an OFF period called “dead time” between the going OFF of one pin to the going ON of the complementary pin of the paired pins. This is to prevent damage to the power switching devices that will be connected to the PWM output pins.

The time base for the PWM module is provided by its own 12-bit timer, which also incorporates selectable prescaler and postscaler options.

13.1 Control Registers

The operation of the PWM module is controlled by a total of 20 registers. Eight of these are used to configure the features of the module:

- PWM Timer Control Register 0 (PTCON0)
- PWM Timer Control Register 1 (PTCON1)
- PWM Control Register 0 (PWMCON0)
- PWM Control Register 1 (PWMCON1)
- Dead-Time Control Register (DTCON)
- Output Override Control Register (OVDCOND)
- Output State Register (OVDCONS)
- Fault Configuration Register (FLTCONFIG)

There are also 12 registers that are configured as six register pairs of 16 bits. These are used for the configuration values of specific features. They are:

- PWM Time Base Registers (PTMRH and PTMRL)
- PWM Time Base Period Registers (PTPERH and PTPERL)
- PWM Special Event Compare Registers (SEVTCMPH and SEVTCMPL)
- PWM Duty Cycle #0 Registers (PDC0H and PDC0L)
- PWM Duty Cycle #1 Registers (PDC1H and PDC1L)
- PWM Duty Cycle #2 Registers (PDC2H and PDC2L)

All of these register pairs are double-buffered.

13.2 Module Functionality

The PWM module supports several modes of operation that are beneficial for specific power and motor control applications. Each mode of operation is described in subsequent sections.

The PWM module is composed of several functional blocks. The operation of each is explained separately in relation to the several modes of operation:

- PWM Time Base
- PWM Time Base Interrupts
- PWM Period
- PWM Duty Cycle
- Dead-Time Generators
- PWM Output Overrides
- PWM Fault Inputs
- PWM Special Event Trigger

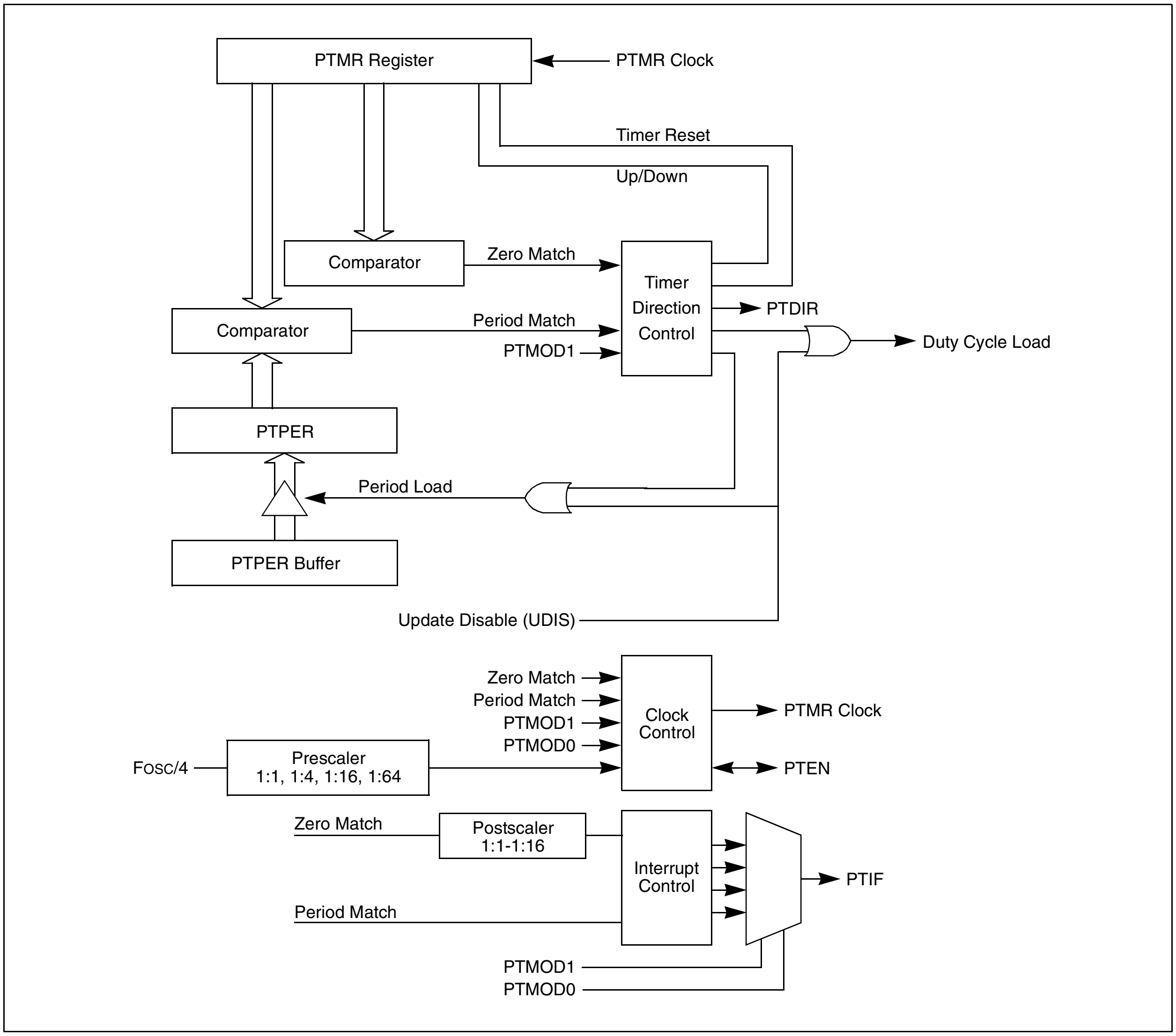
13.3 PWM Time Base

The PWM time base is provided by a 12-bit timer with prescaler and postscaler functions. A simplified block diagram of the PWM time base is shown in Figure 13-4. The PWM time base is configured through the PTCON0 and PTCON1 registers. The time base is enabled or disabled by respectively setting or clearing the PTEN bit in the PTCON1 register.

Note:	The PTMR register pair (PTMRL:PTMRH) is not cleared when the PTEN bit is cleared in software.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 13-4: PWM TIME BASE BLOCK DIAGRAM



The PWM time base can be configured for four different modes of operation:

- Free-Running mode
- Single-Shot mode
- Continuous Up/Down Count mode
- Continuous Up/Down Count mode with interrupts for double updates

These four modes are selected by the PTMOD1:PTMOD0 bits in the PTCON0 register. The Free-Running mode produces edge-aligned PWM generation. The Continuous Up/Down Count modes produce center-aligned PWM generation. The Single-Shot mode allows the PWM module to support pulse control of certain Electronically Commutated Motors (ECMs) and produces edge-aligned operation.

REGISTER 13-1: PTCON0: PWM TIMER CONTROL REGISTER 0

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
PTOPS3	PTOPS2	PTOPS1	PTOPS0	PTCKPS1	PTCKPS0	PTMOD1	PTMOD0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-4 **PTOPS3:PTOPS0:** PWM Time Base Output Postscale Select bits
`0000` = 1:1 Postscale
`0001` = 1:2 Postscale
.
.
.
`1111` = 1:16 Postscale

bit 3-2 **PTCKPS1:PTCKPS0:** PWM Time Base Input Clock Prescale Select bits
`00` = PWM time base input clock is FOSC/4 (1:1 prescale)
`01` = PWM time base input clock is FOSC/16 (1:4 prescale)
`10` = PWM time base input clock is FOSC/64 (1:16 prescale)
`11` = PWM time base input clock is FOSC/256 (1:64 prescale)

bit 1-0 **PTMOD1:PTMOD0:** PWM Time Base Mode Select bits
`11` = PWM time base operates in a Continuous Up/Down Count mode with interrupts for double PWM updates
`10` = PWM time base operates in a Continuous Up/Down Count mode
`01` = PWM time base configured for Single-Shot mode
`00` = PWM time base operates in a Free-Running mode

REGISTER 13-2: PTCON1: PWM TIMER CONTROL REGISTER 1

R/W-0	R-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
PTEN	PTDIR	—	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **PTEN:** PWM Time Base Timer Enable bit
`1` = PWM time base is on
`0` = PWM time base is off

bit 6 **PTDIR:** PWM Time Base Count Direction Status bit
`1` = PWM time base counts down
`0` = PWM time base counts up

bit 5-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘`0`’

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 13-3: PWMCON0: PWM CONTROL REGISTER 0

U-0	R/W-1(1)	R/W-1(1)	R/W-1(1)	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	PWMEN2	PWMEN1	PWMEN0	—	PMOD2	PMOD1	PMOD0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 6-4 **PWMEN2:PWMEN0:** PWM Module Enable bits(1)

111 = All odd PWM I/O pins enabled for PWM output
110 = PWM1, PWM3 pins enabled for PWM output
10x = All PWM I/O pins enabled for PWM output
011 = PWM0, PWM1, PWM2 and PWM3 I/O pins enabled for PWM output
010 = PWM0 and PWM1 pins enabled for PWM output
001 = PWM1 pin is enabled for PWM output
000 = PWM module disabled; all PWM I/O pins are general purpose I/O

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 2-0 **PMOD2:PMOD0:** PWM Output Pair Mode bits

For PMOD0:
1 = PWM I/O pin pair (PWM0, PWM1) is in the Independent mode
0 = PWM I/O pin pair (PWM0, PWM1) is in the Complementary mode

For PMOD1:
1 = PWM I/O pin pair (PWM2, PWM3) is in the Independent mode
0 = PWM I/O pin pair (PWM2, PWM3) is in the Complementary mode

For PMOD2:
1 = PWM I/O pin pair (PWM4, PWM5) is in the Independent mode
0 = PWM I/O pin pair (PWM4, PWM5) is in the Complementary mode

Note 1: Reset condition of PWMEN bits depends on the PWMPIN Configuration bit.

REGISTER 13-4: PWMCON1: PWM CONTROL REGISTER 1

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
SEVOPS3	SEVOPS2	SEVOPS1	SEVOPS0	SEVTDIR	—	UDIS	OSYNC
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-4 **SEVOPS3:SEVOPS0:** PWM Special Event Trigger Output Postscale Select bits
0000 = 1:1 Postscale
0001 = 1:2 Postscale
.
.
.
1111 = 1:16 Postscale

bit 3 **SEVTDIR:** Special Event Trigger Time Base Direction bit
1 = A Special Event Trigger will occur when the PWM time base is counting downwards
0 = A Special Event Trigger will occur when the PWM time base is counting upwards

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 1 **UDIS:** PWM Update Disable bit
1 = Updates from Duty Cycle and Period Buffer registers are disabled
0 = Updates from Duty Cycle and Period Buffer registers are enabled

bit 0 **OSYNC:** PWM Output Override Synchronization bit
1 = Output overrides via the OVDCON register are synchronized to the PWM time base
0 = Output overrides via the OVDCON register are asynchronous

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

13.3.1 FREE-RUNNING MODE

In the Free-Running mode, the PWM time base (PTMRL and PTMRH) will begin counting upwards until the value in the PWM Time Base Period register, PTPER (PTPERL and PTPERH), is matched. The PTMR registers will be reset on the following input clock edge and the time base will continue counting upwards as long as the PTEN bit remains set.

13.3.2 SINGLE-SHOT MODE

In the Single-Shot mode, the PWM time base will begin counting upwards when the PTEN bit is set. When the value in the PTMR register matches the PTPER register, the PTMR register will be reset on the following input clock edge and the PTEN bit will be cleared by the hardware to halt the time base.

13.3.3 CONTINUOUS UP/DOWN COUNT MODES

In Continuous Up/Down Count modes, the PWM time base counts upwards until the value in the PTPER register matches the PTMR register. On the following input clock edge, the timer counts downwards. The PTDIR bit in the PTCON1 register is read-only and indicates the counting direction. The PTDIR bit is set when the timer counts downwards.

Note:	Since the PWM compare outputs are driven to the active state when the PWM time-base is counting downwards and matches the duty cycle value, the PWM outputs are held inactive during the first half of the first period of the Continuous Up/Down Count mode until the PTMR begins to count down from the PTPER value.

13.3.4 PWM TIME BASE PRESCALER

The input clock to PTMR (FOSC/4) has prescaler options of 1:1, 1:4, 1:16 or 1:64. These are selected by control bits, PTCKPS<1:0>, in the PTCON0 register. The prescaler counter is cleared when any of the following occurs:

- Write to the PTMR register
- Write to the PTCON (PTCON0 or PTCON1) register
- Any device Reset

Note:	The PTMR register is not cleared when PTCONx is written.

Table 13-1 shows the minimum PWM frequencies that can be generated with the PWM time base and the prescaler. An operating frequency of 40 MHz (FCYC = 10 MHz) and PTPER = 0xFFF are assumed in the table. The PWM module must be capable of generating PWM signals at the line frequency (50 Hz or 60 Hz) for certain power control applications.

TABLE 13-1: MINIMUM PWM FREQUENCY

Minimum PWM Frequencies vs. Prescaler Value for FCYC = 10 MIPS (PTPER = 0FFFh)		
Prescale	**PWM Frequency Edge-Aligned**	**PWM Frequency Center-Aligned**
1:1	2441 Hz	1221 Hz
1:4	610 Hz	305 Hz
1:16	153 Hz	76 Hz
1:64	38 Hz	19 Hz

13.3.5 PWM TIME BASE POSTSCALER

The match output of PTMR can optionally be postscaled through a 4-bit postscaler (which gives a 1:1 to 1:16 scaling inclusive) to generate an interrupt. The postscaler counter is cleared when any of the following occurs:

- Write to the PTMR register
- Write to the PTCONx register
- Any device Reset

The PTMR register is not cleared when PTCONx is written.

13.4 PWM Time Base Interrupts

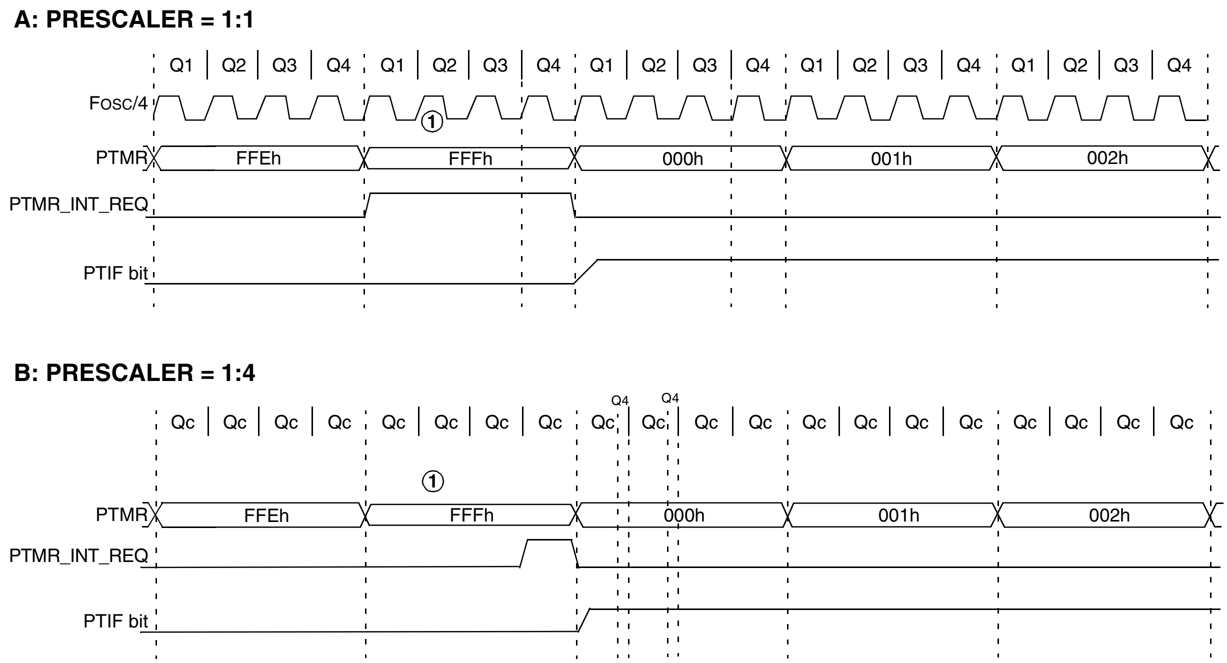
The PWM timer can generate interrupts based on the modes of operation selected by the PTMOD<1:0> bits and the postscaler bits (PTOPS<3:0>).

13.4.1 INTERRUPTS IN FREE-RUNNING MODE

When the PWM time base is in the Free-Running mode (PTMOD<1:0> = 00), an interrupt event is generated each time a match with the PTPER register occurs. The PTMR register is reset to zero in the following clock edge.

Using a postscaler selection other than 1:1 will reduce the frequency of interrupt events.

FIGURE 13-5: PWM TIME BASE INTERRUPT TIMING, FREE-RUNNING MODE



Note 1: PWM Time Base Period register, PTPER, is loaded with the value FFFh for this example.

13.4.2 INTERRUPTS IN SINGLE-SHOT MODE

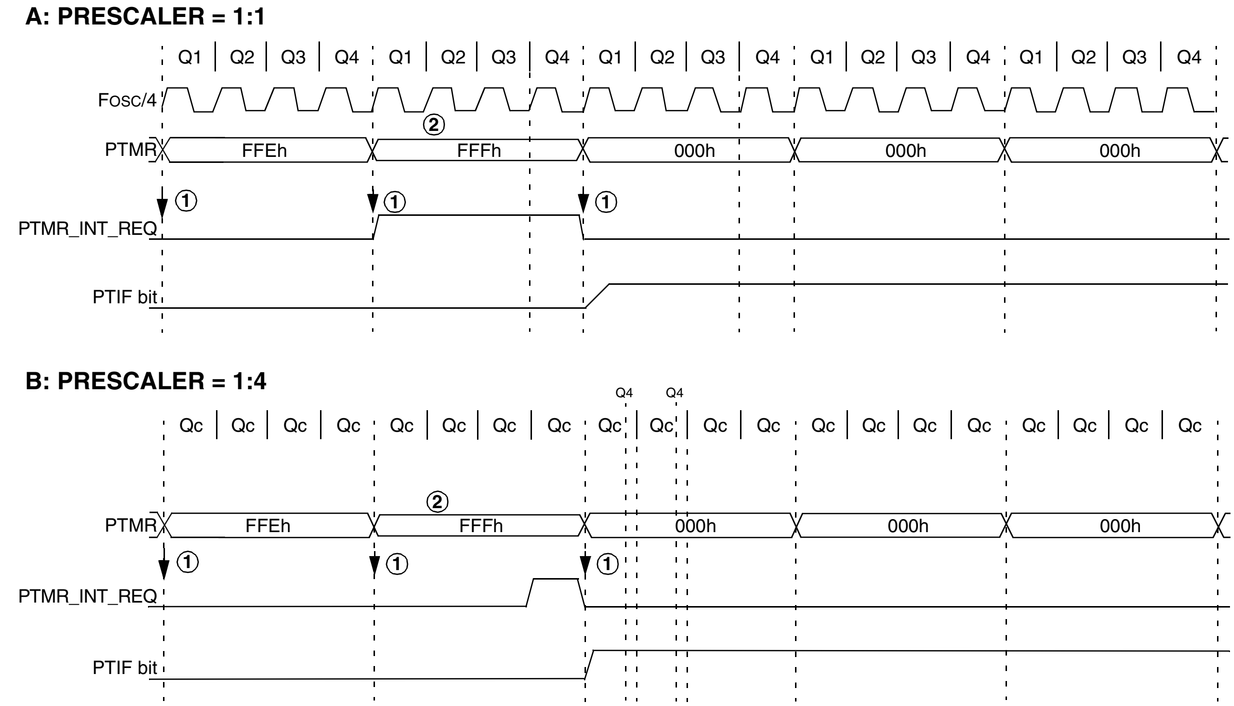
When the PWM time base is in the Single-Shot mode (PTMOD<1:0> = `01`), an interrupt event is generated when a match with the PTPER register occurs. The PWM Time Base register (PTMR) is reset to zero on the following input clock edge and the PTEN bit is cleared. The postscaler selection bits have no effect in this Timer mode.

13.4.3 INTERRUPTS IN CONTINUOUS UP/DOWN COUNT MODE

In the Continuous Up/Down Count mode (PTMOD<1:0> = `10`), an interrupt event is generated each time the value of the PTMR register becomes zero and the PWM time base begins to count upwards. The postscaler selection bits may be used in this Timer mode to reduce the frequency of the interrupt events. Figure 13-7 shows the interrupts in Continuous Up/Down Count mode.

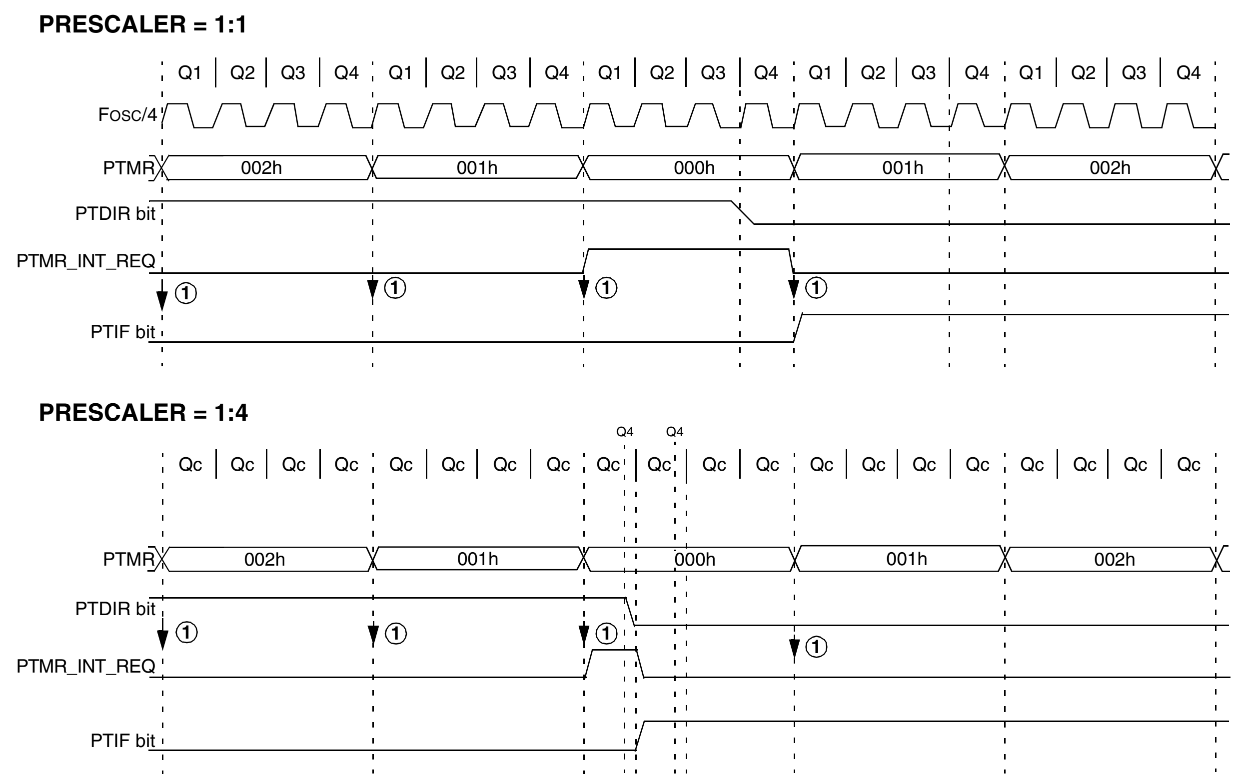
 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 13-6: PWM TIME BASE INTERRUPT TIMING, SINGLE-SHOT MODE



Note 1: Interrupt flag bit, PTIF, is sampled here (every Q1).
2: PWM Time Base Period register, PTPER, is loaded with the value FFFh for this example.

FIGURE 13-7: PWM TIME BASE INTERRUPTS, CONTINUOUS UP/DOWN COUNT MODE



Note 1: Interrupt flag bit, PTIF, is sampled here (every Q1).

13.4.4 INTERRUPTS IN DOUBLE UPDATE MODE

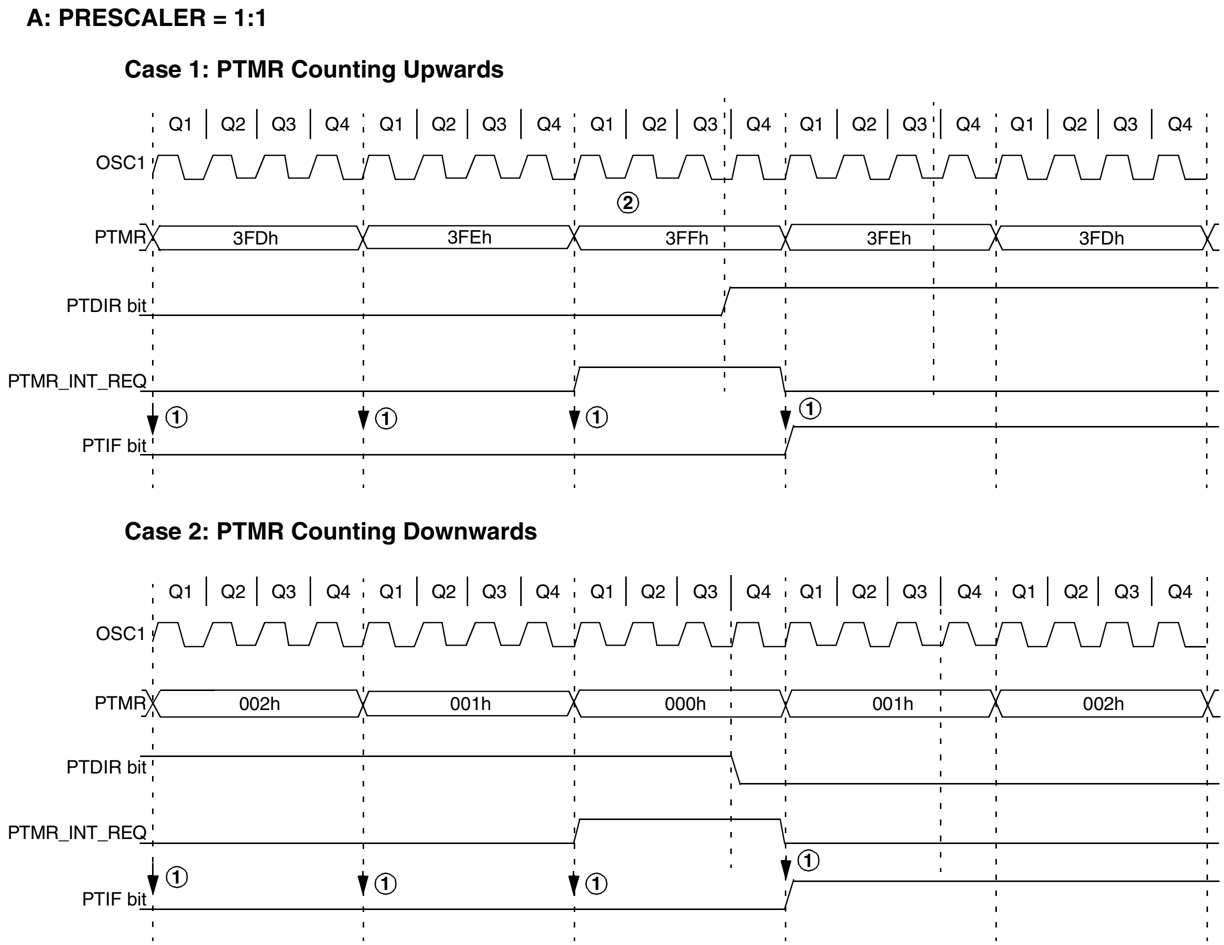
This mode is available in Continuous Up/Down Count mode. In the Double Update mode (PTMOD<1:0> = 11), an interrupt event is generated each time the PTMR register is equal to zero and each time the PTMR matches the PTPER register. Figure 13-8 shows the interrupts in Continuous Up/Down Count mode with double updates.

The Double Update mode provides two additional functions to the user in Center-Aligned mode.

1. The control loop bandwidth is doubled because the PWM duty cycles can be updated twice per period.
2. Asymmetrical center-aligned PWM waveforms can be generated, which are useful for minimizing output waveform distortion in certain motor control applications.

Note:	Do not change the PTMOD bits while PTEN is active. It will yield unexpected results. To change the PWM Timer mode of operation, first clear the PTEN bit, load PTMOD bits with required data and then set PTEN.

FIGURE 13-8: PWM TIME BASE INTERRUPTS, CONTINUOUS UP/DOWN COUNT MODE WITH DOUBLE UPDATES



Note 1: Interrupt flag bit, PTIF, is sampled here (every Q1).

2: PWM Time Base Period register, PTPER, is loaded with the value 3FFh for this example.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

13.5 PWM Period

The PWM period is defined by the PTPER register pair (PTPERL and PTPERH). The PWM period has 12-bit resolution by combining 4 LSBs of PTPERH and 8 bits of PTPERL. PTPER is a double-buffered register used to set the counting period for the PWM time base.

The PTPER buffer contents are loaded into the PTPER register at the following times:

- Free-Running and Single-Shot modes: When the PTMR register is reset to zero after a match with the PTPER register.
- Continuous Up/Down Count modes: When the PTMR register is zero. The value held in the PTPER buffer is automatically loaded into the PTPER register when the PWM time base is disabled (PTEN = 0). Figure 13-9 and Figure 13-10 indicate the times when the contents of the PTPER buffer are loaded into the actual PTPER register.

The PWM period can be calculated from the following formulas:

EQUATION 13-1: PWM PERIOD FOR FREE-RUNNING MODE

$$T_{PWM} = \frac{(PTPER + 1) \times PTMRPS}{F_{OSC}/4}$$

EQUATION 13-2: PWM PERIOD FOR CONTINUOUS UP/DOWN COUNT MODE

$$T_{PWM} = \frac{(2 \times PTPER) \times PTMRPS}{\frac{F_{OSC}}{4}}$$

The PWM frequency is the inverse of period; or

EQUATION 13-3: PWM FREQUENCY

$$\text{PWM Frequency} = \frac{1}{\text{PWM Period}}$$

The maximum resolution (in bits) for a given device oscillator and PWM frequency can be determined from the following formula:

EQUATION 13-4: PWM RESOLUTION

$$\text{Resolution} = \frac{\log\left(\frac{F_{OSC}}{F_{PWM}}\right)}{\log(2)}$$

The PWM resolutions and frequencies are shown for a selection of execution speeds and PTPER values in Table 13-2. The PWM frequencies in Table 13-2 are calculated for Edge-Aligned PWM mode. For Center-Aligned mode, the PWM frequencies will be approximately one-half the values indicated in this table.

TABLE 13-2: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS

PWM Frequency = 1/TPWM				
Fosc	MIPS	PTPER Value	PWM Resolution	PWM Frequency
40 MHz	10	0FFFh	14 bits	2.4 kHz
40 MHz	10	07FFh	13 bits	4.9 kHz
40 MHz	10	03FFh	12 bits	9.8 kHz
40 MHz	10	01FFh	11 bits	19.5 kHz
40 MHz	10	FFh	10 bits	39.0 kHz
40 MHz	10	7Fh	9 bits	78.1 kHz
40 MHz	10	3Fh	8 bits	156.2 kHz
40 MHz	10	1Fh	7 bits	312.5 kHz
40 MHz	10	0Fh	6 bits	625 kHz
25 MHz	6.25	0FFFh	14 bits	1.5 kHz
25 MHz	6.25	03FFh	12 bits	6.1 kHz
25 MHz	6.25	FFh	10 bits	24.4 kHz
10 MHz	2.5	0FFFh	14 bits	610 Hz
10 MHz	2.5	03FFh	12 bits	2.4 kHz
10 MHz	2.5	FFh	10 bits	9.8 kHz
5 MHz	1.25	0FFFh	14 bits	305 Hz
5 MHz	1.25	03FFh	12 bits	1.2 kHz
5 MHz	1.25	FFh	10 bits	4.9 kHz
4 MHz	1	0FFFh	14 bits	244 Hz
4 MHz	1	03FFh	12 bits	976 Hz
4 MHz	1	FFh	10 bits	3.9 kHz

Note: For center-aligned operation, PWM frequencies will be approximately 1/2 the value indicated in the table.

FIGURE 13-9: PWM PERIOD BUFFER UPDATES IN FREE-RUNNING MODE

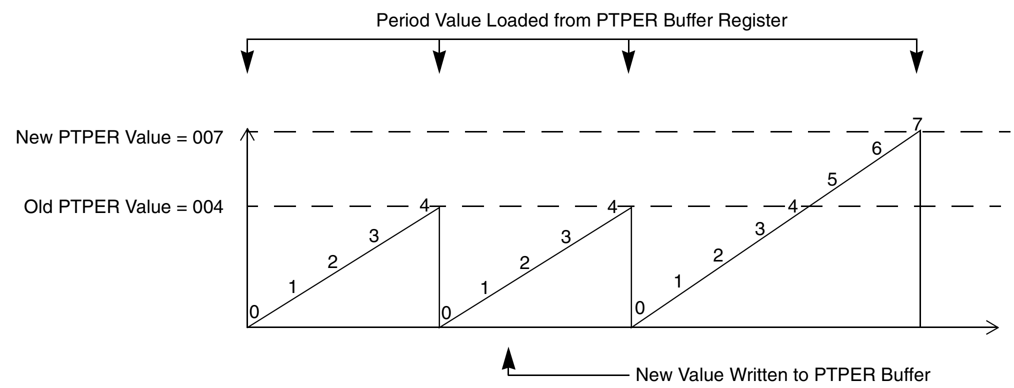
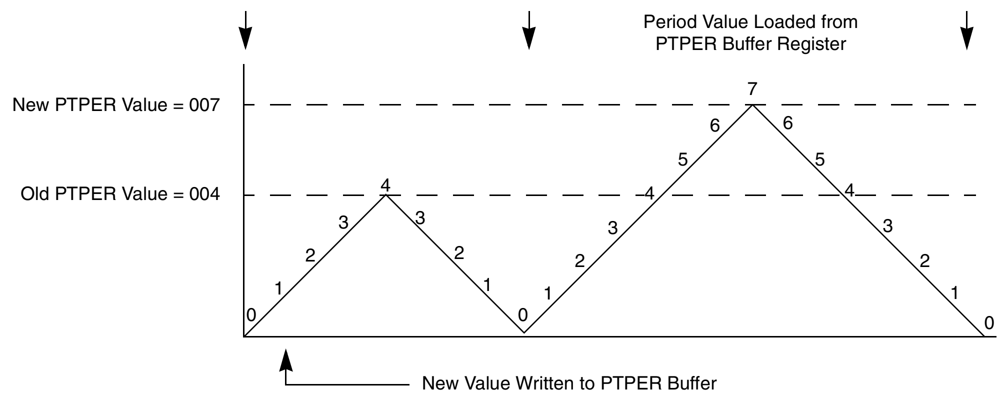


FIGURE 13-10: PWM PERIOD BUFFER UPDATES IN CONTINUOUS UP/DOWN COUNT MODES



 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

13.6 PWM Duty Cycle

PWM duty cycle is defined by the PDCx (PDCxL and PDCxH) registers. There are a total of three PWM Duty Cycle registers for four pairs of PWM channels. The Duty Cycle registers have 14-bit resolution by combining the six LSbs of PDCxH with the 8 bits of PDCxL. PDCx is a double-buffered register used to set the counting period for the PWM time base.

13.6.1 PWM DUTY CYCLE REGISTERS

There are three 14-bit Special Function Registers used to specify duty cycle values for the PWM module:

- PDC0 (PDC0L and PDC0H)
- PDC1 (PDC1L and PDC1H)
- PDC2 (PDC2L and PDC2H)

The value in each Duty Cycle register determines the amount of time that the PWM output is in the active state. The upper 12 bits of PDCx hold the actual duty cycle value from PTMRH/L<11:0>, while the lower two bits control which internal Q clock the duty cycle match will occur. This 2-bit value is decoded from the Q clocks, as shown in Figure 13-11, when the prescaler is 1:1 (PTCKPS<1:0> = `00`).

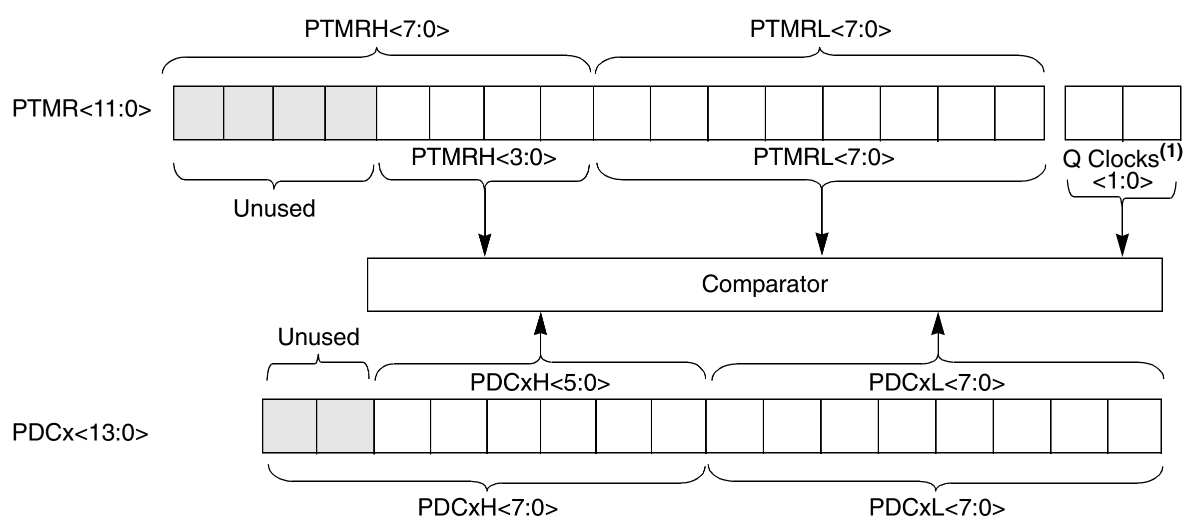
In Edge-Aligned mode, the PWM period starts at Q1 and ends when the Duty Cycle register matches the PTMR register as follows. The duty cycle match is considered when the upper 12 bits of the PDCx are equal to the PTMR and the lower 2 bits are equal to Q1, Q2, Q3 or Q4, depending on the lower two bits of the PDCx (when the prescaler is 1:1 or PTCKPS<1:0> = `00`).

Note:	When the prescaler is not 1:1 (PTCKPS<1:0> $\neq$ ~`00`), the duty cycle match occurs at the Q1 clock of the instruction cycle when the PTMR and PDCx match occurs.

Each compare unit has logic that allows override of the PWM signals. This logic also ensures that the PWM signals will complement each other (with dead-time insertion) in Complementary mode (see **Section 13.7 "Dead-Time Generators"**).

Note:	To get the correct PWM duty cycle, always multiply the calculated PWM duty cycle value by four before writing it to the PWM Duty Cycle registers. This is due to the two additional LSBs in the PWM Duty Cycle registers which are compared against the internal Q clock for the PWM duty cycle match.

FIGURE 13-11: DUTY CYCLE COMPARISON



Note 1: This value is decoded from the Q clocks:
`00` = duty cycle match occurs on Q1
`01` = duty cycle match occurs on Q2
`10` = duty cycle match occurs on Q3
`11` = duty cycle match occurs on Q4

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

13.6.2 DUTY CYCLE REGISTER BUFFERS

The three PWM Duty Cycle registers are double-buffered to allow glitchless updates of the PWM outputs. For each duty cycle block, there is a Duty Cycle Buffer register that is accessible by the user and a second Duty Cycle register that holds the actual compare value used in the present PWM period.

In Edge-Aligned PWM Output mode, a new duty cycle value will be updated whenever a PTMR match with the PTPER register occurs and PTMR is reset, as shown in Figure 13-12. Also, the contents of the duty cycle buffers are automatically loaded into the Duty Cycle registers when the PWM time base is disabled (PTEN = 0).

When the PWM time base is in the Continuous Up/Down Count mode, new duty cycle values will be updated when the value of the PTMR register is zero and the PWM time base begins to count upwards. The contents of the duty cycle buffers are automatically loaded into the Duty Cycle registers when the PWM time base is disabled (PTEN = 0). Figure 13-13 shows the timings when the duty cycle update occurs for the Continuous Up/Down Count mode. In this mode, up to one entire PWM period is available for calculating and loading the new PWM duty cycle before changes take effect.

When the PWM time base is in the Continuous Up/Down Count mode with double updates, new duty cycle values will be updated when the value of the PTMR register is zero and when the value of the PTMR register matches the value in the PTPER register. The contents of the duty cycle buffers are automatically loaded into the Duty Cycle registers during both of the previously described conditions. Figure 13-14 shows the duty cycle updates for Continuous Up/Down Count mode with double updates. In this mode, up to half of a PWM period is available for calculating and loading the new PWM duty cycle before changes take effect.

13.6.3 EDGE-ALIGNED PWM

Edge-aligned PWM signals are produced by the module when the PWM time base is in the Free-Running mode or the Single-Shot mode. For edge-aligned PWM outputs, the output for a given PWM channel has a period specified by the value loaded in PTPER and a duty cycle specified by the appropriate Duty Cycle register (see Figure 13-12). The PWM output is driven active at the beginning of the period (PTMR = 0) and is driven inactive when the value in the Duty Cycle register matches PTMR. A new cycle is started when PTMR matches the PTPER, as explained in the PWM period section.

If the value in a particular Duty Cycle register is zero, then the output on the corresponding PWM pin will be inactive for the entire PWM period. In addition, the output on the PWM pin will be active for the entire PWM period if the value in the Duty Cycle register is greater than the value held in the PTPER register.

FIGURE 13-12: EDGE-ALIGNED PWM

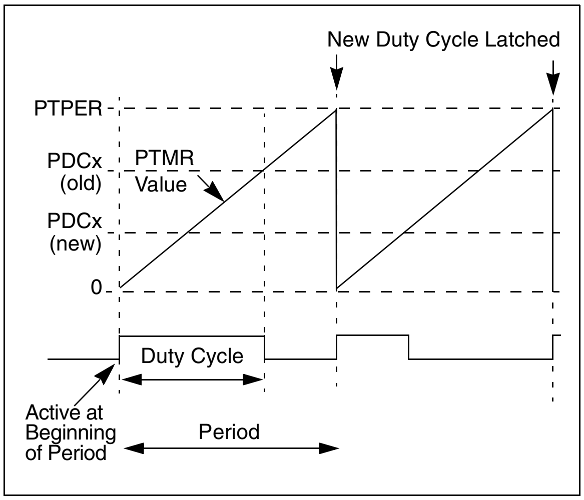
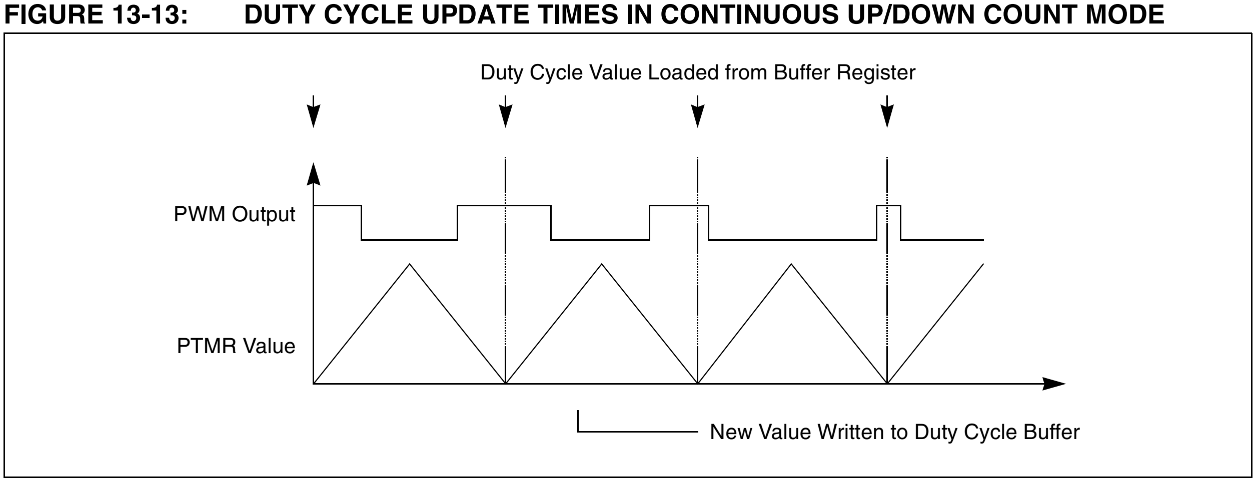
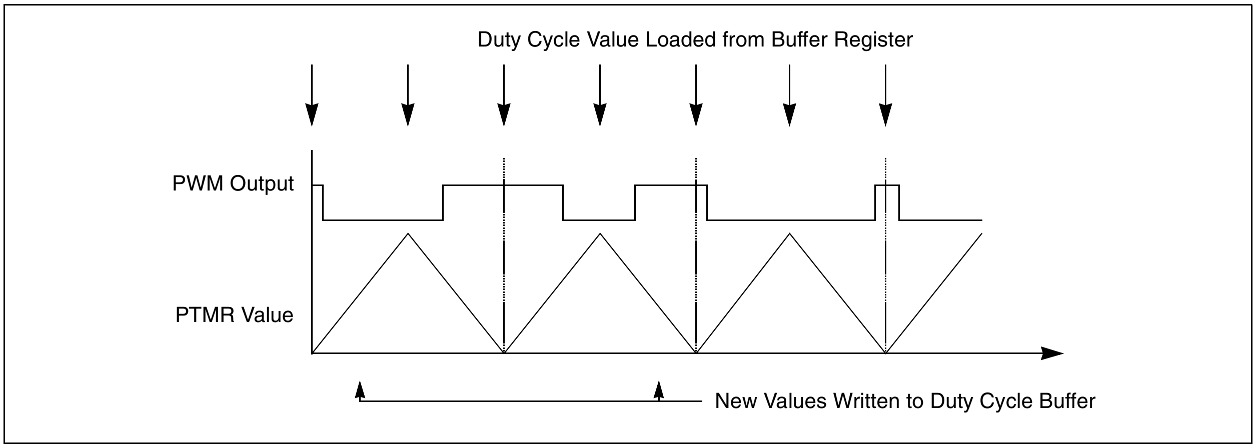


FIGURE 13-13: DUTY CYCLE UPDATE TIMES IN CONTINUOUS UP/DOWN COUNT MODE



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 13-14: DUTY CYCLE UPDATE TIMES IN CONTINUOUS UP/DOWN COUNT MODE WITH DOUBLE UPDATES

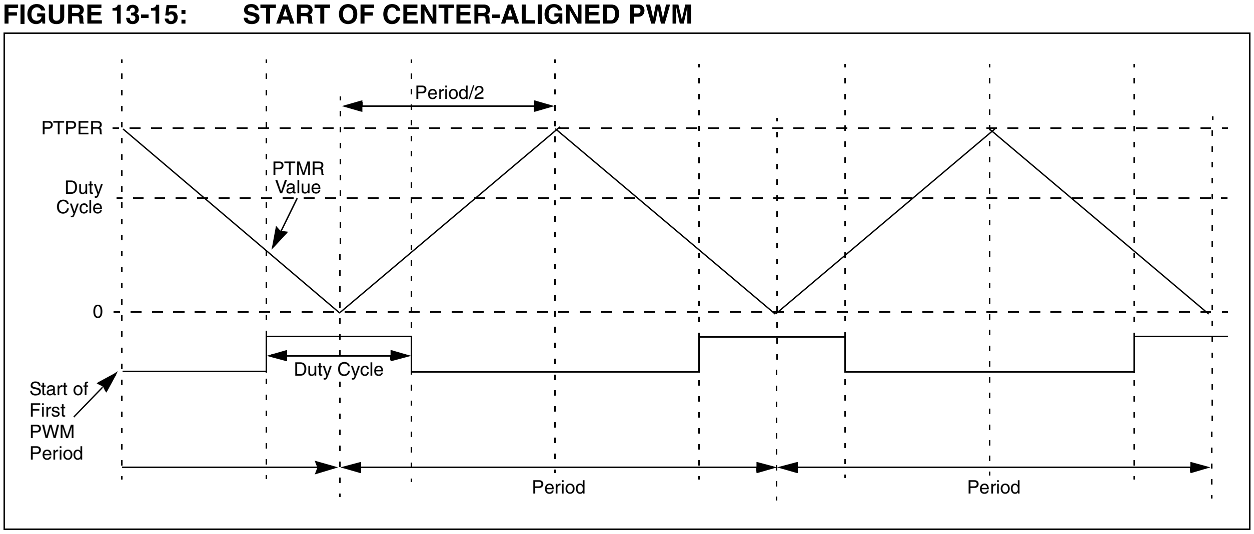


13.6.4 CENTER-ALIGNED PWM

Center-aligned PWM signals are produced by the module when the PWM time base is configured in a Continuous Up/Down Count mode (see Figure 13-15). The PWM compare output is driven to the active state when the value of the Duty Cycle register matches the value of PTMR and the PWM time base is counting downwards (PTDIR = 1). The PWM compare output will be driven to the inactive state when the PWM time base is counting upwards (PTDIR = 0) and the value in the PTMR register matches the duty cycle value. If the value in a particular Duty Cycle register is zero, then the output on the corresponding PWM pin will be inactive for the entire PWM period. In addition, the output on the PWM pin will be active for the entire PWM period if the value in the Duty Cycle register is equal to or greater than the value in the PTPER register.

Note:	When the PWM is started in Center-Aligned mode, the PWM Time Base Period register (PTPER) is loaded into the PWM Time Base register (PTMR) and the PTMR is configured automatically to start down counting. This is done to ensure that all the PWM signals don't start at the same time.

FIGURE 13-15: START OF CENTER-ALIGNED PWM



13.6.5 COMPLEMENTARY PWM OPERATION

The Complementary mode of PWM operation is useful to drive one or more power switches in half-bridge configuration, as shown in Figure 13-16. This inverter topology is typical for a 3-phase induction motor, brushless DC motor or 3-phase Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) control applications.

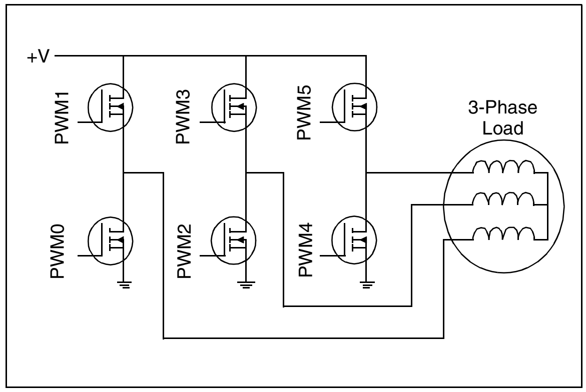
Each upper/lower power switch pair is fed by a complementary PWM signal. Dead time may be optionally inserted during device switching, where both outputs are inactive for a short period (see **Section 13.7 "Dead-Time Generators"**).

In Complementary mode, the duty cycle comparison units are assigned to the PWM outputs as follows:

- PDC0 register controls PWM1/PWM0 outputs
- PDC1 register controls PWM3/PWM2 outputs
- PDC2 register controls PWM5/PWM4 outputs

PWM1/3/5 are the main PWMs that are controlled by the PDCx registers and PWM0/2/4 are the complemented outputs. When using the PWMs to control the half-bridge, the odd number PWMs can be used to control the upper power switch and the even numbered PWMs can be used for the lower switches.

FIGURE 13-16: TYPICAL LOAD FOR COMPLEMENTARY PWM OUTPUTS



The Complementary mode is selected for each PWM I/O pin pair by clearing the appropriate PMODx bit in the PWMCON0 register. The PWM I/O pins are set to Complementary mode by default upon all kinds of device Resets.

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

13.7 Dead-Time Generators

In power inverter applications, where the PWMs are used in Complementary mode to control the upper and lower switches of a half-bridge, a dead-time insertion is highly recommended. The dead-time insertion keeps both outputs in inactive state for a brief time. This avoids any overlap in the switching during the state change of the power devices due to TON and TOFF characteristics.

Because the power output devices cannot switch instantaneously, some amount of time must be provided between the turn-off event of one PWM output in a complementary pair and the turn-on event of the other transistor. The PWM module allows dead time to be programmed. The following sections explain the dead-time block in detail.

13.7.1 DEAD-TIME INSERTION

Each complementary output pair for the PWM module has a 6-bit down counter used to produce the dead-time insertion. As shown in Figure 13-17, each dead-time unit has a rising and falling edge detector connected to the duty cycle comparison output. The dead time is loaded into the timer on the detected PWM edge event. Depending on whether the edge is rising or falling, one of the transitions on the complementary outputs is delayed until the timer counts down to zero. A timing diagram, indicating the dead-time insertion for one pair of PWM outputs, is shown in Figure 13-18.

FIGURE 13-17: DEAD-TIME CONTROL UNIT BLOCK DIAGRAM FOR ONE PWM OUTPUT PAIR

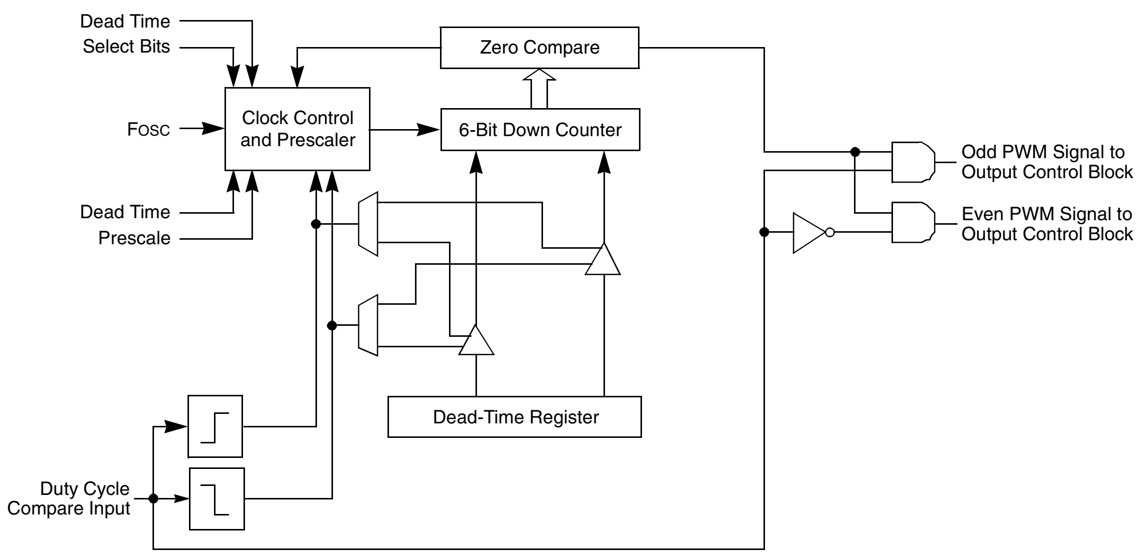
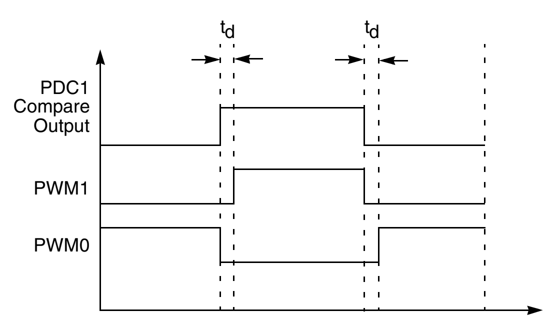


FIGURE 13-18: DEAD-TIME INSERTION FOR COMPLEMENTARY PWM



REGISTER 13-5: DTCON: DEAD-TIME CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
DTPS1	DTPS0	DT5	DT4	DT3	DT2	DT1	DT0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6 **DTPS1:DTPS0:** Dead-Time Unit A Prescale Select bits
`11` = Clock source for dead-time unit is FOSC/16
`10` = Clock source for dead-time unit is FOSC/8
`01` = Clock source for dead-time unit is FOSC/4
`00` = Clock source for dead-time unit is FOSC/2

bit 5-0 **DT5:DT0:** Unsigned 6-Bit Dead-Time Value for Dead-Time Unit bits

13.7.2 DEAD-TIME RANGES

The amount of dead time provided by the dead-time unit is selected by specifying the input clock prescaler value and a 6-bit unsigned value defined in the DTCON register. Four input clock prescaler selections have been provided to allow a suitable range of dead times based on the device operating frequency. FOSC/2, FOSC/4, FOSC/8 and FOSC/16 are the clock prescaler options available using the DTPS1:DTPS0 control bits in the DTCON register.

After selecting an appropriate prescaler value, the dead time is adjusted by loading a 6-bit unsigned value into DTCON<5:0>. The dead-time unit prescaler is cleared on any of the following events:

- On a load of the down timer due to a duty cycle comparison edge event;
- On a write to the DTCON register; or
- On any device Reset.

13.7.3 DECREMENTING THE DEAD-TIME COUNTER

The dead-time counter is clocked from any of the Q clocks based on the following conditions.

1. The dead-time counter is clocked on Q1 when:
   - The DTPS bits are set to any of the following dead-time prescaler settings: FOSC/4, FOSC/8, FOSC/16
   - The PWM Time Base Prescale bits (PTCKPS<1:0>) are set to any of the following prescale ratios: FOSC/16, FOSC/64, FOSC/256
2. The dead-time counter is clocked by a pair of Q clocks when the PWM Time Base Prescale bits are set to 1:1 (PTCKPS<1:0> = `00`, FOSC/4) and the dead-time counter is clocked by the FOSC/2 (DTPS<1:0> = `00`).
3. The dead-time counter is clocked using every other Q clock, depending on the two LSbs in the Duty Cycle registers:
   - If the PWM duty cycle match occurs on Q1 or Q3, then the dead-time counter is clocked using every Q1 and Q3
   - If the PWM duty cycles match occurs on Q2 or Q4, then the dead-time counter is clocked using every Q2 and Q4
4. When the DTPS<1:0> bits are set to any of the other dead-time prescaler settings (i.e., FOSC/4, FOSC/8 or FOSC/16) and the PWM time base prescaler is set to 1:1, the dead-time counter is clocked by the Q clock corresponding to the Q clocks on which the PWM duty cycle match occurs.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

The actual dead time is calculated from the DTCON register as follows:

Dead Time = Dead-Time Value/(FOSC/Prescaler)

Table 13-3 shows example dead-time ranges as a function of the input clock prescaler selected and the device operating frequency.

TABLE 13-3: EXAMPLE DEAD-TIME RANGES

Fosc (MHz)	MIPS	Prescaler Selection	Dead-Time Min	Dead-Time Max
40	10	FOSC/2	50 ns	3.2 µs
40	10	FOSC/4	100 ns	6.4 µs
40	10	FOSC/8	200 ns	12.8 µs
40	10	FOSC/16	400 ns	25.6 µs
32	8	FOSC/2	62.5 ns	4 µs
32	8	FOSC/4	125 ns	8 µs
32	8	FOSC/8	250 ns	16 µs
32	8	FOSC/16	500 ns	32 µs
25	6.25	FOSC/2	80 ns	5.12 µs
25	6.25	FOSC/4	160 ns	10.2 µs
25	6.25	FOSC/8	320 ns	20.5 µs
25	6.25	FOSC/16	640 ns	41 µs
20	5	FOSC/2	100 ns	6.4 µs
20	5	FOSC/4	200 ns	12.8 µs
20	5	FOSC/8	400 ns	25.6 µs
20	5	FOSC/16	800 ns	51.2 µs
10	2.5	FOSC/2	200 ns	12.8 µs
10	2.5	FOSC/4	400 ns	25.6 µs
10	2.5	FOSC/8	800 ns	51.2 µs
10	2.5	FOSC/16	1.6 µs	102.4 µs
5	1.25	FOSC/2	400 ns	25.6 µs
5	1.25	FOSC/4	800 ns	51.2 µs
5	1.25	FOSC/8	1.6 µs	102.4 µs
5	1.25	FOSC/16	3.2 µs	204.8 µs
4	1	FOSC/2	0.5 µs	32 µs
4	1	FOSC/4	1 µs	64 µs
4	1	FOSC/8	2 µs	128 µs
4	1	FOSC/16	4 µs	256 µs

13.7.4 DEAD-TIME DISTORTION

Note 1: For small PWM duty cycles, the ratio of dead time to the active PWM time may become large. In this case, the inserted dead time will introduce distortion into waveforms produced by the PWM module. The user can ensure that dead-time distortion is minimized by keeping the PWM duty cycle at least three times larger than the dead time. A similar effect occurs for duty cycles at or near 100%. The maximum duty cycle used in the application should be chosen such that the minimum inactive time of the signal is at least three times larger than the dead time. If the dead time is greater or equal to the duty cycle of one of the PWM output pairs, then that PWM pair will be inactive for the whole period.

2: Changing the dead-time values in DTCON when the PWM is enabled may result in an undesirable situation. Disable the PWM (PTEN = 0) before changing the dead-time value.

13.8 Independent PWM Output

Independent PWM mode is used for driving the loads (as shown in Figure 13-19) that drive one winding of a switched reluctance motor. A particular PWM output pair is configured in the Independent Output mode when the corresponding PMODx bit in the PWMCON0 register is set. No dead-time control is implemented between the PWM I/O pins when the module is operating in the Independent PWM mode and both I/O pins are allowed to be active simultaneously. This mode can also be used to drive stepper motors.

13.8.1 DUTY CYCLE ASSIGNMENT IN THE INDEPENDENT PWM MODE

In the Independent PWM mode, each duty cycle generator is connected to both PWM output pins in a given PWM output pair. The odd and the even PWM output pins are driven with a single PWM duty cycle generator. PWM1 and PWM0 are driven by the PWM channel which uses the PDC0 register to set the duty cycle, PWM3 and PWM2 with PDC1, and PWM5 and PWM4 with PDC2 (see Figure 13-3 and Register 13-3).

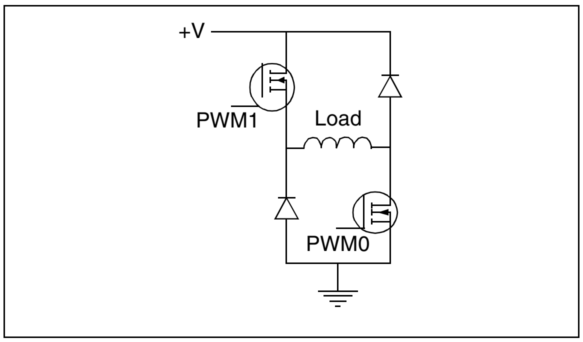
13.8.2 PWM CHANNEL OVERRIDE

PWM output may be manually overridden for each PWM channel by using the appropriate bits in the OVDCOND and OVDCONS registers. The user may select the following signal output options for each PWM output pin operating in the Independent PWM mode:

- I/O pin outputs PWM signal
- I/O pin inactive
- I/O pin active

Refer to **Section 13.10 "PWM Output Override"** for details for all the override functions.

FIGURE 13-19: CENTER CONNECTED LOAD



13.9 Single-Pulse PWM Operation

The single-pulse PWM operation is available only in Edge-Aligned mode. In this mode, the PWM module will produce single-pulse output. Single-pulse operation is configured when the PTMOD1:PTMOD0 bits are set to '`01`' in the PTCON0 register. This mode of operation is useful for driving certain types of ECMs.

In Single-Pulse mode, the PWM I/O pin(s) are driven to the active state when the PTEN bit is set. When the PWM timer match with Duty Cycle register occurs, the PWM I/O pin is driven to the inactive state. When the PWM timer match with the PTPER register occurs, the PTMR register is cleared, all active PWM I/O pins are driven to the inactive state, the PTEN bit is cleared and an interrupt is generated if the corresponding interrupt bit is set.

Note:	PTPER and PDCx values are held as they are after the single-pulse output. To have another cycle of single pulse, only PTEN has to be enabled.

13.10 PWM Output Override

The PWM output override bits allow the user to manually drive the PWM I/O pins to specified logic states, independent of the duty cycle comparison units. The PWM override bits are useful when controlling various types of ECMs, like a BLDC motor.

OVDCOND and OVDCONS registers are used to define the PWM override options. The OVDCOND register contains six bits, POVD5:POVD0, that determine which PWM I/O pins will be overridden. The OVDCONS register contains six bits, POUT5:POUT0, that determine the state of the PWM I/O pins when a particular output is overridden via the POVD bits.

The POVD bits are active-low control bits. When the POVD bits are set, the corresponding POUT bit will have no effect on the PWM output. In other words, the pins corresponding to POVD bits that are set will have the duty PWM cycle set by the PDCx registers. When one of the POVD bits is cleared, the output on the corresponding PWM I/O pin will be determined by the state of the POUT bit. When a POUT bit is set, the PWM pin will be driven to its active state. When the POUT bit is cleared, the PWM pin will be driven to its inactive state.

13.10.1 COMPLEMENTARY OUTPUT MODE

The even numbered PWM I/O pins have override restrictions when a pair of PWM I/O pins are operating in the Complementary mode (PMODx = `0`). In Complementary mode, if the even numbered pin is driven active by clearing the corresponding POVD bit and by setting the POUT bits in the OVDCOND and OVDCONS registers, the output signal is forced to be the complement of the odd numbered I/O pin in the pair (see Figure 13-2 for details).

13.10.2 OVERRIDE SYNCHRONIZATION

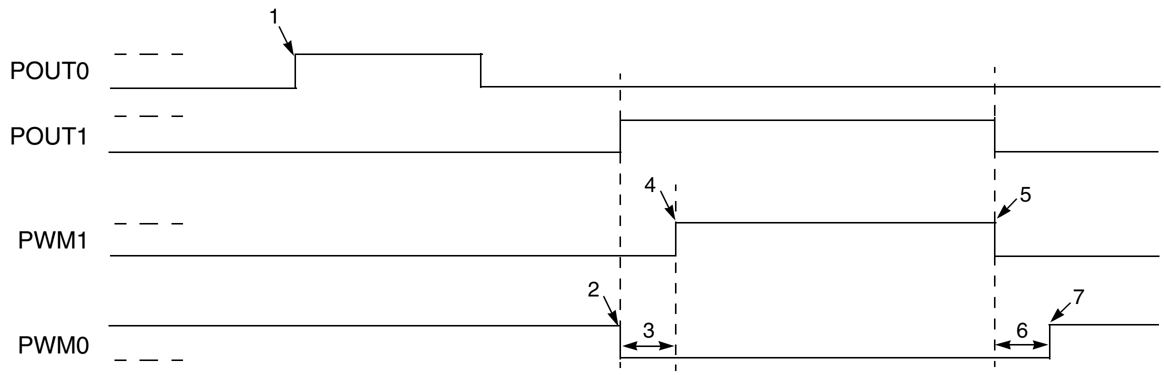
If the OSYNC bit in the PWMCON1 register is set, all output overrides performed via the OVDCOND and OVDCONS registers will be synchronized to the PWM time base. Synchronous output overrides will occur on the following conditions:

- When the PWM is in Edge-Aligned mode, synchronization occurs when PTMR is zero.
- When the PWM is in Center-Aligned mode, synchronization occurs when PTMR is zero and when the value of PTMR matches PTPER.

Note 1:	In the Complementary mode, the even channel cannot be forced active by a Fault or override event when the odd channel is active. The even channel is always the complement of the odd channel, with dead-time inserted, before the odd channel can be driven to its active state as shown in Figure 13-20.
2:	Dead time inserted in the PWM channels even when they are in Override mode.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 13-20: OVERRIDE BITS IN COMPLEMENTARY MODE



Assume: POVD0 = 0; POVD1 = 0; PMOD0 = 0

1. Even override bits have no effect in Complementary mode.
2. Odd override bit is activated which causes the even PWM to deactivate.
3. Dead-time insertion.
4. Odd PWM activated after the dead time.
5. Odd override bit is deactivated which causes the odd PWM to deactivate.
6. Dead-time insertion.
7. Even PWM is activated after the dead time.

13.10.3 OUTPUT OVERRIDE EXAMPLES

Figure 13-21 shows an example of a waveform that might be generated using the PWM output override feature. The figure shows a six-step commutation sequence for a BLDC motor. The motor is driven through a 3-phase inverter as shown in Figure 13-16. When the appropriate rotor position is detected, the PWM outputs are switched to the next commutation state in the sequence. In this example, the PWM outputs are driven to specific logic states. The OVDCOND and OVDCONS register values used to generate the signals in Figure 13-21 are given in Table 13-4.

The PWM Duty Cycle registers may be used in conjunction with the OVDCOND and OVDCONS registers. The Duty Cycle registers control the average voltage across the load and the OVDCOND and OVDCONS registers control the commutation sequence. Figure 13-22 shows the waveforms, while Table 13-4 and Table 13-5 show the OVDCOND and OVDCONS register values used to generate the signals.

REGISTER 13-6: OVDCOND: OUTPUT OVERRIDE CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
—	—	POVD5	POVD4	POVD3	POVD2	POVD1	POVD0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 5-0 **POVD5:POVD0:** PWM Output Override bits
1 = Output on PWM I/O pin is controlled by the value in the Duty Cycle register and the PWM time base
0 = Output on PWM I/O pin is controlled by the value in the corresponding POUTx bit

REGISTER 13-7: OVDCONS: OUTPUT STATE REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	POUT5	POUT4	POUT3	POUT2	POUT1	POUT0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 5-0 **POUT5:POUT0:** PWM Manual Output bits
1 = Output on PWM I/O pin is active when the corresponding PWM output override bit is cleared
0 = Output on PWM I/O pin is inactive when the corresponding PWM output override bit is cleared

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 13-21: PWM OUTPUT OVERRIDE EXAMPLE #1

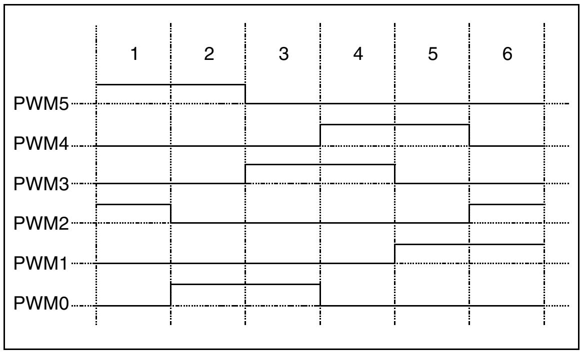


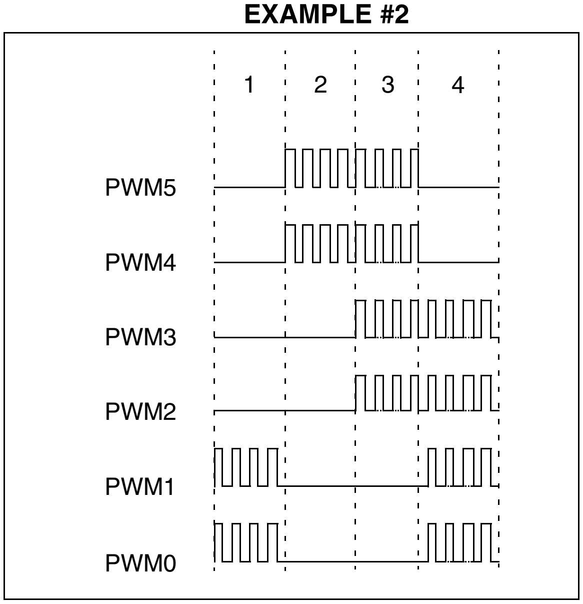
TABLE 13-4: PWM OUTPUT OVERRIDE EXAMPLE #1

State	OVDCOND (POVD)	OVDCONS (POUT)
1	00000000b	00100100b
2	00000000b	00100001b
3	00000000b	00001001b
4	00000000b	00011000b
5	00000000b	00010010b
6	00000000b	00000110b

TABLE 13-5: PWM OUTPUT OVERRIDE EXAMPLE #2

State	OVDCOND (POVD)	OVDCONS (POUT)
1	00000011b	00000000b
2	00110000b	00000000b
3	00111100b	00000000b
4	00001111b	00000000b

FIGURE 13-22: PWM OUTPUT OVERRIDE EXAMPLE #2



13.11 PWM Output and Polarity Control

There are three device Configuration bits associated with the PWM module that provide PWM output pin control defined in the CONFIG3L register. They are:

- HPOL
- LPOL
- PWMPIN

These three Configuration bits work in conjunction with the three PWM Enable bits (PWMEN2:PWMEN0) in the PWMCON0 register. The Configuration bits and PWM enable bits ensure that the PWM pins are in the correct states after a device Reset occurs.

13.11.1 OUTPUT PIN CONTROL

The PWMEN2:PWMEN0 control bits enable each PWM output pin as required in the application.

All PWM I/O pins are general purpose I/O. When a pair of pins is enabled for PWM output, the PORT and TRIS registers controlling the pins are disabled. Refer to Figure 13-23 for details.

13.11.2 OUTPUT POLARITY CONTROL

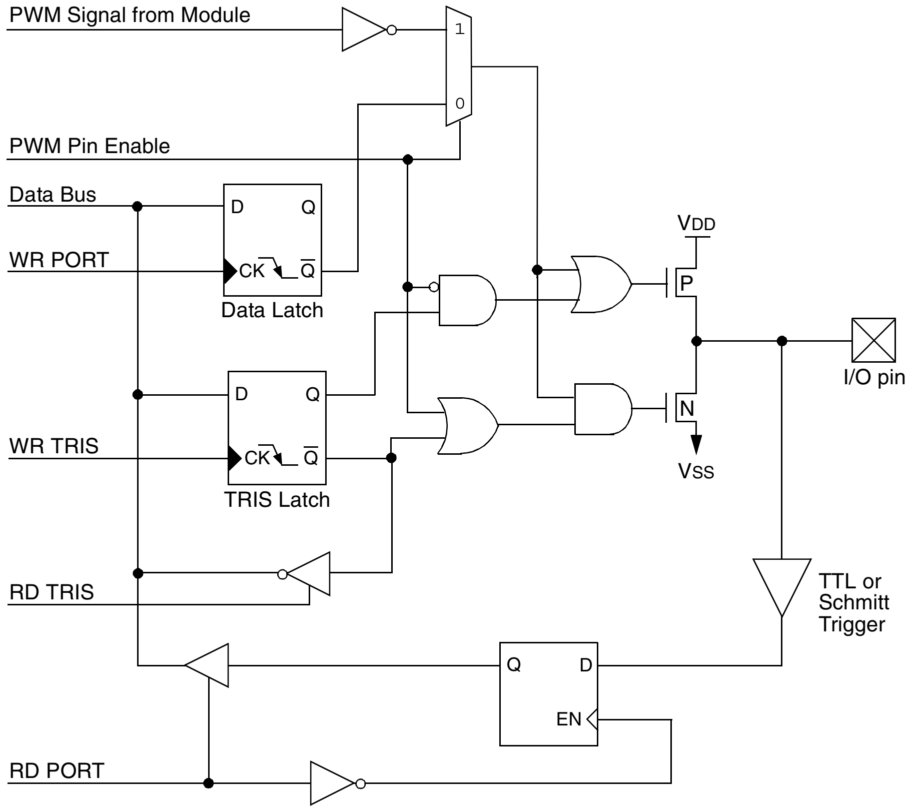
The polarity of the PWM I/O pins is set during device programming via the HPOL and LPOL Configuration bits in the CONFIG3L register. The HPOL Configuration bit sets the output polarity for the high side PWM outputs: PWM1, PWM3 and PWM5. The polarity is active-high when HPOL is cleared (= `0`) and active-low when it is set (= `1`).

The LPOL Configuration bit sets the output polarity for the low side PWM outputs: PWM0, PWM2 and PWM4. As with HPOL, they are active-high when LPOL is cleared and active-low when set.

All output signals generated by the PWM module are referenced to the polarity control bits, including those generated by Fault inputs or manual override (see **Section 13.10 "PWM Output Override"**).

The default polarity Configuration bits have the PWM I/O pins in active-high output polarity.

FIGURE 13-23: PWM I/O PIN BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: I/O pin has protection diodes to VDD and VSS. PWM polarity selection logic not shown for clarity.

13.11.3 PWM OUTPUT PIN RESET STATES

The PWMPIN Configuration bit determines the PWM output pins to be PWM output pins, or digital I/O pins, after the device comes out of Reset. If the PWMPIN Configuration bit is unprogrammed (default), the PWMEN2:PWMEN0 control bits will be cleared on a device Reset. Consequently, all PWM outputs will be tri-stated and controlled by the corresponding PORT and TRIS registers. If the PWMPIN Configuration bit is programmed low, the PWMEN2:PWMEN0 control bits will be set to '100' on a device Reset:

All PWM pins will be enabled for PWM output and will have the output polarity defined by the HPOL and LPOL Configuration bits.

13.12 PWM Fault Input

There is one Fault input associated with the PWM module. The main purpose of the input Fault pin is to disable the PWM output signals and drive them into an inactive state. The action of the Fault input is performed directly in hardware so that when a Fault occurs, it can be managed quickly and the PWMs outputs are put into an inactive state to save the power devices connected to the PWMs.

The PWM Fault input is $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$, which can come from I/O pins, the CPU or another module. The $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ pin is an active-low input so it is easy to "OR" many sources to the same input.

The FLTCONFIG register (Register 13-8) defines the settings of the $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ input.

> **Note:** The inactive state of the PWM pins is dependent on the HPOL and LPOL Configuration bit settings, which define the active and inactive state for PWM outputs.

13.12.1 FAULT PIN ENABLE BIT

By setting the bit FLTAEN in the FLTCONFIG register, the corresponding Fault input is enabled. If FLTAEN bit is cleared, then the Fault input has no effect on the PWM module.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

13.12.2 FAULT INPUT MODE

The FLTAMOD bit in the FLTCONFIG register determines whether the PWM I/O pins are deactivated when they are overridden by a Fault input.

FLTAS bit in the FLTCONFIG register gives the status of the Fault A input.

The Fault input has two modes of operation:

- **Inactive Mode (FLTAMOD = 0)**

  This is a catastrophic Fault Management mode. When the Fault occurs in this mode, the PWM outputs are deactivated. The PWM pins will remain in Inactivated mode until the Fault is cleared (Fault input is driven high) and the corresponding Fault status bit has been cleared in software. The PWM outputs are enabled immediately at the beginning of the following PWM period, after Fault status bit (FLTAS) is cleared.

- **Cycle-by-Cycle Mode (FLTAMOD = 1)**

  When the Fault occurs in this mode, the PWM outputs are deactivated. The PWM outputs will remain in the defined Fault states (all PWM outputs inactive) for as long as the Fault pin is held low. After the Fault pin is driven high, the PWM outputs will return to normal operation at the beginning of the following PWM period and the FLTAS bit is automatically cleared.

13.12.3 PWM OUTPUTS WHILE IN FAULT CONDITION

While in the Fault state (i.e., $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ input is active), the PWM output signals are driven into their inactive states.

13.12.4 PWM OUTPUTS IN DEBUG MODE

The BRFEN bit in the FLTCONFIG register controls the simulation of Fault condition when a breakpoint is hit, while debugging the application using an In-Circuit Debugger (ICD). Setting the BRFEN bit to high enables the Fault condition on breakpoint, thus driving the PWM outputs to inactive state. This is done to avoid any continuous keeping of status on the PWM pin, which may result in damage of the power devices connected to the PWM outputs.

If BRFEN = 0, the Fault condition on breakpoint is disabled.

Note:	It is highly recommended to enable the Fault condition on breakpoint if a debugging tool is used while developing the firmware and the high-power circuitry is used. When the device is ready to program after debugging the firmware, the BRFEN bit can be disabled.

REGISTER 13-8: FLTCONFIG: FAULT CONFIGURATION REGISTER

R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
BRFEN	—	—	—	—	FLTAS	FLTAMOD	FLTAEN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **BRFEN:** Breakpoint Fault Enable bit
1 = Enable Fault condition on a breakpoint
0 = Disable Fault condition

bit 6-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 2 **FLTAS:** Fault A Status bit
1 = $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ is asserted;
if FLTAMOD = 0, cleared by the user;
if FLTAMOD = 1, cleared automatically at beginning of the new period when $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ is deasserted
0 = No Fault

bit 1 **FLTAMOD:** Fault A Mode bit
1 = Cycle-by-Cycle mode: Pins are inactive for the remainder of the current PWM period or until $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ is deasserted; FLTAS is cleared automatically
0 = Inactive mode: Pins are deactivated (catastrophic failure) until $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ is deasserted and FLTAS is cleared by the user only

bit 0 **FLTAEN:** Fault A Enable bit
1 = Enable Fault A
0 = Disable Fault A

13.13 PWM Update Lockout

For a complex PWM application, the user may need to write up to four Duty Cycle registers and the PWM Time Base Period Register, PTPER, at a given time. In some applications, it is important that all buffer registers be written before the new duty cycle and period values are loaded for use by the module.

A PWM update lockout feature may optionally be enabled so the user may specify when new duty cycle buffer values are valid. The PWM update lockout feature is enabled by setting the control bit, UDIS, in the PWMCON1 register. This bit affects all Duty Cycle Buffer registers and the PWM Time Base Period register, PTPER.

To perform a PWM update lockout:

1. Set the UDIS bit.
2. Write all Duty Cycle registers and PTPER, if applicable.
3. Clear the UDIS bit to re-enable updates.
4. With this, when UDIS bit is cleared, the buffer values will be loaded to the actual registers. This makes a synchronous loading of the registers.

13.14 PWM Special Event Trigger

The PWM module has a Special Event Trigger capability that allows A/D conversions to be synchronized to the PWM time base. The A/D sampling and conversion time may be programmed to occur at any point within the PWM period. The Special Event Trigger allows the user to minimize the delay between the time when A/D conversion results are acquired and the time when the duty cycle value is updated.

The PWM 16-bit Special Event Trigger register, SEVTCMP (high and low), and five control bits in the PWMCON1 register are used to control its operation.

The PTMR value for which a Special Event Trigger should occur is loaded into the SEVTCMP register pair. SEVTDIR bit in PWMCON1 register specifies the counting phase when the PWM time base is in a Continuous Up/Down Count mode.

If the SEVTDIR bit is cleared, the Special Event Trigger will occur on the upward counting cycle of the PWM time base. If SEVTDIR is set, the Special Event Trigger will occur on the downward count cycle of the PWM time base. The SEVTDIR bit only effects this operation when the PWM timer is in the Continuous Up/Down Count mode.

Note:	The Special Event Trigger will take place only for non-zero values in the SEVTCMP registers.

13.14.1 SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER ENABLE

The PWM module will always produce Special Event Trigger pulses. This signal may optionally be used by the A/D module. Refer to **Chapter 15.0 "10-Bit Analog-to-Digital Converter (A/D) Module"** for details.

13.14.2 SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER POSTSCALER

The PWM Special Event Trigger has a postscaler that allows a 1:1 to 1:16 postscale ratio. The postscaler is configured by writing the SEVOPS3:SEVOPS0 control bits in the PWMCON1 register.

The Special Event Trigger output postscaler is cleared on any write to the SEVTCMP register pair, or on any device Reset.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 13-6: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH THE POWER CONTROL PWM MODULE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
IPR3	—	—	—	PTIP	—	—	—	—	43
PIE3	—	—	—	PTIE	—	—	—	—	43
PIR3	—	—	—	PTIF	—	—	—	—	43
PTCON0	PTOPS3	PTOPS2	PTOPS1	PTOPS0	PTCKPS1	PTCKPS0	PTMOD1	PTMOD0	43
PTCON1	PTEN	PTDIR	—	—	—	—	—	—	43
PTMRL(1)	PWM Time Base Register (lower 8 bits)								43
PTMRH(1)	—	—	—	—	PWM Time Base Register (upper 4 bits)				43
PTPERL(1)	PWM Time Base Period Register (lower 8 bits)								43
PTPERH(1)	—	—	—	—	PWM Time Base Period Register (upper 4 bits)				43
SEVTCMPL(1)	PWM Special Event Compare Register (lower 8 bits)								43
SEVTCMPH(1)	—	—	—	—	PWM Special Event Compare Register (upper 4 bits)				44
PWMCON0	—	PWMEN2(2)	PWMEN1(2)	PWMEN0(2)	—	PMOD2	PMOD1	PMOD0	44
PWMCON1	SEVOPS3	SEVOPS2	SEVOPS1	SEVOPS0	SEVTDIR	—	UDIS	OSYNC	44
DTCON	DTPS1	DTPS0	DT5	DT4	DT3	DT2	DT1	DT0	44
FLTCONFIG	BRFEN	—	—	—	—	FLTAS	FLTAMOD	FLTAEN	43
OVDCOND	—	—	POVD5	POVD4	POVD3	POVD2	POVD1	POVD0	44
OVDCONS	—	—	POUT5	POUT4	POUT3	POUT2	POUT1	POUT0	44
PDC0L(1)	PWM Duty Cycle #0L Register (lower 8 bits)								43
PDC0H(1)	—	—	PWM Duty Cycle #0H Register (upper 6 bits)						43
PDC1L(1)	PWM Duty Cycle #1L Register (lower 8 bits)								43
PDC1H(1)	—	—	PWM Duty Cycle #1H Register (upper 6 bits)						43
PDC2L(1)	PWM Duty Cycle #2L Register (lower 8 bits)								43
PDC2H(1)	—	—	PWM Duty Cycle #2H Register (upper 6 bits)						43

Legend: - = Unimplemented, u = Unchanged. Shaded cells are not used with the power control PWM.

Note 1: Double-buffered register pairs. Refer to text for explanation of how these registers are read and written to.

2: Reset condition of PWMEN bits depends on the PWMPIN Configuration bit.

NOTES:

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.0 ENHANCED UNIVERSAL SYNCHRONOUS ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER TRANSMITTER (EUSART)

The Enhanced Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (EUSART) module is one of the two serial I/O modules. (Generically, the USART is also known as a Serial Communications Interface or SCI.) The EUSART can be configured as a full-duplex asynchronous system that can communicate with peripheral devices, such as CRT terminals and personal computers. It can also be configured as a half-duplex synchronous system that can communicate with peripheral devices, such as A/D or D/A integrated circuits, serial EEPROMs, etc.

The Enhanced USART module implements additional features, including automatic baud rate detection and calibration, automatic wake-up on Sync Break reception and 12-bit Break character transmit. These features make it ideally suited for use in Local Interconnect Network bus (LIN bus) systems.

The EUSART can be configured in the following modes:

- Asynchronous (full-duplex) with:
  - Auto-Wake-up on Character Reception
  - Auto-Baud Calibration
  - 12-Bit Break Character Transmission
- Synchronous – Master (half-duplex) with Selectable Clock Polarity
- Synchronous – Slave (half-duplex) with Selectable Clock Polarity

The pins of the Enhanced USART are multiplexed with PORTA. In order to configure RA2/TX/CK and RA3/RX/DT as an EUSART:

- bit SPEN (RCSTA<7>) must be set (= `1`)
- bit TRISA<3> must be set (= `1`)
- bit TRISA<2> must be set (= `1`)

Note:	The EUSART control will automatically reconfigure the pin from input to output as needed.

The operation of the Enhanced USART module is controlled through three registers:

- Transmit Status and Control (TXSTA)
- Receive Status and Control (RCSTA)
- Baud Rate Control (BAUDCON)

These are detailed on the following pages in Register 14-1, Register 14-2 and Register 14-3, respectively.

REGISTER 14-1: TXSTA: TRANSMIT STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-1	R/W-0
CSRC	TX9	TXEN(1)	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **CSRC:** Clock Source Select bit

Asynchronous mode:
Don't care.

Synchronous mode:
1 = Master mode (clock generated internally from BRG)
0 = Slave mode (clock from external source)

bit 6 **TX9:** 9-Bit Transmit Enable bit

1 = Selects 9-bit transmission
0 = Selects 8-bit transmission

bit 5 **TXEN:** Transmit Enable bit(1)

1 = Transmit enabled
0 = Transmit disabled

bit 4 **SYNC:** EUSART Mode Select bit

1 = Synchronous mode
0 = Asynchronous mode

bit 3 **SENDB:** Send Break Character bit

Asynchronous mode:
1 = Send Sync Break on next transmission (cleared by hardware upon completion)
0 = Sync Break transmission completed

Synchronous mode:
Don't care.

bit 2 **BRGH:** High Baud Rate Select bit

Asynchronous mode:
1 = High speed
0 = Low speed

Synchronous mode:
Unused in this mode.

bit 1 **TRMT:** Transmit Shift Register Status bit

1 = TSR empty
0 = TSR full

bit 0 **TX9D:** 9th bit of Transmit Data

Can be address/data bit or a parity bit.

Note 1: SREN/CREN overrides TXEN in Sync mode.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 14-2: RCSTA: RECEIVE STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-x
SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **SPEN:** Serial Port Enable bit
1 = Serial port enabled (configures RX/DT and TX/CK pins as serial port pins)
0 = Serial port disabled (held in Reset)

bit 6 **RX9:** 9-Bit Receive Enable bit
1 = Selects 9-bit reception
0 = Selects 8-bit reception

bit 5 **SREN:** Single Receive Enable bit
Asynchronous mode:
Don’t care.
Synchronous mode – Master:
1 = Enables single receive
0 = Disables single receive
This bit is cleared after reception is complete.
Synchronous mode – Slave:
Don’t care.

bit 4 **CREN:** Continuous Receive Enable bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = Enables receiver
0 = Disables receiver
Synchronous mode:
1 = Enables continuous receive until enable bit CREN is cleared (CREN overrides SREN)
0 = Disables continuous receive

bit 3 **ADDEN:** Address Detect Enable bit
Asynchronous mode 9-bit (RX9 = 1):
1 = Enables address detection, enables interrupt and loads the receive buffer when RSR<8> is set
0 = Disables address detection, all bytes are received and ninth bit can be used as parity bit
Asynchronous mode 9-bit (RX9 = 0):
Don’t care.

bit 2 **FERR:** Framing Error bit
1 = Framing error (can be updated by reading RCREG register and receiving next valid byte)
0 = No framing error

bit 1 **OERR:** Overrun Error bit
1 = Overrun error (can be cleared by clearing bit CREN)
0 = No overrun error

bit 0 **RX9D:** 9th bit of Received Data
This can be address/data bit or a parity bit and must be calculated by user firmware.

REGISTER 14-3: BAUDCON: BAUD RATE CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R-1	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **ABDOVF**: Auto-Baud Acquisition Rollover Status bit
1 = A BRG rollover has occurred during Auto-Baud Rate Detect mode (must be cleared in software)
0 = No BRG rollover has occurred

bit 6 **RCIDL**: Receive Operation Idle Status bit
1 = Receive operation is Idle
0 = Receive operation is active

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **SCKP**: Synchronous Clock Polarity Select bit
Asynchronous mode:
Unused in this mode.
Synchronous mode:
1 = Idle state for clock (CK) is a high level
0 = Idle state for clock (CK) is a low level

bit 3 **BRG16:** 16-Bit Baud Rate Register Enable bit
1 = 16-bit Baud Rate Generator – SPBRGH and SPBRG
0 = 8-bit Baud Rate Generator – SPBRG only (Compatible mode), SPBRGH value ignored

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1 **WUE:** Wake-up Enable bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = EUSART will continue to sample the RX pin – interrupt generated on falling edge; bit cleared in hardware on following rising edge
0 = RX pin not monitored or rising edge detected
Synchronous mode:
Unused in this mode.

bit 0 **ABDEN**: Auto-Baud Detect Enable bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = Enable baud rate measurement on the next character. Requires reception of a Sync field (55h); cleared in hardware upon completion
0 = Baud rate measurement disabled or completed
Synchronous mode:
Unused in this mode.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.1 Baud Rate Generator (BRG)

The BRG is a dedicated 8-bit or 16-bit generator that supports both the Asynchronous and Synchronous modes of the EUSART. By default, the BRG operates in 8-bit mode; setting the BRG16 bit (BAUDCON<3>) selects 16-bit mode.

The SPBRGH:SPBRG register pair controls the period of a free-running timer. In Asynchronous mode, bits BRGH (TXSTA<2>) and BRG16 (BAUDCON<3>) also control the baud rate. In Synchronous mode, BRGH is ignored. Table 14-1 shows the formula for computation of the baud rate for different EUSART modes which only apply in Master mode (internally generated clock).

Given the desired baud rate and FOSC, the nearest integer value for the SPBRGH:SPBRG registers can be calculated using the formulas in Table 14-1. From this, the error in baud rate can be determined. An example calculation is shown in Example 14-1. Typical baud rates and error values for the various Asynchronous modes are shown in Table 14-2. It may be advantageous to use the high baud rate (BRGH = 1), or the 16-bit BRG to reduce the baud rate error, or achieve a slow baud rate for a fast oscillator frequency.

Writing a new value to the SPBRGH:SPBRG registers causes the BRG timer to be reset (or cleared). This ensures the BRG does not wait for a timer overflow before outputting the new baud rate.

14.1.1 OPERATION IN POWER-MANAGED MODES

The device clock is used to generate the desired baud rate. When one of the power-managed modes is entered, the new clock source may be operating at a different frequency. This may require an adjustment to the value in the SPBRG register pair.

14.1.2 SAMPLING

The data on the RX pin is sampled three times by a majority detect circuit to determine if a high or a low level is present at the RX pin.

TABLE 14-1: BAUD RATE FORMULAS

Configuration Bits			BRG/EUSART Mode	Baud Rate Formula
SYNC	BRG16	BRGH		
0	0	0	8-bit/Asynchronous	$F_{OSC}/[64 (n + 1)]$
0	0	1	8-bit/Asynchronous	$F_{OSC}/[16 (n + 1)]$
0	1	0	16-bit/Asynchronous	
0	1	1	16-bit/Asynchronous	$F_{OSC}/[4 (n + 1)]$
1	0	x	8-bit/Synchronous	
1	1	x	16-bit/Synchronous	

Legend: x = Don't care, n = value of SPBRGH:SPBRG register pair

EXAMPLE 14-1: CALCULATING BAUD RATE ERROR

For a device with FOSC of 16 MHz, desired baud rate of 9600, Asynchronous mode, 8-bit BRG:

Desired Baud Rate = FOSC/(64 ([SPBRGH:SPBRG] + 1))

Solving for SPBRGH:SPBRG:

X = ((FOSC/Desired Baud Rate)/64) – 1
= ((16000000/9600)/64) – 1
= [25.042] = 25

Calculated Baud Rate = 16000000/(64 (25 + 1))
= 9615

Error = (Calculated Baud Rate – Desired Baud Rate)/Desired Baud Rate
= (9615 – 9600)/9600 = 0.16%

TABLE 14-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH BAUD RATE GENERATOR

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	42
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	42
BAUDCON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	42
SPBRGH	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register High Byte								42
SPBRG	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register Low Byte								42

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the BRG.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 14-3: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODES

BAUD RATE (K)	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0, BRG16 = 0											
	Fosc = 40.000 MHz			Fosc = 20.000 MHz			Fosc = 10.000 MHz			Fosc = 8.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
1.2	—	—	—	1.221	1.73	255	1.202	0.16	129	1201	-0.16	103
2.4	2.441	1.73	255	2.404	0.16	129	2.404	0.16	64	2403	-0.16	51
9.6	9.615	0.16	64	9.766	1.73	31	9.766	1.73	15	9615	-0.16	12
19.2	19.531	1.73	31	19.531	1.73	15	19.531	1.73	7	—	—	—
57.6	56.818	-1.36	10	62.500	8.51	4	52.083	-9.58	2	—	—	—
115.2	125.000	8.51	4	104.167	-9.58	2	78.125	-32.18	1	—	—	—

BAUD RATE (K)	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0, BRG16 = 0								
	Fosc = 4.000 MHz			Fosc = 2.000 MHz			Fosc = 1.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	0.300	0.16	207	300	-0.16	103	300	-0.16	51
1.2	1.202	0.16	51	1201	-0.16	25	1201	-0.16	12
2.4	2.404	0.16	25	2403	-0.16	12	—	—	—
9.6	8.929	-6.99	6	—	—	—	—	—	—
19.2	20.833	8.51	2	—	—	—	—	—	—
57.6	62.500	8.51	0	—	—	—	—	—	—
115.2	62.500	-45.75	0	—	—	—	—	—	—

BAUD RATE (K)	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1, BRG16 = 0											
	Fosc = 40.000 MHz			Fosc = 20.000 MHz			Fosc = 10.000 MHz			Fosc = 8.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
1.2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2.4	—	—	—	—	—	—	2.441	1.73	255	2403	-0.16	207
9.6	9.766	1.73	255	9.615	0.16	129	9.615	0.16	64	9615	-0.16	51
19.2	19.231	0.16	129	19.231	0.16	64	19.531	1.73	31	19230	-0.16	25
57.6	58.140	0.94	42	56.818	-1.36	21	56.818	-1.36	10	55555	3.55	8
115.2	113.636	-1.36	21	113.636	-1.36	10	125.000	8.51	4	—	—	—

BAUD RATE (K)	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1, BRG16 = 0								
	Fosc = 4.000 MHz			Fosc = 2.000 MHz			Fosc = 1.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	—	—	—	—	—	—	300	-0.16	207
1.2	1.202	0.16	207	1201	-0.16	103	1201	-0.16	51
2.4	2.404	0.16	103	2403	-0.16	51	2403	-0.16	25
9.6	9.615	0.16	25	9615	-0.16	12	—	—	—
19.2	19.231	0.16	12	—	—	—	—	—	—
57.6	62.500	8.51	3	—	—	—	—	—	—
115.2	125.000	8.51	1	—	—	—	—	—	—

TABLE 14-3: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODES (CONTINUED)

BAUD RATE (K)	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0, BRG16 = 1											
	FOSC = 40.000 MHz			FOSC = 20.000 MHz			FOSC = 10.000 MHz			FOSC = 8.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	0.300	0.00	8332	0.300	0.02	4165	0.300	0.02	2082	300	-0.04	1665
1.2	1.200	0.02	2082	1.200	-0.03	1041	1.200	-0.03	520	1201	-0.16	415
2.4	2.402	0.06	1040	2.399	-0.03	520	2.404	0.16	259	2403	-0.16	207
9.6	9.615	0.16	259	9.615	0.16	129	9.615	0.16	64	9615	-0.16	51
19.2	19.231	0.16	129	19.231	0.16	64	19.531	1.73	31	19230	-0.16	25
57.6	58.140	0.94	42	56.818	-1.36	21	56.818	-1.36	10	55555	3.55	8
115.2	113.636	-1.36	21	113.636	-1.36	10	125.000	8.51	4	—	—	—

BAUD RATE (K)	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0, BRG16 = 1								
	FOSC = 4.000 MHz			FOSC = 2.000 MHz			FOSC = 1.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	0.300	0.04	832	300	-0.16	415	300	-0.16	207
1.2	1.202	0.16	207	1201	-0.16	103	1201	-0.16	51
2.4	2.404	0.16	103	2403	-0.16	51	2403	-0.16	25
9.6	9.615	0.16	25	9615	-0.16	12	—	—	—
19.2	19.231	0.16	12	—	—	—	—	—	—
57.6	62.500	8.51	3	—	—	—	—	—	—
115.2	125.000	8.51	1	—	—	—	—	—	—

BAUD RATE (K)	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1, BRG16 = 1 or SYNC = 1, BRG16 = 1											
	FOSC = 40.000 MHz			FOSC = 20.000 MHz			FOSC = 10.000 MHz			FOSC = 8.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	0.300	0.00	33332	0.300	0.00	16665	0.300	0.00	8332	300	-0.01	6665
1.2	1.200	0.00	8332	1.200	0.02	4165	1.200	0.02	2082	1200	-0.04	1665
2.4	2.400	0.02	4165	2.400	0.02	2082	2.402	0.06	1040	2400	-0.04	832
9.6	9.606	0.06	1040	9.596	-0.03	520	9.615	0.16	259	9615	-0.16	207
19.2	19.193	-0.03	520	19.231	0.16	259	19.231	0.16	129	19230	-0.16	103
57.6	57.803	0.35	172	57.471	-0.22	86	58.140	0.94	42	57142	0.79	34
115.2	114.943	-0.22	86	116.279	0.94	42	113.636	-1.36	21	117647	-2.12	16

BAUD RATE (K)	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1, BRG16 = 1 or SYNC = 1, BRG16 = 1								
	FOSC = 4.000 MHz			FOSC = 2.000 MHz			FOSC = 1.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)	Actual Rate (K)	% Error	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	0.300	0.01	3332	300	-0.04	1665	300	-0.04	832
1.2	1.200	0.04	832	1201	-0.16	415	1201	-0.16	207
2.4	2.404	0.16	415	2403	-0.16	207	2403	-0.16	103
9.6	9.615	0.16	103	9615	-0.16	51	9615	-0.16	25
19.2	19.231	0.16	51	19230	-0.16	25	19230	-0.16	12
57.6	58.824	2.12	16	55555	3.55	8	—	—	—
115.2	111.111	-3.55	8	—	—	—	—	—	—

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.1.3 AUTO-BAUD RATE DETECT

The Enhanced USART module supports the automatic detection and calibration of baud rate. This feature is active only in Asynchronous mode and while the WUE bit is clear.

The automatic baud rate measurement sequence (Figure 14-1) begins whenever a Start bit is received and the ABDEN bit is set. The calculation is self-averaging.

In the Auto-Baud Rate Detect (ABD) mode, the clock to the BRG is reversed. Rather than the BRG clocking the incoming RX signal, the RX signal is timing the BRG. In ABD mode, the internal Baud Rate Generator is used as a counter to time the bit period of the incoming serial byte stream.

Once the ABDEN bit is set, the state machine will clear the BRG and look for a Start bit. The Auto-Baud Rate Detect must receive a byte with the value 55h (ASCII "U", which is also the LIN bus Sync character) in order to calculate the proper bit rate. The measurement is taken over both a low and a high bit time in order to minimize any effects caused by asymmetry of the incoming signal. After a Start bit, the SPBRG begins counting up, using the preselected clock source on the first rising edge of RX. After eight bits on the RX pin or the fifth rising edge, an accumulated value totalling the proper BRG period is left in the SPBRGH:SPBRG register pair. Once the 5th edge is seen (this should correspond to the Stop bit), the ABDEN bit is automatically cleared.

If a rollover of the BRG occurs (an overflow from FFFFh to 0000h), the event is trapped by the ABDOVF status bit (BAUDCON<7>). It is set in hardware by BRG rollovers and can be set or cleared by the user in software. ABD mode remains active after rollover events and the ABDEN bit remains set (Figure 14-2).

While calibrating the baud rate period, the BRG registers are clocked at 1/8th the preconfigured clock rate. Note that the BRG clock will be configured by the BRG16 and BRGH bits. Independent of the BRG16 bit setting, both the SPBRG and SPBRGH will be used as a 16-bit counter. This allows the user to verify that no carry occurred for 8-bit modes by checking for 00h in the SPBRGH register. Refer to Table 14-4 for counter clock rates to the BRG.

While the ABD sequence takes place, the EUSART state machine is held in Idle. The RCIF interrupt is set once the fifth rising edge on RX is detected. The value in the RCREG needs to be read to clear the RCIF interrupt. The contents of RCREG should be discarded.

Note 1: If the WUE bit is set with the ABDEN bit, Auto-Baud Rate Detection will occur on the byte *following* the Break character.

2: It is up to the user to determine that the incoming character baud rate is within the range of the selected BRG clock source. Some combinations of oscillator frequency and EUSART baud rates are not possible due to bit error rates. Overall system timing and communication baud rates must be taken into consideration when using the Auto-Baud Rate Detection feature.

TABLE 14-4: BRG COUNTER CLOCK RATES

BRG16	BRGH	BRG Counter Clock
0	0	FOSC/512
0	1	FOSC/128
1	0	FOSC/128
1	1	FOSC/32

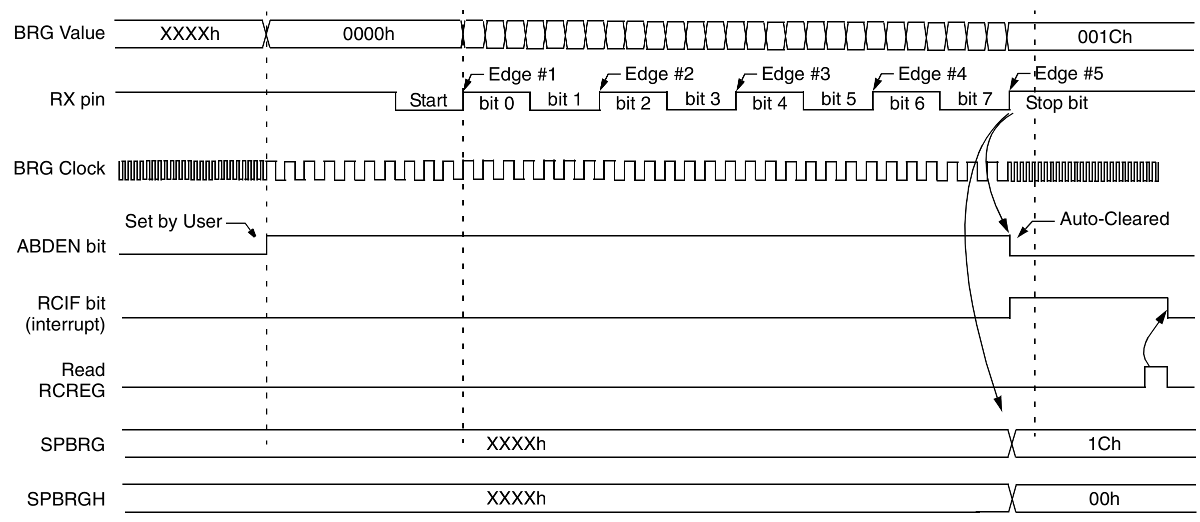
Note: During the ABD sequence, SPBRG and SPBRGH are both used as a 16-bit counter, independent of the BRG16 setting.

14.1.3.1 ABD and EUSART Transmission

Since the BRG clock is reversed during ABD acquisition, the EUSART transmitter cannot be used during ABD. This means that whenever the ABDEN bit is set, TXREG cannot be written to. Users should also ensure that ABDEN does not become set during a transmit sequence. Failing to do this may result in unpredictable EUSART operation.

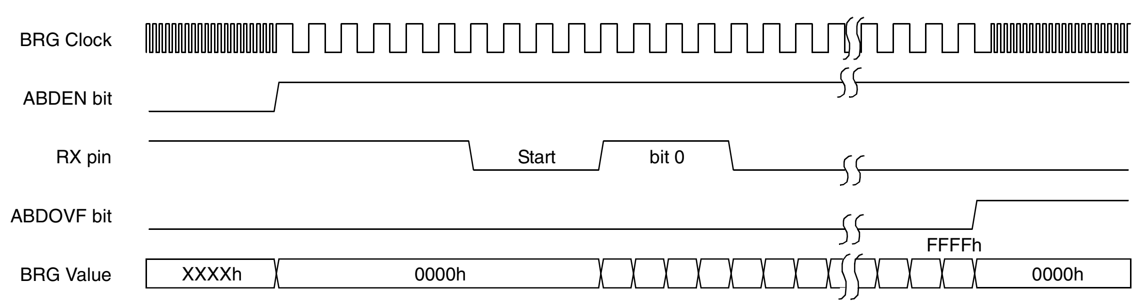
© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 14-1: AUTOMATIC BAUD RATE CALCULATION



Note: The ABD sequence requires the EUSART module to be configured in Asynchronous mode and WUE = 0.

FIGURE 14-2: BRG OVERFLOW SEQUENCE



 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.2 EUSART Asynchronous Mode

The Asynchronous mode of operation is selected by clearing the SYNC bit (TXSTA<4>). In this mode, the EUSART uses standard Non-Return-to-Zero (NRZ) format (one Start bit, eight or nine data bits and one Stop bit). The most common data format is 8 bits. An on-chip dedicated 8-bit/16-bit Baud Rate Generator can be used to derive standard baud rate frequencies from the oscillator.

The EUSART transmits and receives the LSb first. The EUSART's transmitter and receiver are functionally independent but use the same data format and baud rate. The Baud Rate Generator produces a clock, either x16 or x64 of the bit shift rate depending on the BRGH and BRG16 bits (TXSTA<2> and BAUDCON<3>). Parity is not supported by the hardware but can be implemented in software and stored as the 9th data bit.

When operating in Asynchronous mode, the EUSART module consists of the following important elements:

- Baud Rate Generator
- Sampling Circuit
- Asynchronous Transmitter
- Asynchronous Receiver
- Auto-Wake-up on Sync Break Character
- 12-Bit Break Character Transmit
- Auto-Baud Rate Detection

14.2.1 EUSART ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMITTER

The EUSART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 14-3. The heart of the transmitter is the Transmit (Serial) Shift Register (TSR). The Shift register obtains its data from the Read/Write Transmit Buffer register, TXREG. The TXREG register is loaded with data in software. The TSR register is not loaded until the Stop bit has been transmitted from the previous load. As soon as the Stop bit is transmitted, the TSR is loaded with new data from the TXREG register (if available).

Once the TXREG register transfers the data to the TSR register (occurs in one T_{CY}), the TXREG register is empty and the TXIF flag bit (PIR1<4>) is set. This interrupt can be enabled or disabled by setting or clearing the interrupt enable bit, TXIE (PIE1<4>). TXIF will be set regardless of the state of TXIE; it cannot be cleared in software. TXIF is also not cleared immediately upon loading TXREG but becomes valid in the second instruction cycle following the load instruction. Polling TXIF immediately following a load of TXREG will return invalid results.

While TXIF indicates the status of the TXREG register, another bit, TRMT (TXSTA<1>), shows the status of the TSR register. TRMT is a read-only bit which is set when the TSR register is empty. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit so the user has to poll this bit in order to determine if the TSR register is empty.

> **Note 1:** The TSR register is not mapped in data memory so it is not available to the user.
>
> **2:** Flag bit TXIF is set when enable bit TXEN is set.

To set up an Asynchronous Transmission:

1. Initialize the SPBRGH:SPBRG registers for the appropriate baud rate. Set or clear the BRGH and BRG16 bits, as required, to achieve the desired baud rate.
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing bit SYNC and setting bit SPEN.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set transmit bit TX9. Can be used as address/data bit.
5. Enable the transmission by setting bit TXEN which will also set bit TXIF.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Load data to the TXREG register (starts transmission).
8. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

FIGURE 14-3: EUSART TRANSMIT BLOCK DIAGRAM

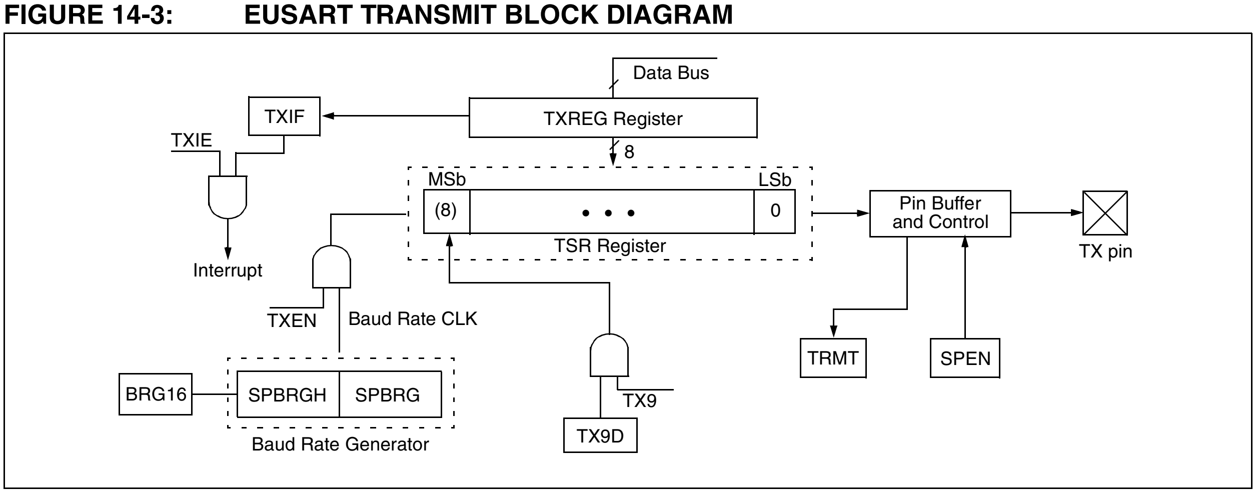


FIGURE 14-4: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

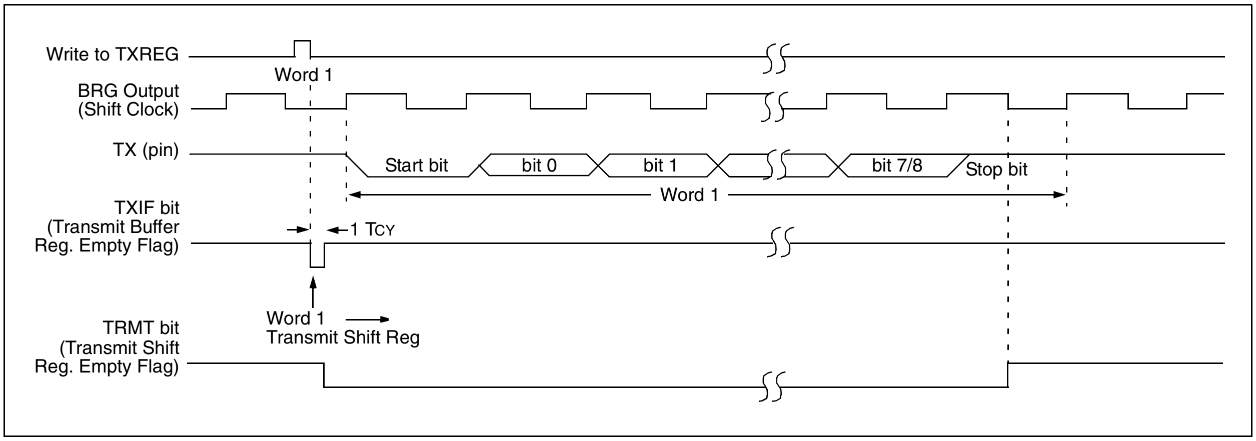
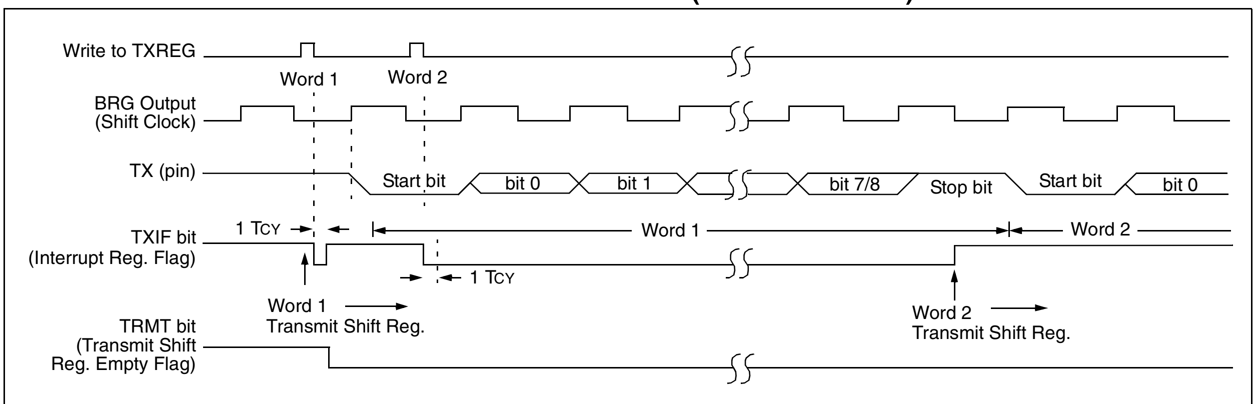


FIGURE 14-5: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (BACK TO BACK)



Note: This timing diagram shows two consecutive transmissions.

TABLE 14-5: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	CMP2IF	CMP1IF	CMP0IF	TMR1IF	43
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	CMP2IE	CMP1IE	CMP0IE	TMR1IE	43
IPR1	—	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	CMP2IP	CMP1IP	CMP0IP	TMR1IP	43
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	42
TXREG	EUSART Transmit Register								42
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	42
BAUDCON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	42
SPBRGH	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register High Byte								42
SPBRG	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register Low Byte								42

Legend: — = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for asynchronous transmission.

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.2.2 EUSART ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER

The receiver block diagram is shown in Figure 14-6. The data is received on the RX pin and drives the data recovery block. The data recovery block is actually a high-speed shifter operating at x16 times the baud rate, whereas the main receive serial shifter operates at the bit rate or at FOSC. This mode would typically be used in RS-232 systems.

To set up an Asynchronous Reception:

1. Initialize the SPBRGH:SPBRG registers for the appropriate baud rate. Set or clear the BRGH and BRG16 bits, as required, to achieve the desired baud rate.
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing bit SYNC and setting bit SPEN.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit RCIE.
4. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
5. Enable the reception by setting bit CREN.
6. Flag bit, RCIF, will be set when reception is complete and an interrupt will be generated if enable bit, RCIE, was set.
7. Read the RCSTA register to get the 9th bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
8. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
9. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing enable bit CREN.
10. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

14.2.3 SETTING UP 9-BIT MODE WITH ADDRESS DETECT

This mode would typically be used in RS-485 systems. To set up an Asynchronous Reception with Address Detect Enable:

1. Initialize the SPBRGH:SPBRG registers for the appropriate baud rate. Set or clear the BRGH and BRG16 bits, as required, to achieve the desired baud rate.
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing the SYNC bit and setting the SPEN bit.
3. If interrupts are required, set the RCEN bit and select the desired priority level with the RCIP bit.
4. Set the RX9 bit to enable 9-bit reception.
5. Set the ADDEN bit to enable address detect.
6. Enable reception by setting the CREN bit.
7. The RCIF bit will be set when reception is complete. The interrupt will be Acknowledged if the RCIE and GIE bits are set.
8. Read the RCSTA register to determine if any error occurred during reception, as well as read bit 9 of data (if applicable).
9. Read RCREG to determine if the device is being addressed.
10. If any error occurred, clear the CREN bit.
11. If the device has been addressed, clear the ADDEN bit to allow all received data into the receive buffer and interrupt the CPU.

FIGURE 14-6: EUSART RECEIVE BLOCK DIAGRAM

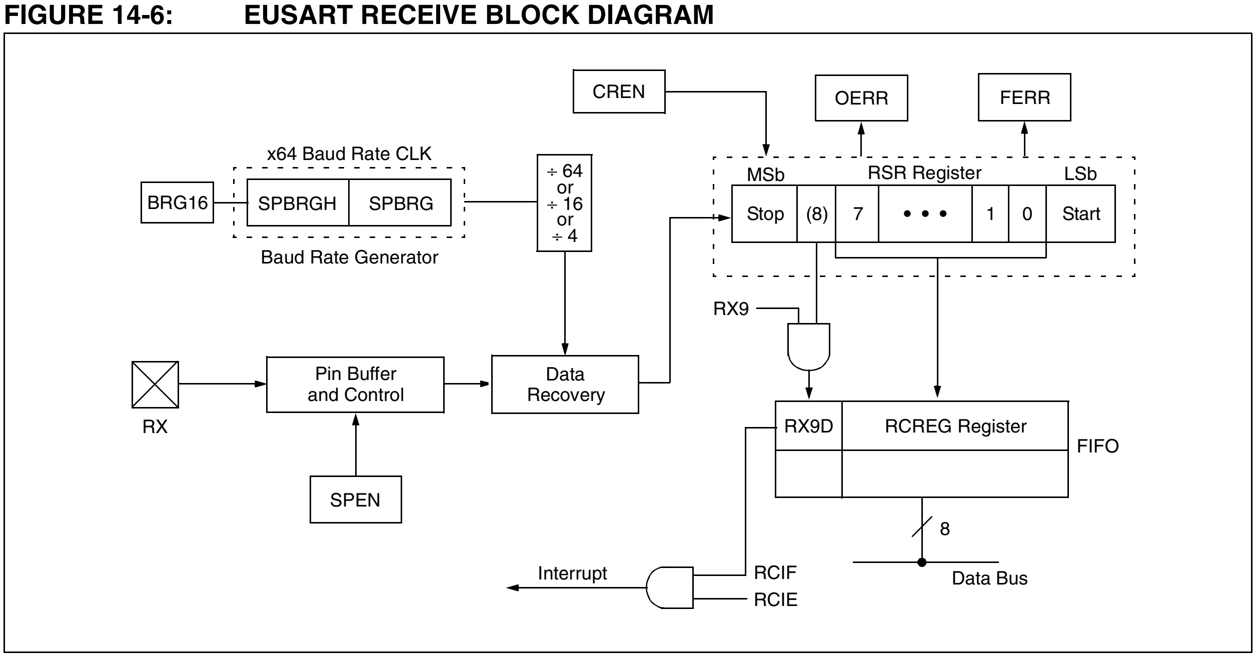
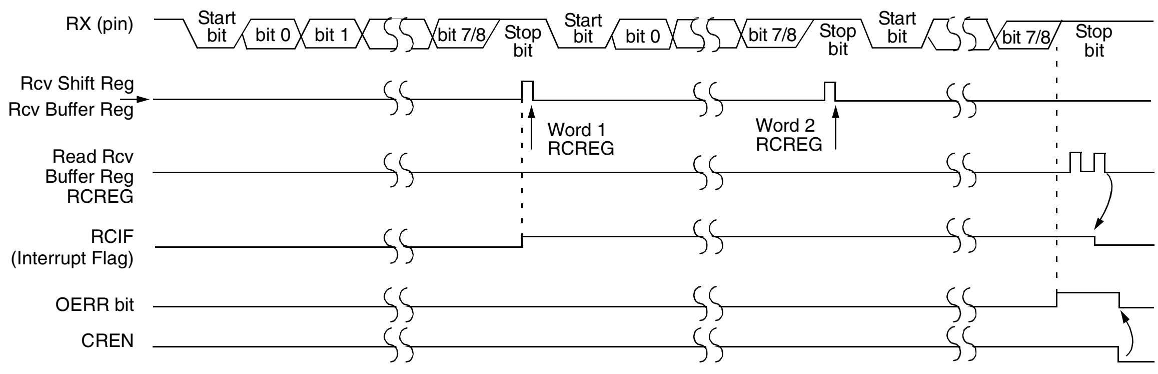


FIGURE 14-7: ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION



Note: This timing diagram shows three words appearing on the RX input. The RCREG (Receive Buffer) is read after the third word causing the OERR (Overrun) bit to be set.

TABLE 14-6: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	CMP2IF	CMP1IF	CMP0IF	TMR1IF	43
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	CMP2IE	CMP1IE	CMP0IE	TMR1IE	43
IPR1	—	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	CMP2IP	CMP1IP	CMP0IP	TMR1IP	43
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	42
RCREG	EUSART Receive Register								42
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	42
BAUDCON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	42
SPBRGH	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register High Byte								42
SPBRG	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register Low Byte								42

Legend: — = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for asynchronous reception.

14.2.4 AUTO-WAKE-UP ON SYNC BREAK CHARACTER

During Sleep mode, all clocks to the EUSART are suspended. Because of this, the Baud Rate Generator is inactive and a proper byte reception cannot be performed. The auto-wake-up feature allows the controller to wake-up due to activity on the RX/DT line while the EUSART is operating in Asynchronous mode.

The auto-wake-up feature is enabled by setting the WUE bit (BAUDCON<1>). Once set, the typical receive sequence on RX/DT is disabled and the EUSART remains in an Idle state, monitoring for a wake-up event independent of the CPU mode. A wake-up event consists of a high-to-low transition on the RX/DT line. (This coincides with the start of a Sync Break or a Wake-up Signal character for the LIN protocol.)

Following a wake-up event, the module generates an RCIF interrupt. The interrupt is generated synchronously to the Q clocks in normal operating modes (Figure 14-8) and asynchronously if the device is in Sleep mode (Figure 14-9). The interrupt condition is cleared by reading the RCREG register.

The WUE bit is automatically cleared once a low-to-high transition is observed on the RX line following the wake-up event. At this point, the EUSART module is in Idle mode and returns to normal operation. This signals to the user that the Sync Break event is over.

14.2.4.1 Special Considerations Using Auto-Wake-up

Since auto-wake-up functions by sensing rising edge transitions on RX/DT, information with any state changes before the Stop bit may signal a false End-of-Character and cause data or framing errors. To work properly, therefore, the initial characters in the transmission must be all '0's. This can be 00h (8 bytes) for standard RS-232 devices or 000h (12 bits) for LIN bus.

Oscillator start-up time must also be considered, especially in applications using oscillators with longer start-up intervals (i.e., XT or HS mode). The Sync Break (or Wake-up Signal) character must be of sufficient length and be followed by a sufficient interval to allow enough time for the selected oscillator to start and provide proper initialization of the EUSART.

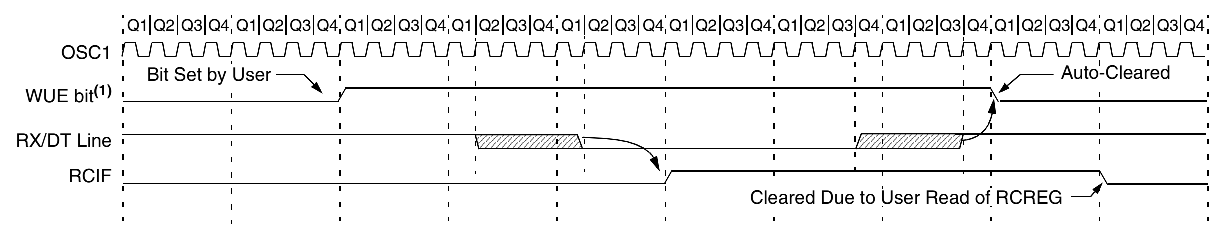
14.2.4.2 Special Considerations Using the WUE Bit

The timing of WUE and RCIF events may cause some confusion when it comes to determining the validity of received data. As noted, setting the WUE bit places the EUSART in an Idle mode. The wake-up event causes a receive interrupt by setting the RCIF bit. The WUE bit is cleared after this when a rising edge is seen on RX/DT. The interrupt condition is then cleared by reading the RCREG register. Ordinarily, the data in RCREG will be dummy data and should be discarded.

The fact that the WUE bit has been cleared (or is still set) and the RCIF flag is set should not be used as an indicator of the integrity of the data in RCREG. Users should consider implementing a parallel method in firmware to verify received data integrity.

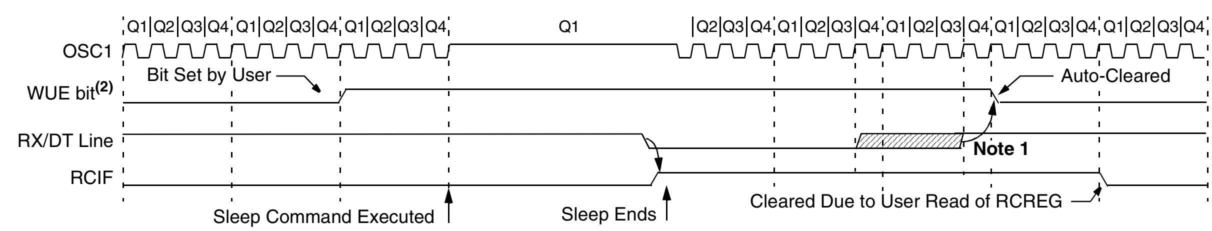
To assure that no actual data is lost, check the RCIDL bit to verify that a receive operation is not in process. If a receive operation is not occurring, the WUE bit may then be set just prior to entering the Sleep mode.

FIGURE 14-8: AUTO-WAKE-UP BIT (WUE) TIMINGS DURING NORMAL OPERATION



Note 1: The EUSART remains in Idle while the WUE bit is set.

FIGURE 14-9: AUTO-WAKE-UP BIT (WUE) TIMINGS DURING SLEEP



Note 1: If the wake-up event requires long oscillator warm-up time, the auto-clear of the WUE bit can occur before the oscillator is ready. This sequence should not depend on the presence of Q clocks.

2: The EUSART remains in Idle while the WUE bit is set.

14.2.5 BREAK CHARACTER SEQUENCE

The EUSART module has the capability of sending the special Break character sequences that are required by the LIN bus standard. The Break character transmit consists of a Start bit, followed by twelve '0' bits and a Stop bit. The Frame Break character is sent whenever the SENDB and TXEN bits (TXSTA<3> and TXSTA<5>) are set while the Transmit Shift register is loaded with data. Note that the value of data written to TXREG will be ignored and all '0's will be transmitted.

The SENDB bit is automatically reset by hardware after the corresponding Stop bit is sent. This allows the user to preload the transmit FIFO with the next transmit byte following the Break character (typically, the Sync character in the LIN specification).

Note that the data value written to the TXREG for the Break character is ignored. The write simply serves the purpose of initiating the proper sequence.

The TRMT bit indicates when the transmit operation is active or Idle, just as it does during normal transmission. See Figure 14-10 for the timing of the Break character sequence.

14.2.5.1 Break and Sync Transmit Sequence

The following sequence will send a message frame header made up of a Break, followed by an Auto-Baud Sync byte. This sequence is typical of a LIN bus master.

1. Configure the EUSART for the desired mode.
2. Set the TXEN and SENDB bits to set up the Break character.
3. Load the TXREG with a dummy character to initiate transmission (the value is ignored).
4. Write '55h' to TXREG to load the Sync character into the transmit FIFO buffer.
5. After the Break has been sent, the SENDB bit is reset by hardware. The Sync character now transmits in the preconfigured mode.

When the TXREG becomes empty, as indicated by the TXIF, the next data byte can be written to TXREG.

14.2.6 RECEIVING A BREAK CHARACTER

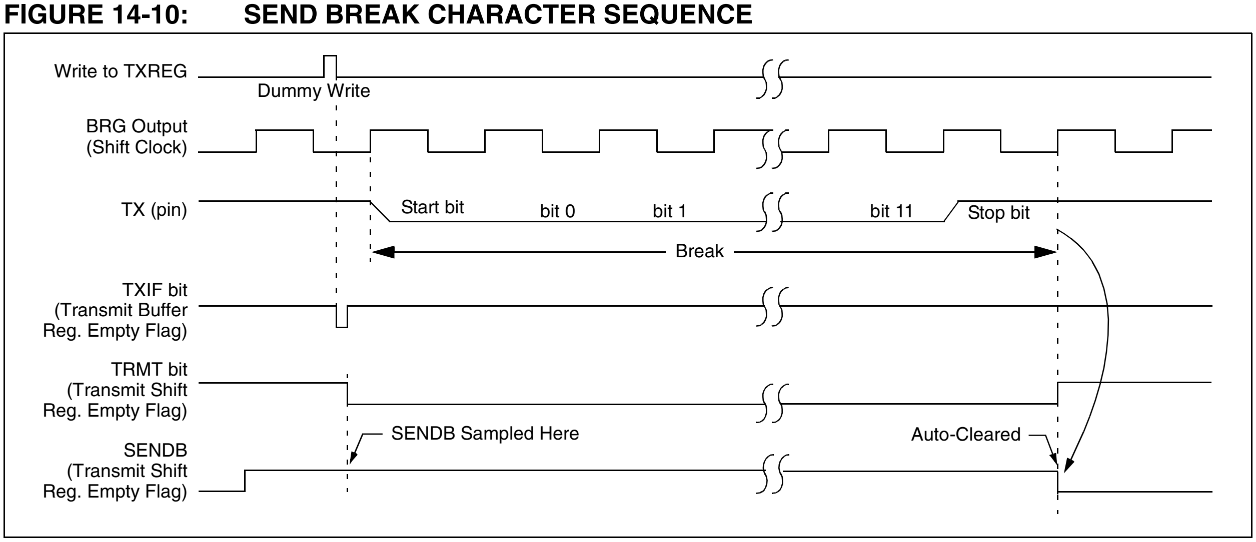
The Enhanced USART module can receive a Break character in two ways.

The first method forces configuration of the baud rate at a frequency of 9/13 the typical speed. This allows for the Stop bit transition to be at the correct sampling location (13 bits for Break versus Start bit and 8 data bits for typical data).

The second method uses the auto-wake-up feature described in **Section 14.2.4 "Auto-wake-up on Sync Break Character"**. By enabling this feature, the EUSART will sample the next two transitions on RX/DT, cause an RCIF interrupt and receive the next data byte followed by another interrupt.

Note that following a Break character, the user will typically want to enable the Auto-Baud Rate Detect feature. For both methods, the user can set the ABDEN bit once the TXIF interrupt is observed.

FIGURE 14-10: SEND BREAK CHARACTER SEQUENCE



 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.3 EUSART Synchronous Master Mode

The Synchronous Master mode is entered by setting the CSRC bit (TXSTA<7>). In this mode, the data is transmitted in a half-duplex manner (i.e., transmission and reception do not occur at the same time). When transmitting data, the reception is inhibited and vice versa. Synchronous mode is entered by setting bit SYNC (TXSTA<4>). In addition, enable bit SPEN (RCSTA<7>) is set in order to configure the TX and RX pins to CK (clock) and DT (data) lines, respectively.

The Master mode indicates that the processor transmits the master clock on the CK line. Clock polarity is selected with the SCKP bit (BAUDCON<4>). Setting SCKP sets the Idle state on CK as high, while clearing the bit sets the Idle state as low. This option is provided to support Microwire devices with this module.

14.3.1 EUSART SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

The EUSART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 14-3. The heart of the transmitter is the Transmit (Serial) Shift Register (TSR). The Shift register obtains its data from the Read/Write Transmit Buffer register, TXREG. The TXREG register is loaded with data in software. The TSR register is not loaded until the last bit has been transmitted from the previous load. As soon as the last bit is transmitted, the TSR is loaded with new data from the TXREG (if available).

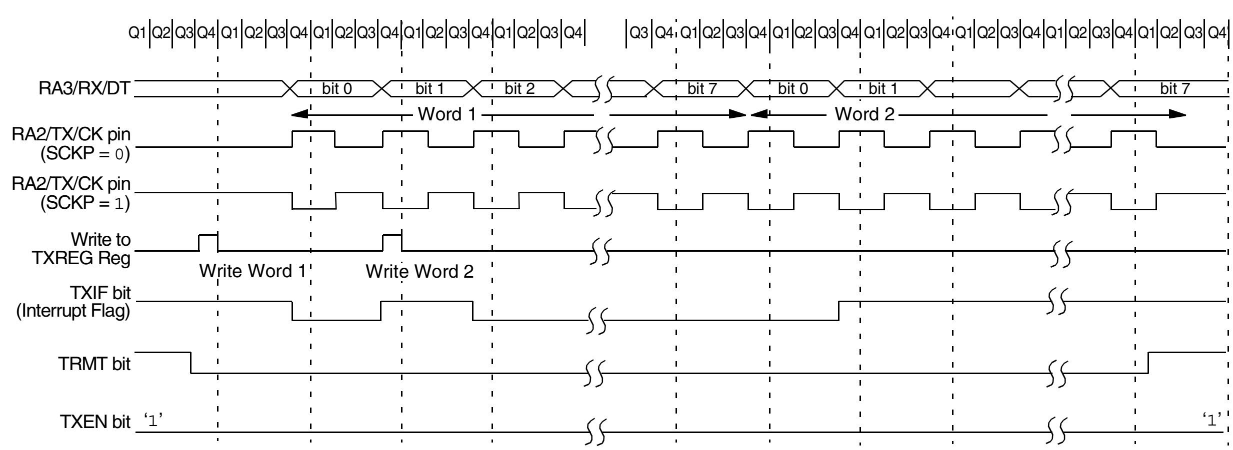
Once the TXREG register transfers the data to the TSR register (occurs in one T_{CY}), the TXREG is empty and the TXIF flag bit (PIR1<4>) is set. The interrupt can be enabled or disabled by setting or clearing the interrupt enable bit, TXIE (PIE1<4>). TXIF is set regardless of the state of enable bit TXIE; it cannot be cleared in software. It will reset only when new data is loaded into the TXREG register.

While flag bit TXIF indicates the status of the TXREG register, another bit, TRMT (TXSTA<1>), shows the status of the TSR register. TRMT is a read-only bit which is set when the TSR is empty. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit so the user has to poll this bit in order to determine if the TSR register is empty. The TSR is not mapped in data memory so it is not available to the user.

To set up a Synchronous Master Transmission:

1. Initialize the SPBRGH:SPBRG registers for the appropriate baud rate. Set or clear the BRG16 bit, as required, to achieve the desired baud rate.
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN and CSRC.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set bit TX9.
5. Enable the transmission by setting bit TXEN.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Start transmission by loading data to the TXREG register.
8. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

FIGURE 14-11: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION



Note: Sync Master mode, SPBRG = 0, continuous transmission of two 8-bit words.

FIGURE 14-12: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (THROUGH TXEN)

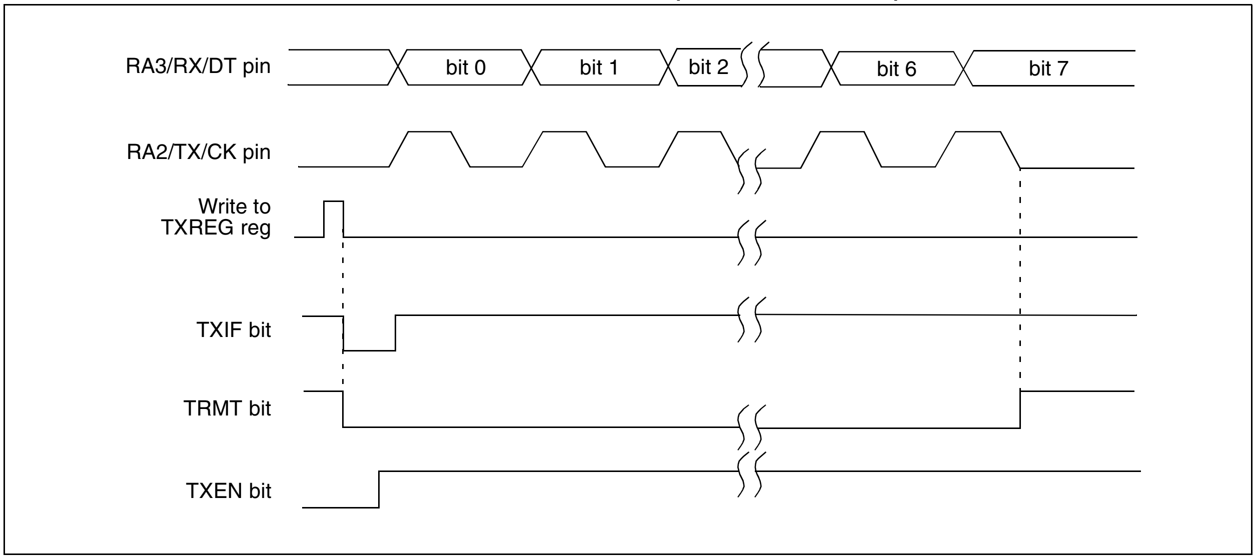


TABLE 14-7: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	CMP2IF	CMP1IF	CMP0IF	TMR1IF	43
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	CMP2IE	CMP1IE	CMP0IE	TMR1IE	43
IPR1	—	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	CMP2IP	CMP1IP	CMP0IP	TMR1IP	43
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	42
TXREG	EUSART Transmit Register								42
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	42
BAUDCON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	42
SPBRGH	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register High Byte								42
SPBRG	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register Low Byte								42

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for synchronous master transmission.

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.3.2 EUSART SYNCHRONOUS MASTER RECEPTION

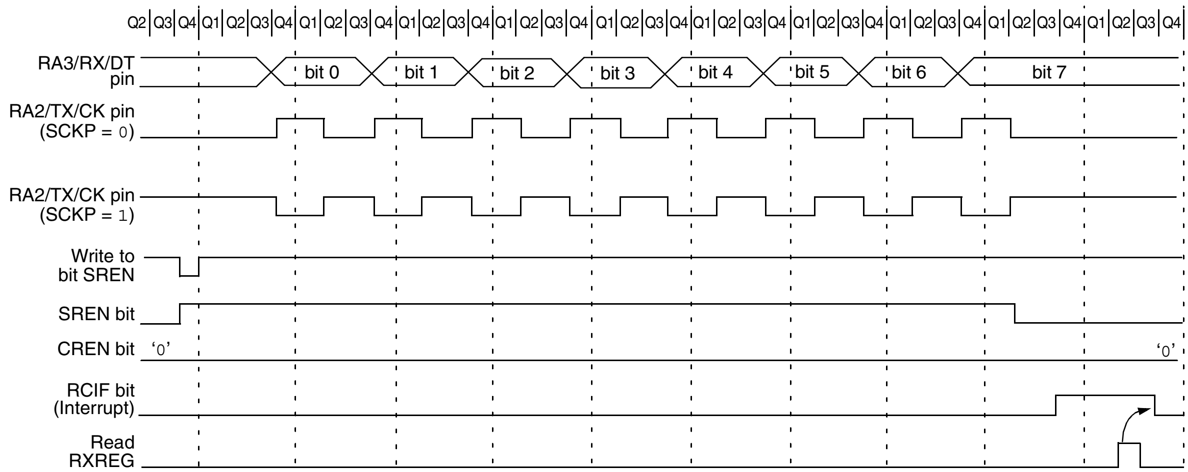
Once Synchronous mode is selected, reception is enabled by setting either the Single Receive Enable bit, SREN (RCSTA<5>), or the Continuous Receive Enable bit, CREN (RCSTA<4>). Data is sampled on the RX pin on the falling edge of the clock.

If enable bit SREN is set, only a single word is received. If enable bit CREN is set, the reception is continuous until CREN is cleared. If both bits are set, then CREN takes precedence.

To set up a Synchronous Master Reception:

1. Initialize the SPBRGH:SPBRG registers for the appropriate baud rate. Set or clear the BRG16 bit, as required, to achieve the desired baud rate.
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN and CSRC.
3. Ensure bits CREN and SREN are clear.
4. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit RCIE.
5. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
6. If a single reception is required, set bit SREN. For continuous reception, set bit CREN.
7. Interrupt flag bit, RCIF, will be set when reception is complete and an interrupt will be generated if the enable bit, RCIE, was set.
8. Read the RCSTA register to get the 9th bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
9. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
10. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing bit CREN.
11. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

FIGURE 14-13: SYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION (MASTER MODE, SREN)



Note: Timing diagram demonstrates Sync Master mode with bit SREN = 1 and bit BRGH = 0.

TABLE 14-8: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	CMP2IF	CMP1IF	CMP0IF	TMR1IF	43
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	CMP2IE	CMP1IE	CMP0IE	TMR1IE	43
IPR1	—	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	CMP2IP	CMP1IP	CMP0IP	TMR1IP	43
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	42
RCREG	EUSART Receive Register								42
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	42
BAUDCON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	42
SPBRGH	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register High Byte								42
SPBRG	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register Low Byte								42

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for synchronous master reception.

14.4 EUSART Synchronous Slave Mode

Synchronous Slave mode is entered by clearing bit, CSRC (TXSTA<7>). This mode differs from the Synchronous Master mode in that the shift clock is supplied externally at the CK pin (instead of being supplied internally in Master mode). This allows the device to transfer or receive data while in any low-power mode.

14.4.1 EUSART SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMISSION

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes are identical, except in the case of the Sleep mode.

If two words are written to the TXREG and then the `SLEEP` instruction is executed, the following will occur:

a) The first word will immediately transfer to the TSR register and transmit.

b) The second word will remain in the TXREG register.

c) Flag bit, TXIF, will not be set.

d) When the first word has been shifted out of TSR, the TXREG register will transfer the second word to the TSR and flag bit, TXIF, will now be set.

e) If enable bit, TXIE, is set, the interrupt will wake the chip from Sleep. If the global interrupt is enabled, the program will branch to the interrupt vector.

To set up a Synchronous Slave Transmission:

1. Enable the synchronous slave serial port by setting bits SYNC and SPEN and clearing bit CSRC.
2. Clear bits CREN and SREN.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set bit TX9.
5. Enable the transmission by setting enable bit TXEN.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Start transmission by loading data to the TXREG register.
8. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

TABLE 14-9: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	CMP2IF	CMP1IF	CMP0IF	TMR1IF	43
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	CMP2IE	CMP1IE	CMP0IE	TMR1IE	43
IPR1	—	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	CMP2IP	CMP1IP	CMP0IP	TMR1IP	43
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	42
TXREG	EUSART Transmit Register								42
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	42
BAUDCON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	42
SPBRGH	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register High Byte								42
SPBRG	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register Low Byte								42

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for synchronous slave transmission.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.4.2 EUSART SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes is identical, except in the case of Sleep, or any Idle mode and bit SREN, which is a “don’t care” in Slave mode.

If receive is enabled by setting the CREN bit prior to entering Sleep or any Idle mode, then a word may be received while in this low-power mode. Once the word is received, the RSR register will transfer the data to the RCREG register; if the RCIE enable bit is set, the interrupt generated will wake the chip from the low-power mode. If the global interrupt is enabled, the program will branch to the interrupt vector.

To set up a Synchronous Slave Reception:

1. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC and SPEN and clearing bit CSRC.
2. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit RCIE.
3. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
4. To enable reception, set enable bit CREN.
5. Flag bit, RCIF, will be set when reception is complete. An interrupt will be generated if enable bit, RCIE, was set.
6. Read the RCSTA register to get the 9th bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
7. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
8. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing bit CREN.
9. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

TABLE 14-10: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	CMP2IF	CMP1IF	CMP0IF	TMR1IF	43
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	CMP2IE	CMP1IE	CMP0IE	TMR1IE	43
IPR1	—	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	CMP2IP	CMP1IP	CMP0IP	TMR1IP	43
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	42
RCREG	EUSART Receive Register								42
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	42
BAUDCON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	42
SPBRGH	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register High Byte								42
SPBRG	EUSART Baud Rate Generator Register Low Byte								42

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used for synchronous slave reception.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

NOTES:

  © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.0 10-BIT ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER (A/D) MODULE

The Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converter module has 4 inputs for the 18/20/28-pin devices. This module allows conversion of an analog input signal to a corresponding 10-bit digital number in PIC18F1230/1330 devices.

The module has five registers:

- A/D Result Register High Byte (ADRESH)
- A/D Result Register Low Byte (ADRESL)
- A/D Control Register 0 (ADCON0)
- A/D Control Register 1 (ADCON1)
- A/D Control Register 2 (ADCON2)

The ADCON0 register, shown in Register 15-1, controls the operation of the A/D module. The ADCON1 register, shown in Register 15-2, configures the functions of the port pins. The ADCON2 register, shown in Register 15-3, configures the A/D clock source, programmed acquisition time and justification.

REGISTER 15-1: ADCON0: A/D CONTROL REGISTER 0

R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
SEVTEN	—	—	—	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	ADON
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **SEVTEN:** Special Event Trigger Enable bit
1 = Special Event Trigger from Power Control PWM module is enabled
0 = Special Event Trigger from Power Control PWM module is disabled (default)

bit 6-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 3-2 **CHS1:CHS0:** Analog Channel Select bits
00 = Channel 0 (AN0)
01 = Channel 1 (AN1)
10 = Channel 2 (AN2)
11 = Channel 3 (AN3)

bit 1 **GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$:** A/D Conversion Status bit
When ADON = 1:
1 = A/D conversion in progress
0 = A/D Idle

bit 0 **ADON:** A/D On bit
1 = A/D converter module is enabled
0 = A/D converter module is disabled

REGISTER 15-2: ADCON1: A/D CONTROL REGISTER 1

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0[1,2]	R/W[1]	R/W[1]	R/W[1]
—	—	—	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 4 **VCFG0:** Voltage Reference Configuration bit (V_{REF+} source)
1 = Positive reference for the A/D is V_{REF+}
0 = Positive reference for the A/D is AV_{DD}

bit 3 **PCFG3:** A/D Port Configuration bit for RA6/AN3[1,2]
1 = Port is configured as AN3
0 = Port is configured as RA6

bit 2 **PCFG2:** A/D Port Configuration bit for RA4/AN2[1]
1 = Port is configured as AN2
0 = Port is configured as RA4

bit 1 **PCFG1:** A/D Port Configuration bit for RA1/AN1[1]
1 = Port is configured as AN1
0 = Port is configured as RA1

bit 0 **PCFG0:** A/D Port Configuration bit for RA0/AN0[1]
1 = Port is configured as AN0
0 = Port is configured as RA0

Note 1: These bits reset to ‘1’ to configure the port as an analog input after Reset.
2: This bit is unused and reads as ‘0’ if pin is not configured for use as RA6

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 15-3: ADCON2: A/D CONTROL REGISTER 2

R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
ADFM	—	ACQT2	ACQT1	ACQT0	ADCS2	ADCS1	ADCS0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **ADFM:** A/D Result Format Select bit
1 = Right justified
0 = Left justified

bit 6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-3 **ACQT2:ACQT0:** A/D Acquisition Time Select bits
111 = 20 TAD
110 = 16 TAD
101 = 12 TAD
100 = 8 TAD
011 = 6 TAD
010 = 4 TAD
001 = 2 TAD
000 = 0 TAD(1)

bit 2-0 **ADCS2:ADCS0:** A/D Conversion Clock Select bits
111 = FRC (clock derived from A/D RC oscillator)(1)
110 = FOSC/64
101 = FOSC/16
100 = FOSC/4
011 = FRC (clock derived from A/D RC oscillator)(1)
010 = FOSC/32
001 = FOSC/8
000 = FOSC/2

Note 1: If the A/D FRC clock source is selected, a delay of one TCY (instruction cycle) is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed before starting a conversion.

The analog reference voltage is software selectable to the device's positive supply voltage (VDD), or the voltage level on the RA4/T0CKI/AN2/VREF+ pin.

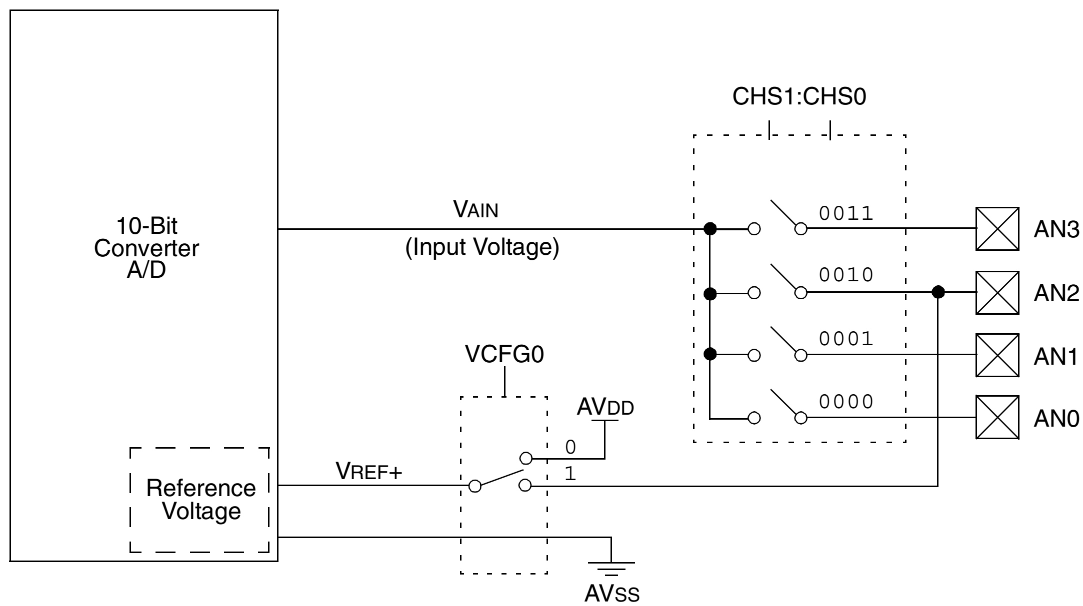
The A/D converter has a unique feature of being able to operate while the device is in Sleep mode. To operate in Sleep, the A/D conversion clock must be derived from the A/D converter's internal RC oscillator.

The output of the sample and hold is the input into the converter, which generates the result via successive approximation.

A device Reset forces all registers to their Reset state. This forces the A/D module to be turned off and any conversion in progress is aborted.

Each port pin associated with the A/D converter can be configured as an analog input or as a digital I/O. The ADRESH and ADRESL registers contain the result of the A/D conversion. When the A/D conversion is complete, the result is loaded into the ADRESH:ADRESL register pair, the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit (ADCON0 register) is cleared and A/D Interrupt Flag bit, ADIF, is set. The block diagram of the A/D module is shown in Figure 15-1.

FIGURE 15-1: A/D BLOCK DIAGRAM



 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

The value in the ADRESH:ADRESL registers is not modified for a Power-on Reset. The ADRESH:ADRESL registers will contain unknown data after a Power-on Reset.

After the A/D module has been configured as desired, the selected channel must be acquired before the conversion is started. The analog input channels must have their corresponding TRIS bits selected as inputs. To determine acquisition time, see **Section 15.2 "A/D Acquisition Requirements"**. After this acquisition time has elapsed, the A/D conversion can be started. An acquisition time can be programmed to occur between setting the GO/$\overline{DONE}$ bit and the actual start of the conversion.

The following steps should be followed to perform an A/D conversion:

1. Configure the A/D module:
   - Configure analog pins, voltage reference and digital I/O (ADCON1)
   - Select A/D input channel (ADCON0)
   - Select A/D acquisition time (ADCON2)
   - Select A/D conversion clock (ADCON2)
   - Turn on A/D module (ADCON0)
2. Configure A/D interrupt (if desired):
   - Clear ADIF bit
   - Set ADIE bit
   - Set GIE bit
3. Wait the required acquisition time (if required).
4. Start conversion:
   - Set GO/$\overline{DONE}$ bit (ADCON0 register)
5. Wait for A/D conversion to complete, by either:
   - Polling for the GO/$\overline{DONE}$ bit to be cleared

   OR

   - Waiting for the A/D interrupt
6. Read A/D Result registers (ADRESH:ADRESL); clear bit ADIF, if required.
7. For next conversion, go to step 1 or step 2, as required. The A/D conversion time per bit is defined as TAD. A minimum wait of 2 TAD is required before the next acquisition starts.

FIGURE 15-2: A/D TRANSFER FUNCTION

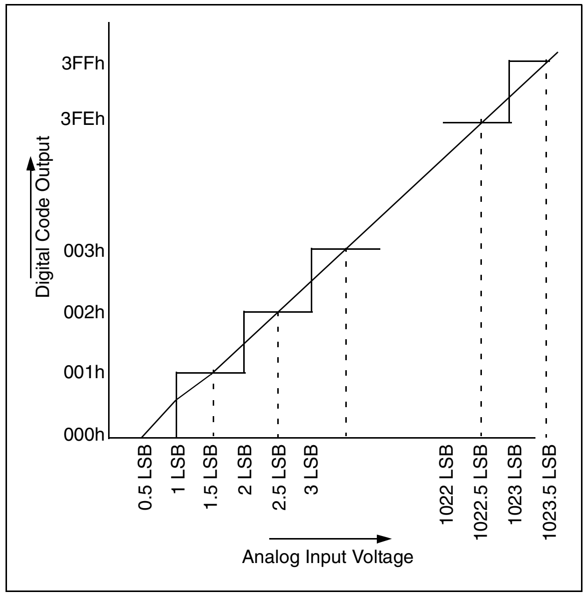
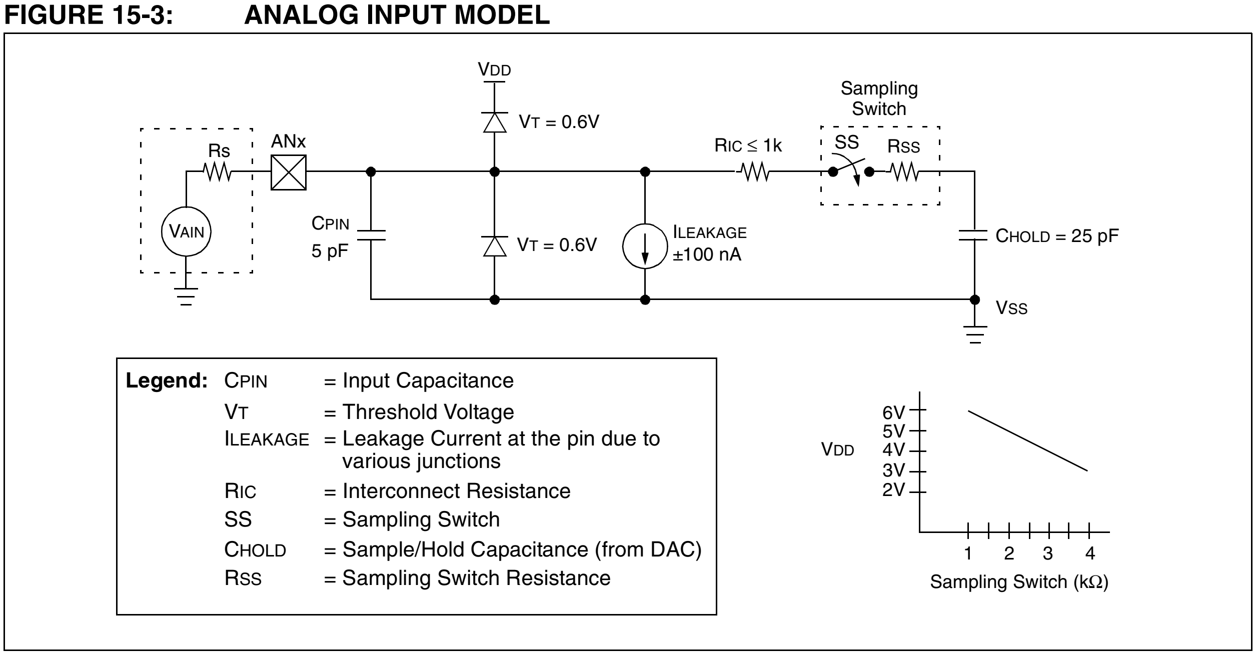


FIGURE 15-3: ANALOG INPUT MODEL



15.1 Triggering A/D Conversions

The A/D conversion can be triggered by setting the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit. This bit can either be set manually by the programmer or by setting the SEVTEN bit of ADCON0. When the SEVTEN bit is set, the Special Event Trigger from the Power Control PWM module triggers the A/D conversion. For more information, see **Section 13.14 "PWM Special Event Trigger"**.

15.2 A/D Acquisition Requirements

For the A/D converter to meet its specified accuracy, the charge holding capacitor (C_{HOLD}) must be allowed to fully charge to the input channel voltage level. The analog input model is shown in Figure 15-3. The source impedance (R_S) and the internal sampling switch (R_{SS}) impedance directly affect the time required to charge the capacitor C_{HOLD}. The sampling switch (R_{SS}) impedance varies over the device voltage (V_{DD}). The source impedance affects the offset voltage at the analog input (due to pin leakage current). **The maximum recommended impedance for analog sources is 2.5 kΩ**. After the analog input channel is selected (changed), the channel must be sampled for at least the minimum acquisition time before starting a conversion.

Note:	When the conversion is started, the holding capacitor is disconnected from the input pin.

To calculate the minimum acquisition time, Equation 15-1 may be used. This equation assumes that 1/2 LSb error is used (1024 steps for the A/D). The 1/2 LSb error is the maximum error allowed for the A/D to meet its specified resolution.

Example 15-3 shows the calculation of the minimum required acquisition time, T_{ACQ}. This calculation is based on the following application system assumptions:

C_{HOLD}	=	25 pF
Rs	=	2.5 kΩ
Conversion Error	≤	1/2 LSb
V_{DD}	=	5V → R_{SS} = 2 kΩ
Temperature	=	85°C (system max.)

EQUATION 15-1: ACQUISITION TIME

$$T_{ACQ} = \text{Amplifier Settling Time} + \text{Holding Capacitor Charging Time} + \text{Temperature Coefficient}$$
$$= T_{AMP} + T_C + T_{COFF}$$

EQUATION 15-2: A/D MINIMUM CHARGING TIME

$$V_{HOLD} = (V_{REF} - (V_{REF}/2048)) \bullet (1 - e^{(-T_C/C_{HOLD}(R_{IC} + R_{SS} + R_S))})$$

or

$$T_C = -(C_{HOLD})(R_{IC} + R_{SS} + R_S) \ln(1/2048)$$

EQUATION 15-3: CALCULATING THE MINIMUM REQUIRED ACQUISITION TIME

T_{ACQ} = $T_{AMP} + T_C + T_{COFF}$

T_{AMP} = 0.2 µs

T_{COFF} = (Temp – 25°C)(0.02 µs/°C)
(85°C – 25°C)(0.02 µs/°C)
1.2 µs

Temperature coefficient is only required for temperatures > 25°C. Below 25°C, T_{COFF} = 0 ms.

T_C = $-(C_{HOLD})(R_{IC} + R_{SS} + R_S) \ln(1/2047)$
-(25 pF) (1 kΩ + 2 kΩ + 2.5 kΩ) ln(0.0004883)
1.05 µs

T_{ACQ} = 0.2 µs + 1 µs + 1.2 µs
2.4 µs

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.3 Selecting and Configuring Acquisition Time

The ADCON2 register allows the user to select an acquisition time that occurs each time the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit is set. It also gives users the option to use an automatically determined acquisition time.

Acquisition time may be set with the ACQT2:ACQT0 bits (ADCON2<5:3>), which provide a range of 2 to 20 TAD. When the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit is set, the A/D module continues to sample the input for the selected acquisition time, then automatically begins a conversion. Since the acquisition time is programmed, there may be no need to wait for an acquisition time between selecting a channel and setting the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit.

Manual acquisition is selected when ACQT2:ACQT0 = `000`. When the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit is set, sampling is stopped and a conversion begins. The user is responsible for ensuring the required acquisition time has passed between selecting the desired input channel and setting the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit. This option is also the default Reset state of the ACQT2:ACQT0 bits and is compatible with devices that do not offer programmable acquisition times.

In either case, when the conversion is completed, the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit is cleared, the ADIF flag is set and the A/D begins sampling the currently selected channel again. If an acquisition time is programmed, there is nothing to indicate if the acquisition time has ended or if the conversion has begun.

15.4 Selecting the A/D Conversion Clock

The A/D conversion time per bit is defined as TAD. The A/D conversion requires 11 TAD per 10-bit conversion. The source of the A/D conversion clock is software selectable. There are seven possible options for TAD:

- 2 TOSC
- 4 TOSC
- 8 TOSC
- 16 TOSC
- 32 TOSC
- 64 TOSC
- Internal RC Oscillator

For correct A/D conversions, the A/D conversion clock (TAD) must be as short as possible, but greater than the minimum TAD (see parameter 130 for more information).

Table 15-1 shows the resultant TAD times derived from the device operating frequencies and the A/D clock source selected.

TABLE 15-1: TAD vs. DEVICE OPERATING FREQUENCIES

AD Clock Source (TAD)		Maximum Device Frequency	
Operation	**ADCS2:ADCS0**	**PIC18F1230/1330**	**PIC18LF1230/1330(4)**
2 TOSC	`000`	2.86 MHz	1.43 kHz
4 TOSC	`100`	5.71 MHz	2.86 MHz
8 TOSC	`001`	11.43 MHz	5.72 MHz
16 TOSC	`101`	22.86 MHz	11.43 MHz
32 TOSC	`010`	40.0 MHz	22.86 MHz
64 TOSC	`110`	40.0 MHz	22.86 MHz
RC(3)	`x11`	1.00 MHz(1)	1.00 MHz(2)

Note 1: The RC source has a typical TAD time of 1.2 μs.
2: The RC source has a typical TAD time of 2.5 μs.
3: For device frequencies above 1 MHz, the device must be in Sleep for the entire conversion or the A/D accuracy may be out of specification.
4: Low-power (PIC18LF1230/1330) devices only.

15.5 Operation in Power-Managed Modes

The selection of the automatic acquisition time and A/D conversion clock is determined in part by the clock source and frequency while in a power-managed mode.

If the A/D is expected to operate while the device is in a power-managed mode, the ACQT2:ACQT0 and ADCS2:ADCS0 bits in ADCON2 should be updated in accordance with the clock source to be used in that mode. After entering the mode, an A/D acquisition or conversion may be started. Once started, the device should continue to be clocked by the same clock source until the conversion has been completed.

If desired, the device may be placed into the corresponding Idle mode during the conversion. If the device clock frequency is less than 1 MHz, the A/D RC clock source should be selected.

Operation in Sleep mode requires the A/D FRC clock to be selected. If bits ACQT2:ACQT0 are set to '`000`' and a conversion is started, the conversion will be delayed one instruction cycle to allow execution of the `SLEEP` instruction and entry to Sleep mode. The IDLEN bit (OSCCON<7>) must have already been cleared prior to starting the conversion.

15.6 Configuring Analog Port Pins

The ADCON1 and TRISA registers configure the A/D port pins. The port pins needed as analog inputs must have their corresponding TRIS bits set (input). If the TRIS bit is cleared (output), the digital output level (V_{OH} or V_{OL}) will be converted.

The A/D operation is independent of the state of the CHS1:CHS0 bits and the TRIS bits.

Note 1: When reading the PORT register, all pins configured as analog input channels will read as cleared (a low level). Pins configured as digital inputs will convert as analog inputs. Analog levels on a digitally configured input will be accurately converted.

2: Analog levels on any pin defined as a digital input may cause the digital input buffer to consume current out of the device's specification limits.

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.7 A/D Conversions

Figure 15-4 shows the operation of the A/D converter after the GO/DONE bit has been set and the ACQT2:ACQT0 bits are cleared. A conversion is started after the following instruction to allow entry into Sleep mode before the conversion begins.

Figure 15-5 shows the operation of the A/D converter after the GO/DONE bit has been set, the ACQT2:ACQT0 bits are set to '010' and a 4 TAD acquisition time is selected before the conversion starts.

Clearing the GO/DONE bit during a conversion will abort the current conversion. The A/D Result register pair will NOT be updated with the partially completed A/D conversion sample. This means that the ADRESH:ADRESL registers will continue to contain the value of the last completed conversion (or the last value written to the ADRESH:ADRESL registers).

After the A/D conversion is completed or aborted, a 2 TAD wait is required before the next acquisition can be started. After this wait, acquisition on the selected channel is automatically started.

Note:	The GO/DONE bit should **NOT** be set in the same instruction that turns on the A/D.

15.8 Discharge

The discharge phase is used to initialize the value of the capacitor array. The array is discharged before every sample. This feature helps to optimize the unity-gain amplifier, as the circuit always needs to charge the capacitor array, rather than charge/discharge based on previous measure values.

FIGURE 15-4: A/D CONVERSION TAD CYCLES (ACQT<2:0> = 000, TACQ = 0)

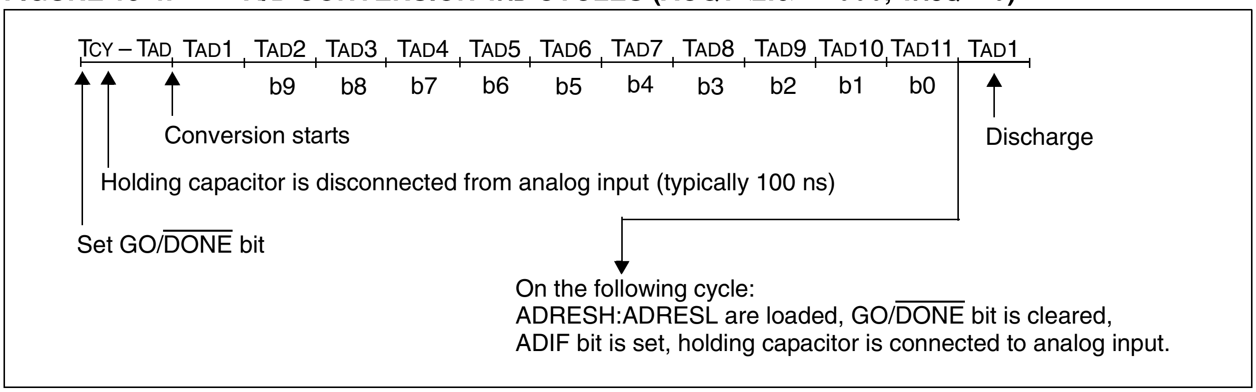


FIGURE 15-5: A/D CONVERSION TAD CYCLES (ACQT<2:0> = 010, TACQ = 4 TAD)

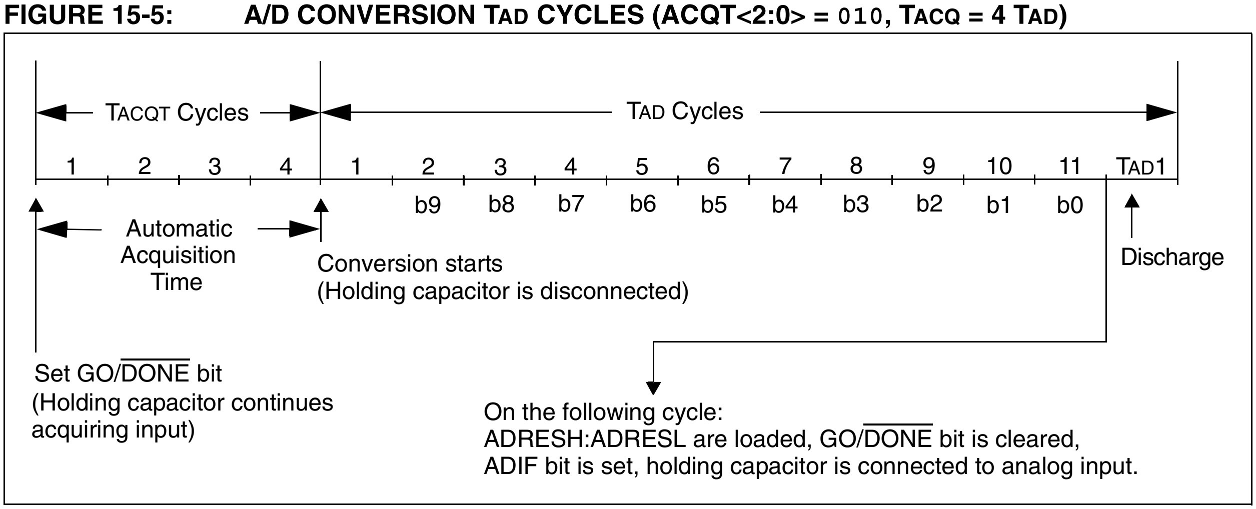


TABLE 15-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH A/D OPERATION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	CMP2IF	CMP1IF	CMP0IF	TMR1IF	43
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	CMP2IE	CMP1IE	CMP0IE	TMR1IE	43
IPR1	—	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	CMP2IP	CMP1IP	CMP0IP	TMR1IP	43
ADRESH	A/D Result Register High Byte								42
ADRESL	A/D Result Register Low Byte								42
ADCON0	SEVTEN	—	—	—	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	ADON	42
ADCON1	—	—	—	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	42
ADCON2	ADFM	—	ACQT2	ACQT1	ACQT0	ADCS2	ADCS1	ADCS0	42
PORTA	RA7(1)	RA6(1)	RA5(2)	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	44
TRISA	TRISA7(1)	TRISA6(1)	PORTA Data Direction Control Register						43

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for A/D conversion.

Note 1: PORTA<7:6> and their direction bits are individually configured as port pins based on various primary oscillator modes. When disabled, these bits read as '0'.

2: The RA5 bit is only available when Master Clear Reset is disabled (MCLRE Configuration bit = 0); otherwise, RA5 reads as '0'. This bit is read-only.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

16.0 COMPARATOR MODULE

The analog comparator module contains three comparators. The inputs can be selected from the analog inputs multiplexed with pins RA0, RB2 and RB3, as well as the on-chip voltage reference (see **Section 17.0 "Comparator Voltage Reference Module"**). The digital outputs are not available at the pin level and can only be read through the control register, CMCON (Register 16-1). CMCON also selects the comparator input.

REGISTER 16-1: CMCON: COMPARATOR CONTROL REGISTER

R-0	R-0	R-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
C2OUT	C1OUT	C0OUT	—	—	CMEN2	CMEN1	CMEN0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	**C2OUT**: Comparator 2 Output bit 1 = C2 V_{IN+} > C2 V_{IN-} (CV_{REF}) 0 = C2 V_{IN+} < C2 V_{IN-} (CV_{REF})
bit 6	**C1OUT**: Comparator 1 Output bit 1 = C1 V_{IN+} > C1 V_{IN-} (CV_{REF}) 0 = C1 V_{IN+} < C1 V_{IN-} (CV_{REF})-
bit 5	**C0OUT**: Comparator 0 Output bit 1 = C0 V_{IN+} > C0 V_{IN-} (CV_{REF}) 0 = C0 V_{IN+} < C0 V_{IN-} (CV_{REF})
bit 4-3	**Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
bit 2	**CMEN2**: Comparator 2 Enable bit 1 = Comparator 2 is enabled 0 = Comparator 2 is disabled
bit 1	**CMEN1**: Comparator 1 Enable bit 1 = Comparator 1 is enabled 0 = Comparator 1 is disabled
bit 0	**CMEN0**: Comparator 0 Enable bit 1 = Comparator 0 is enabled 0 = Comparator 0 is disabled

16.1 Comparator Configuration

For every analog comparator, there is a control bit called CMENx in the CMCON register. By setting the CMENx bit, the corresponding comparator can be enabled. If the Comparator mode is changed, the comparator output level may not be valid for the specified mode change delay shown in **Section 22.0 “Electrical Characteristics”**.

Note:	Comparator interrupts should be disabled during a Comparator mode change; otherwise, a false interrupt may occur.

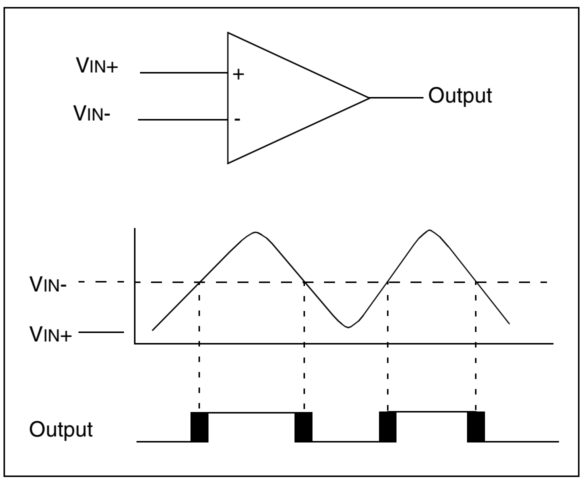
16.2 Comparator Operation

A single comparator is shown in Figure 16-1, along with the relationship between the analog input levels and the digital output. When the analog input at V_{IN}+ (CMPx) is less than the analog input V_{IN}- (CV_{REF}), the output of the comparator is a digital low level. When the analog input at V_{IN}+ (CMPx) is greater than the analog input V_{IN}- (CV_{REF}), the output of the comparator is a digital high level. The shaded areas of the output of the comparator in Figure 16-1 represent the uncertainty due to input offsets and response time.

16.3 Comparator Reference

In this comparator module, an internal voltage reference is used (see **Section 17.0 “Comparator Voltage Reference Module”**).

FIGURE 16-1: SINGLE COMPARATOR



16.4 Comparator Response Time

Response time is the minimum time, after selecting a new reference voltage or input source, before the comparator output has a valid level. If the internal reference is changed, the maximum delay of the internal voltage reference must be considered when using the comparator outputs. Otherwise, the maximum delay of the comparators should be used (see **Section 22.0 “Electrical Characteristics”**).

16.5 Comparator Outputs

The comparator outputs are read through the CxOUT bits of the CMCON register. These bits are read-only. The uncertainty of each of the comparators is related to the input offset voltage and the response time given in the specifications.

Note 1:	When reading the PORT register, all pins configured as analog inputs will read as a ‘0’. Pins configured as digital inputs will convert an analog input according to the Schmitt Trigger input specification.
2:	Analog levels on any pin defined as a digital input may cause the input buffer to consume more current than is specified.

16.6 Comparator Interrupts

The comparator interrupt flag is set whenever there is a change in the output value of the corresponding comparator. Software will need to maintain information about the status of the output bits, as read from CMCON<7:5>, to determine the actual change that occurred. The CMPxIF bit (PIR1<3:1>) is the Comparator Interrupt Flag. The CMPxIF bit must be reset by clearing it. Since it is also possible to write a ‘1’ to this register, a simulated interrupt may be initiated.

Both the CMPxIE bit (PIE1<3:1>) and the PEIE bit (INTCON<6>) must be set to enable the interrupt for the corresponding comparator. In addition, the GIE bit (INTCON<7>) must also be set. If any of these bits are clear, the interrupt is not enabled, though the CMPxIF bit will still be set if an interrupt condition occurs.

Note:	If a change in the CMCON register (C2OUT, C1OUT or C0OUT) should occur when a read operation is being executed (start of the Q2 cycle), then the CMPxIF (PIR1 register) interrupt flag may not get set.

The user, in the Interrupt Service Routine, can clear the interrupt in the following manner:

a) Any read or write of CMCON will end the mismatch condition.

b) Clear flag bit CMPxIF.

A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit CMPxIF. Reading CMCON will end the mismatch condition and allow flag bit CMPxIF to be cleared.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

16.7 Comparator Operation During Sleep

When a comparator is active and the device is placed in Sleep mode, the comparator remains active and the interrupt is functional if enabled. This interrupt will wake-up the device from Sleep mode when enabled. Each operational comparator will consume additional current, as shown in the comparator specifications. To minimize power consumption while in Sleep mode, turn off the comparators (CMEN2:CMEN0 = 000) before entering Sleep. If the device wakes up from Sleep, the contents of the CMCON register are not affected.

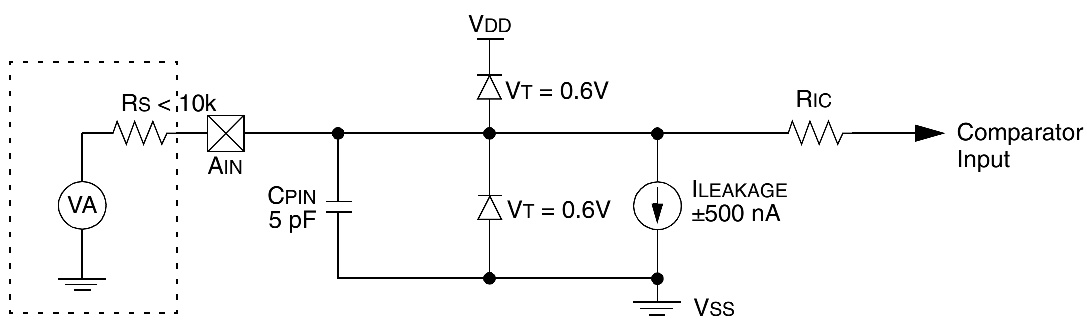
16.8 Effects of a Reset

A device Reset forces the CMCON register to its Reset state, causing the comparator modules to be turned off (CMEN2:CMEN0 = 000).

16.9 Analog Input Connection Considerations

A simplified circuit for an analog input is shown in Figure 16-2. Since the analog pins are connected to a digital output, they have reverse biased diodes to V_{DD} and V_{SS}. The analog input, therefore, must be between V_{SS} and V_{DD}. If the input voltage deviates from this range by more than 0.6V in either direction, one of the diodes is forward biased and a latch-up condition may occur. A maximum source impedance of 10 kΩ is recommended for the analog sources. Any external component connected to an analog input pin, such as a capacitor or Zener diode, should have very little leakage current.

FIGURE 16-2: COMPARATOR ANALOG INPUT MODEL



Legend:

C_{PIN}	=	Input Capacitance
V_T	=	Threshold Voltage
$I_{LEAKAGE}$	=	Leakage Current at the pin due to various junctions
R_{IC}	=	Interconnect Resistance
R_S	=	Source Impedance
VA	=	Analog Voltage

TABLE 16-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH COMPARATOR MODULE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C0OUT	—	—	CMEN2	CMEN1	CMEN0	42
CVRCON	CVREN	—	CVRR	CVRSS	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0	42
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
PIR1	—	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	CMP2IF	CMP1IF	CMP0IF	TMR1IF	43
PIE1	—	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	CMP2IE	CMP1IE	CMP0IE	TMR1IE	43
IPR1	—	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	CMP2IP	CMP1IP	CMP0IP	TMR1IP	43
PORTA	RA7(1)	RA6(1)	RA5(2)	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	44
LATA	LATA7(1)	LATA6(1)	PORTA Data Latch Register (Read and Write to Data Latch)						43
TRISA	TRISA7(1)	TRISA6(1)	PORTA Data Direction Control Register						43
PORTB	RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	RB3	RB2	RB1	RB0	44
LATB	PORTB Data Latch Register (Read and Write to Data Latch)								43
TRISB	PORTB Data Direction Control Register								43

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are unused by the comparator module.

Note 1: PORTA<7:6> and their direction and latch bits are individually configured as port pins based on various primary oscillator modes. When disabled, these bits read as '0'.

2: The RA5 bit is only available when Master Clear Reset is disabled (MCLRE Configuration bit = 0); otherwise, RA5 reads as '0'. This bit is read-only.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

17.0 COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE MODULE

The comparator voltage reference is a 16-tap resistor ladder network that provides a selectable reference voltage. Its purpose is to provide a reference for the analog comparators.

A block diagram of the module is shown in Figure 17-1. The resistor ladder is segmented to provide two ranges of CVREF values and has a power-down function to conserve power when the reference is not being used. The module's supply reference can be provided from either device VDD/VSS or an external voltage reference.

17.1 Configuring the Comparator Voltage Reference

The voltage reference module is controlled through the CVRCON register (Register 17-1). The comparator voltage reference provides two ranges of output voltage, each with 16 distinct levels. The range to be used is selected by the CVRR bit (CVRCON<5>). The primary difference between the ranges is the size of the steps selected by the CVREF selection bits (CVR3:CVR0), with one range offering finer resolution. The equations used to calculate the output of the comparator voltage reference are as follows:

If CVRR = 1:
CVREF = ((CVR3:CVR0)/24) x CVRSRC

If CVRR = 0:
CVREF = (CVRSRC x 1/4) + (((CVR3:CVR0)/32) x CVRSRC)

The comparator reference supply voltage can come from either AVDD or AVSS, or the external VREF+ that is multiplexed with RA4 and AVSS. The voltage source is selected by the CVRSS bit (CVRCON<4>).

The settling time of the comparator voltage reference must be considered when changing the CVREF output (see Table 22-3 in **Section 22.0 "Electrical Characteristics"**).

REGISTER 17-1: CVRCON: COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
CVREN	—	CVRR	CVRSS	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **CVREN**: Comparator Voltage Reference Enable bit
1 = CVREF circuit powered on
0 = CVREF circuit powered down

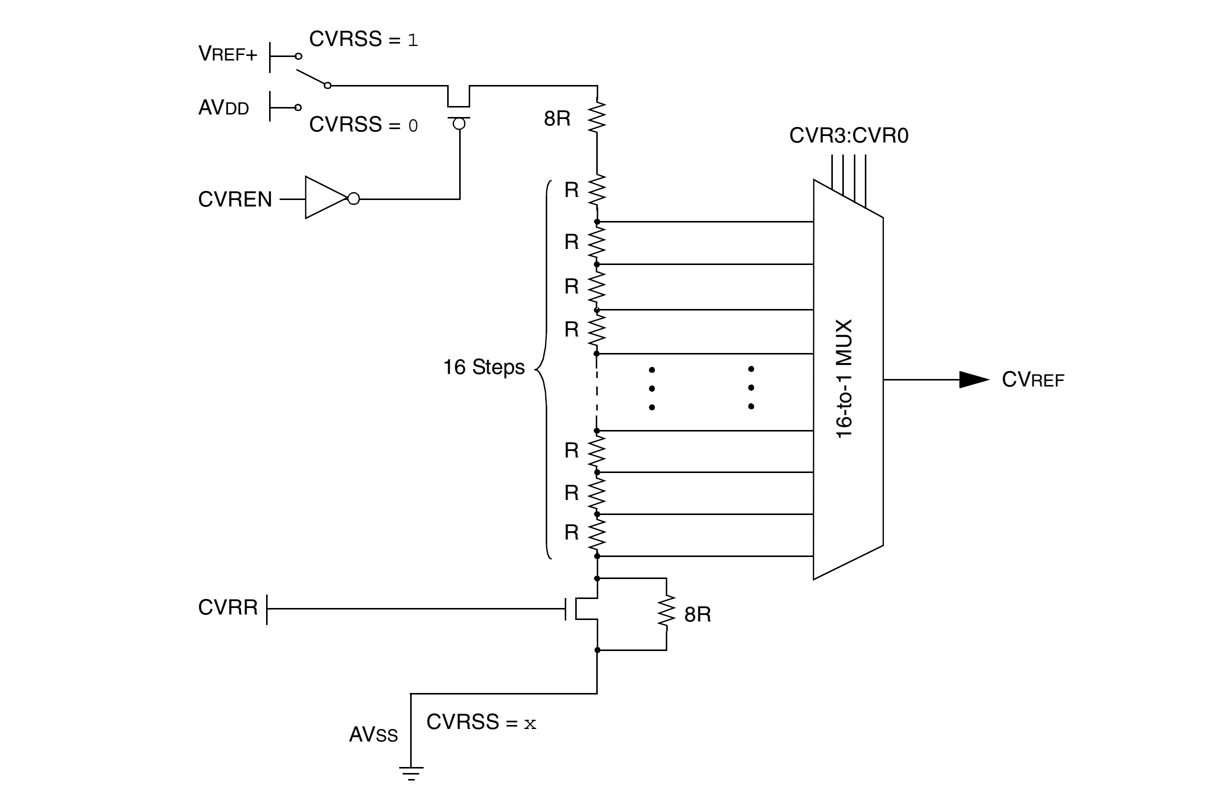
bit 6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5 **CVRR**: Comparator VREF Range Selection bit
1 = 0 to 0.667 CVRSRC, with CVRSRC/24 step size (low range)
0 = 0.25 CVRSRC to 0.75 CVRSRC, with CVRSRC/32 step size (high range)

bit 4 **CVRSS**: Comparator VREF Source Selection bit
1 = Comparator reference source, CVRSRC = (VREF+) – (AVSS)
0 = Comparator reference source, CVRSRC = AVDD – AVSS

bit 3-0 **CVR3:CVR0:** Comparator VREF Value Selection bits (0 ≤ (CVR3:CVR0) ≤ 15)
When CVRR = 1:
CVREF = ((CVR3:CVR0)/24) • (CVRSRC)
When CVRR = 0:
CVREF = (CVRSRC/4) + ((CVR3:CVR0)/32) • (CVRSRC)

FIGURE 17-1: COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE BLOCK DIAGRAM



17.2 Voltage Reference Accuracy/Error

The full range of voltage reference cannot be realized due to the construction of the module. The transistors on the top and bottom of the resistor ladder network (Figure 17-1) keep CVREF from approaching the reference source rails. The voltage reference is derived from the reference source; therefore, the CVREF output changes with fluctuations in that source. The tested absolute accuracy of the voltage reference can be found in **Section 22.0 "Electrical Characteristics"**.

17.3 Operation During Sleep

When the device wakes up from Sleep through an interrupt or a Watchdog Timer time-out, the contents of the CVRCON register are not affected. To minimize current consumption in Sleep mode, the voltage reference should be disabled.

17.4 Effects of a Reset

A device Reset disables the voltage reference by clearing bit, CVREN (CVRCON<7>). This Reset selects the high-voltage range by clearing bit, CVRR (CVRCON<5>). The CVR value select bits are also cleared.

TABLE 17-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
CVRCON	CVREN	—	CVRR	CVRSS	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0	42
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C0OUT	—	—	CMEN2	CMEN1	CMEN0	42

Legend: Shaded cells are not used with the comparator voltage reference.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

18.0 LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT (LVD)

PIC18F1230/1330 devices have a Low-Voltage Detect module (LVD). This is a programmable circuit that allows the user to specify the device voltage trip point. If the device experiences an excursion past the trip point, an interrupt flag is set. If the interrupt is enabled, the program execution will branch to the interrupt vector address and the software can then respond to the interrupt.

The Low-Voltage Detect Control register (Register 18-1) completely controls the operation of the LVD module. This allows the circuitry to be "turned off" by the user under software control, which minimizes the current consumption for the device.

The block diagram for the LVD module is shown in Figure 18-1.

REGISTER 18-1: LVDCON: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-1
—	—	IRVST	LVDEN	LVDL3[(1)]	LVDL2[(1)]	LVDL1[(1)]	LVDL0[(1)]
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5 **IRVST:** Internal Reference Voltage Stable Flag bit
- 1 = Indicates that the voltage detect logic will generate the interrupt flag at the specified voltage trip point
- 0 = Indicates that the voltage detect logic will not generate the interrupt flag at the specified voltage trip point and the LVD interrupt should not be enabled

bit 4 **LVDEN:** Low-Voltage Detect Power Enable bit
- 1 = LVD enabled
- 0 = LVD disabled

bit 3-0 **LVDL3:LVDL0:** Voltage Detection Limit bits[(1)]

1111 = Reserved
1110 = Maximum setting
.
.
.
0000 = Minimum setting

Note 1: See Table 22-4 in **Section 22.0 "Electrical Characteristics"** for the specifications.

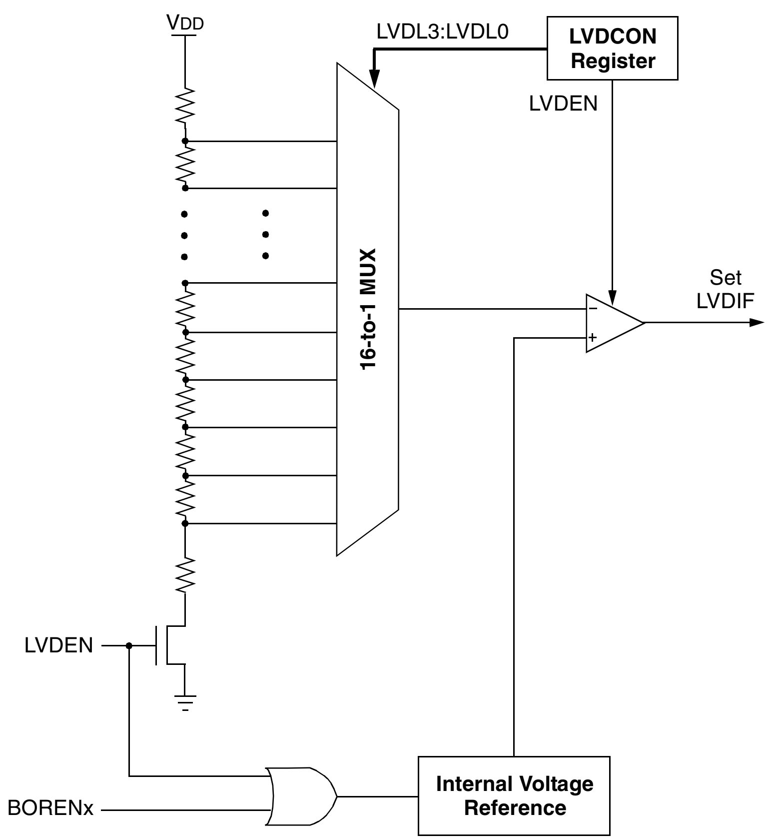
The module is enabled by setting the LVDEN bit. Each time that the LVD module is enabled, the circuitry requires some time to stabilize. The IRVST bit is a read-only bit and is used to indicate when the circuit is stable. The module can only generate an interrupt after the circuit is stable and IRVST is set.

18.1 Operation

When the LVD module is enabled, a comparator uses an internally generated reference voltage as the set point. The set point is compared with the trip point, where each node in the resistor divider represents a trip point voltage. The "trip point" voltage is the voltage level at which the device detects a low-voltage event depending on the configuration of the module. When the supply voltage is equal to the trip point, the voltage tapped off of the resistor array is equal to the internal reference voltage generated by the voltage reference module. The comparator then generates an interrupt signal by setting the LVDIF bit.

The trip point voltage is software programmable to any 1 of 15 values. The trip point is selected by programming the LVDL3:LVDL0 bits (LVDCON<3:0>).

FIGURE 18-1: LVD MODULE BLOCK DIAGRAM



© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

18.2 LVD Setup

The following steps are needed to set up the LVD module:

1. Disable the module by clearing the LVDEN bit (LVDCON<4>).
2. Write the value to the LVDL3:LVDL0 bits that selects the desired LVD trip point.
3. Enable the LVD module by setting the LVDEN bit.
4. Clear the LVD interrupt flag (PIR2<2>) which may have been set from a previous interrupt.
5. Enable the LVD interrupt, if interrupts are desired, by setting the LVDIE and GIE bits (PIE2<2> and INTCON<7>). An interrupt will not be generated until the IRVST bit is set.

18.3 Current Consumption

When the module is enabled, the LVD comparator and voltage divider are enabled and will consume static current. The total current consumption, when enabled, is specified in electrical specification parameter D022B.

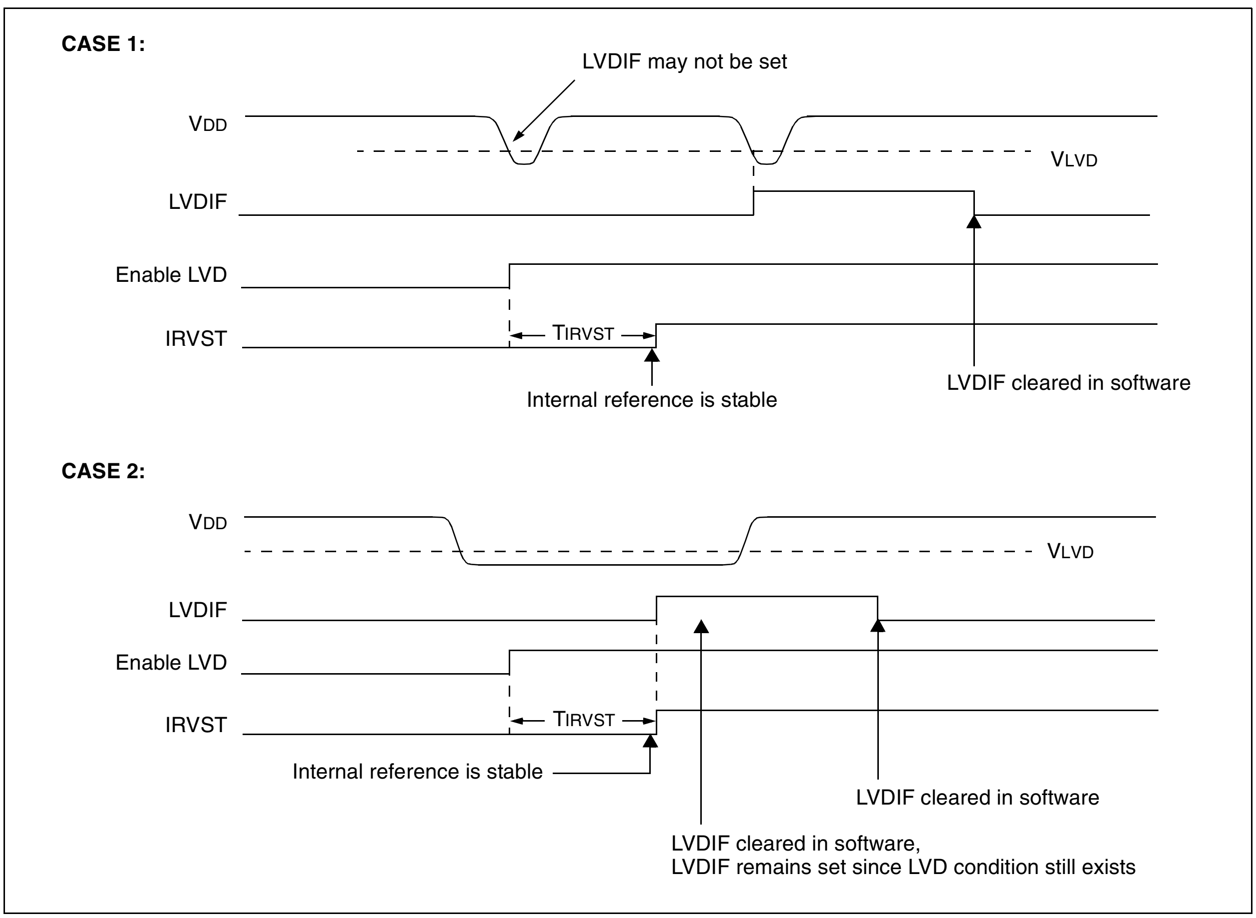
Depending on the application, the LVD module does not need to be operating constantly. To decrease the current requirements, the LVD circuitry may only need to be enabled for short periods where the voltage is checked. After doing the check, the LVD module may be disabled.

18.4 LVD Start-up Time

The internal reference voltage of the LVD module, specified in electrical specification parameter D420, may be used by other internal circuitry, such as the programmable Brown-out Reset. If the LVD or other circuits using the voltage reference are disabled to lower the device's current consumption, the reference voltage circuit will require time to become stable before a low-voltage condition can be reliably detected. This start-up time, T_{IRVST}, is an interval that is independent of device clock speed. It is specified in electrical specification parameter 36.

The LVD interrupt flag is not enabled until T_{IRVST} has expired and a stable reference voltage is reached. For this reason, brief excursions beyond the set point may not be detected during this interval (refer to Figure 18-2).

FIGURE 18-2: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT OPERATION

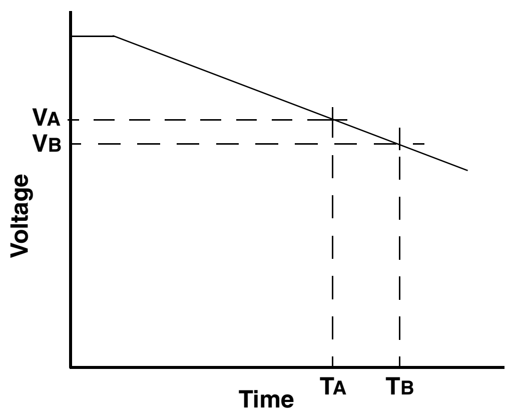


18.5 Applications

In many applications, the ability to detect a drop below a particular threshold is desirable.

For general battery applications, Figure 18-3 shows a possible voltage curve. Over time, the device voltage decreases. When the device voltage reaches voltage V_A, the LVD logic generates an interrupt at time T_A. The interrupt could cause the execution of an ISR, which would allow the application to perform "housekeeping tasks" and perform a controlled shutdown before the device voltage exits the valid operating range at T_B. The LVD, thus, would give the application a time window, represented by the difference between T_A and T_B, to safely exit.

FIGURE 18-3: TYPICAL LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT APPLICATION



Legend: V_A = LVD trip point
V_B = Minimum valid device operating voltage

18.6 Operation During Sleep

When enabled, the LVD circuitry continues to operate during Sleep. If the device voltage crosses the trip point, the LVDIF bit will be set and the device will wake-up from Sleep. Device execution will continue from the interrupt vector address if interrupts have been globally enabled.

18.7 Effects of a Reset

A device Reset forces all registers to their Reset state. This forces the LVD module to be turned off.

TABLE 18-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT MODULE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on Page
LVDCON	—	—	IRVST	LVDEN	LVDL3	LVDL2	LVDL1	LVDL0	42
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	41
PIR2	OSCFIF	—	—	EEIF	—	LVDIF	—	—	43
PIE2	OSCFIE	—	—	EEIE	—	LVDIE	—	—	43
IPR2	OSCFIP	—	—	EEIP	—	LVDIP	—	—	43

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are unused by the LVD module.

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

19.0 SPECIAL FEATURES OF THE CPU

PIC18F1230/1330 devices include several features intended to maximize reliability and minimize cost through elimination of external components. These are:

- Oscillator Selection
- Resets:
  - Power-on Reset (POR)
  - Power-up Timer (PWRT)
  - Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
  - Brown-out Reset (BOR)
- Interrupts
- Watchdog Timer (WDT)
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor
- Two-Speed Start-up
- Code Protection
- ID Locations
- In-Circuit Serial Programming

The oscillator can be configured for the application depending on frequency, power, accuracy and cost. All of the options are discussed in detail in **Section 2.0 “Oscillator Configurations”**.

A complete discussion of device Resets and interrupts is available in previous sections of this data sheet.

In addition to their Power-up and Oscillator Start-up Timers provided for Resets, PIC18F1230/1330 devices have a Watchdog Timer, which is either permanently enabled via the Configuration bits or software controlled (if configured as disabled).

The inclusion of an internal RC oscillator also provides the additional benefits of a Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) and Two-Speed Start-up. FSCM provides for background monitoring of the peripheral clock and automatic switchover in the event of its failure. Two-Speed Start-up enables code to be executed almost immediately on start-up while the primary clock source completes its start-up delays.

All of these features are enabled and configured by setting the appropriate Configuration register bits.

19.1 Configuration Bits

The Configuration bits can be programmed (read as ‘0’) or left unprogrammed (read as ‘1’) to select various device configurations. These bits are mapped starting at program memory location 300000h.

The user will note that address 300000h is beyond the user program memory space. In fact, it belongs to the configuration memory space (300000h-3FFFFFh) which can only be accessed using table reads and table writes.

Programming the Configuration registers is done in a manner similar to programming the Flash memory. The WR bit in the EECON1 register starts a self-timed write to the Configuration register. In normal operation mode, a `TBLWT` instruction with the TBLPTR pointing to the Configuration register sets up the address and data for the Configuration register write. Setting the WR bit starts a long write to the Configuration register. The Configuration registers are written a byte at a time. To write or erase a configuration cell, a `TBLWT` instruction can write a ‘1’ or a ‘0’ into the cell. For additional details on Flash programming, refer to **Section 6.5 “Writing to Flash Program Memory”**.

TABLE 19-1: CONFIGURATION BITS AND DEVICE IDs

File Name		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Default/ Unprogrammed Value
300001h	CONFIG1H	IESO	FCMEN	—	—	FOSC3	FOSC2	FOSC1	FOSC0	00-- 0111
300002h	CONFIG2L	—	—	—	BORV1	BORV0	BOREN1	BOREN0	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$	---1 1111
300003h	CONFIG2H	—	—	—	WDTPS3	WDTPS2	WDTPS1	WDTPS0	WDTEN	---1 1111
300004h	CONFIG3L	—	—	—	—	HPOL	LPOL	PWMPIN	—	---- 111-
300005h	CONFIG3H	MCLRE	—	—	—	T1OSCMX	—	—	FLTAMX	1--- 0--1
300006h	CONFIG4L	$\overline{\text{BKBUG}}$	XINST	BBSIZ1	BBSIZ0	—	—	—	STVREN	1000 ---1
300008h	CONFIG5L	—	—	—	—	—	—	CP1	CP0	---- --11
300009h	CONFIG5H	CPD	CPB	—	—	—	—	—	—	11-- ----
30000Ah	CONFIG6L	—	—	—	—	—	—	WRT1	WRT0	---- --11
30000Bh	CONFIG6H	WRTD	WRTB	WRTC	—	—	—	—	—	111- ----
30000Ch	CONFIG7L	—	—	—	—	—	—	EBTR1	EBTR0	---- --11
30000Dh	CONFIG7H	—	EBTRB	—	—	—	—	—	—	-1-- ----
3FFFFEh	DEVID1(1)	DEV2	DEV1	DEV0	REV4	REV3	REV2	REV1	REV0	See Table 19-2
3FFFFFh	DEVID2(1)	DEV10	DEV9	DEV8	DEV7	DEEV6	DEV5	DEV4	DEV3	See Table 19-2

Legend: - = unimplemented, read as ‘0’.Shaded cells are unimplemented, read as ‘0’.

Note 1: DEVID registers are read-only and cannot be programmed by the user.

REGISTER 19-1: CONFIG1H: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 1 HIGH (BYTE ADDRESS 300001h)

R/P-0	R/P-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
IESO	FCMEN	—	—	FOSC3	FOSC2	FOSC1	FOSC0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7 **IESO:** Internal/External Oscillator Switchover bit
1 = Oscillator Switchover mode enabled
0 = Oscillator Switchover mode disabled

bit 6 **FCMEN:** Fail-Safe Clock Monitor Enable bit
1 = Fail-Safe Clock Monitor enabled
0 = Fail-Safe Clock Monitor disabled

bit 5-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 3-0 **FOSC3:FOSC0:** Oscillator Selection bits
11xx = External RC oscillator, CLKO function on RA6
101x = External RC oscillator, CLKO function on RA6
1001 = Internal oscillator block, CLKO function on RA6, port function on RA7
1000 = Internal oscillator block, port function on RA6 and RA7
0111 = External RC oscillator, port function on RA6
0110 = HS oscillator, PLL enabled (Clock Frequency = 4 x FOSC1)
0101 = EC oscillator, port function on RA6
0100 = EC oscillator, CLKO function on RA6
0011 = External RC oscillator, CLKO function on RA6
0010 = HS oscillator
0001 = XT oscillator
0000 = LP oscillator

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 19-2: CONFIG2L: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 2 LOW (BYTE ADDRESS 300002h)

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	—	BORV1(1)	BORV0(1)	BOREN1(2)	BOREN0(2)	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$(2)
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 4-3 **BORV1:BORV0:** Brown-out Reset Voltage bits(1)
11 = Minimum setting
•
•
•
00 = Maximum setting

bit 2-1 **BOREN1:BOREN0:** Brown-out Reset Enable bits(2)
11 = Brown-out Reset enabled in hardware only (SBOREN is disabled)
10 = Brown-out Reset enabled in hardware only and disabled in Sleep mode (SBOREN is disabled)
01 = Brown-out Reset enabled and controlled by software (SBOREN is enabled)
00 = Brown-out Reset disabled in hardware and software

bit 0 **$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$:** Power-up Timer Enable bit(2)
1 = PWRT disabled
0 = PWRT enabled

Note 1: See **Section 22.1 “DC Characteristics”** for the specifications.
2: The Power-up Timer is decoupled from Brown-out Reset, allowing these features to be independently controlled.

REGISTER 19-3: CONFIG2H: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 2 HIGH (BYTE ADDRESS 300003h)

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	—	WDTPS3	WDTPS2	WDTPS1	WDTPS0	WDTEN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4-1 **WDTPS3:WDTPS0:** Watchdog Timer Postscale Select bits
1111 = 1:32,768
1110 = 1:16,384
1101 = 1:8,192
1100 = 1:4,096
1011 = 1:2,048
1010 = 1:1,024
1001 = 1:512
1000 = 1:256
0111 = 1:128
0110 = 1:64
0101 = 1:32
0100 = 1:16
0011 = 1:8
0010 = 1:4
0001 = 1:2
0000 = 1:1

bit 0 **WDTEN:** Watchdog Timer Enable bit
1 = WDT enabled
0 = WDT disabled (control is placed on the SWDTEN bit)

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 19-4: CONFIG3L: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 3 LOW (BYTE ADDRESS 300005h)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	U-0
—	—	—	—	HPOL(1)	LPOL(1)	PWMPIN	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 3 **HPOL:** High Side Transistors Polarity bit (Odd PWM Output Polarity Control bit)(1)
1 = PWM1, PWM3 and PWM5 are active-high (default)
0 = PWM1, PWM3 and PWM5 are active-low

bit 2 **LPOL:** Low Side Transistors Polarity bit (Even PWM Output Polarity Control bit)(1)
1 = PWM0, PWM2 and PWM4 are active-high (default)
0 = PWM0, PWM2 and PWM4 are active-low

bit 2 **PWMPIN:** PWM Output Pins Reset State Control bit
1 = PWM outputs disabled upon Reset
0 = PWM outputs drive active states upon Reset(2)

bit 0 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

Note 1: Polarity control bits, HPOL and LPOL, define PWM signal output active and inactive states, PWM states generated by the Fault inputs or PWM manual override.

2: When PWMPIN = 0, PWMEN<2:0> = 100. PWM output polarity is defined by HPOL and LPOL.

REGISTER 19-5: CONFIG3H: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 3 HIGH (BYTE ADDRESS 300005h)

R/P-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1
MCLRE	—	—	—	T1OSCMX	—	—	FLTAMX
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7 **MCLRE:** $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Pin Enable bit
1 = $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin enabled, RA5 input pin disabled
0 = RA5 input pin enabled, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin disabled

bit 6-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 3 **T1OSCMX:** T1OSO/T1CKI MUX bit
1 = T1OSO/T1CKI pin resides on RA6
0 = T1OSO/T1CKI pin resides on RB2

bit 2-1 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 0 **FLTAMX:** $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ MUX bit
1 = $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ is muxed onto RA5
0 = $\overline{\text{FLTA}}$ is muxed onto RA7

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 19-6: CONFIG4L: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 4 LOW (BYTE ADDRESS 300006h)

R/P-1	R/P-0	R/P-0	R/P-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1
$\overline{\text{BKBUG}}$	XINST	BBSIZ1	BBSIZ0	—	—	—	STVREN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7 **$\overline{\text{BKBUG}}$:** Background Debugger Enable bit
- 1 = Background debugger disabled, RB6 and RB7 configured as general purpose I/O pins
- 0 = Background debugger enabled, RB6 and RB7 are dedicated to In-Circuit Debug

bit 6 **XINST:** Extended Instruction Set Enable bit
- 1 = Instruction set extension and Indexed Addressing mode enabled
- 0 = Instruction set extension and Indexed Addressing mode disabled

bit 5-4 **BBSIZ<1:0>:** Boot Block Size Select bits

For PIC18F1330 device:
- 11 = 1 kW Boot Block size
- 10 = 1 kW Boot Block size
- 01 = 512W Boot Block size
- 00 = 256W Boot Block size

For PIC18F1230 device:
- 11 = 512W Boot Block size
- 10 = 512W Boot Block size
- 01 = 512W Boot Block size
- 00 = 256W Boot Block size

bit 3-1 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 0 **STVREN:** Stack Overflow/Underflow Reset Enable bit
- 1 = Reset on stack overflow/underflow enabled
- 0 = Reset on stack overflow/underflow disabled

REGISTER 19-7: CONFIG5L: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 5 LOW (BYTE ADDRESS 300008h)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/C-1	R/C-1
—	—	—	—	—	—	CP1	CP0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C = Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 1 **CP1:** Code Protection bit (Block 1 Code Memory Area)
1 = Block 1 is not code-protected
0 = Block 1 is code-protected

bit 0 **CP0:** Code Protection bit (Block 0 Code Memory Area)
1 = Block 0 is not code-protected
0 = Block 0 is code-protected

REGISTER 19-8: CONFIG5H: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 5 HIGH (BYTE ADDRESS 300009h)

R/C-1	R/C-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
CPD	CPB	—	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C = Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7 **CPD:** Code Protection bit (Data EEPROM)
1 = Data EEPROM is not code-protected
0 = Data EEPROM is code-protected

bit 6 **CPB:** Code Protection bit (Boot Block Memory Area)
1 = Boot Block is not code-protected
0 = Boot Block is code-protected

bit 5-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 19-9: CONFIG6L: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 6 LOW (BYTE ADDRESS 30000Ah)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/C-1	R/C-1
—	—	—	—	—	—	WRT1	WRT0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C = Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1 **WRT1:** Write Protection bit (Block 1 Code Memory Area)
1 = Block 1 is not write-protected
0 = Block 1 is write-protected

bit 0 **WRT0:** Write Protection bit (Block 0 Code Memory Area)
1 = Block 0 is not write-protected
0 = Block 0 is write-protected

REGISTER 19-10: CONFIG6H: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 6 HIGH (BYTE ADDRESS 30000Bh)

R/C-1	R/C-1	R-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
WRTD	WRTB	WRTC(1)	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C = Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7 **WRTD:** Write Protection bit (Data EEPROM)
1 = Data EEPROM is not write-protected
0 = Data EEPROM is write-protected

bit 6 **WRTB:** Write Protection bit (Boot Block Memory Area)
1 = Boot Block is not write-protected
0 = Boot Block is write-protected

bit 5 **WRTC:** Write Protection bit (Configuration Registers)(1)
1 = Configuration registers are not write-protected
0 = Configuration registers are write-protected

bit 4-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

Note 1: This bit is read-only in normal execution mode; it can be written only in Program mode.

REGISTER 19-11: CONFIG7L: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 7 LOW (BYTE ADDRESS 30000Ch)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/C-1	R/C-1
—	—	—	—	—	—	EBTR1	EBTR0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C = Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1 **EBTR1:** Table Read Protection bit (Block 1 Code Memory Area)
1 = Block 1 is not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 1 is protected from table reads executed in other blocks

bit 0 **EBTR0:** Table Read Protection bit (Block 0 Code Memory Area)
1 = Block 0 is not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 0 is protected from table reads executed in other blocks

REGISTER 19-12: CONFIG7H: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 7 HIGH (BYTE ADDRESS 30000Dh)

U-0	R/C-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
—	EBTRB	—	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C = Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **EBTRB:** Table Read Protection bit (Boot Block Memory Area)
1 = Boot Block is not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Boot Block is protected from table reads executed in other blocks

bit 5-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 19-13: DEVID1: DEVICE ID REGISTER 1 FOR PIC18F1230/1330 DEVICES

R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
DEV2	DEV1	DEV0	REV4	REV3	REV2	REV1	REV0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Read-only bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7-5 **DEV2:DEV0:** Device ID bits
These bits are used with the DEV10:DEV3 bits in the DEVID2 register to identify part number.

bit 4-0 **REV3:REV0:** Revision ID bits
These bits are used to indicate the device revision.

REGISTER 19-14: DEVID2: DEVICE ID REGISTER 2 FOR PIC18F1230/1330 DEVICES

R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
DEV10	DEV9	DEV8	DEV7	DEV6	DEV5	DEV4	DEV3
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Read-only bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
-n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

bit 7-0 **DEV10:DEV3:** Device ID bits
These bits are used with the DEV2:DEV0 bits in the DEVID1 register to identify part number.

19.2 Watchdog Timer (WDT)

For PIC18F1230/1330 devices, the WDT is driven by the INTRC source. When the WDT is enabled, the clock source is also enabled. The nominal WDT period is 4 ms and has the same stability as the INTRC oscillator.

The 4 ms period of the WDT is multiplied by a 16-bit postscaler. Any output of the WDT postscaler is selected by a multiplexer, controlled by bits in Configuration Register 2H. Available periods range from 4 ms to 131.072 seconds (2.18 minutes). The WDT and postscaler are cleared when any of the following events occur: a `SLEEP` or `CLRWDT` instruction is executed, the IRCF bits (OSCCON<6:4>) are changed or a clock failure has occurred.

Note 1: The `CLRWDT` and `SLEEP` instructions clear the WDT and postscaler counts when executed.

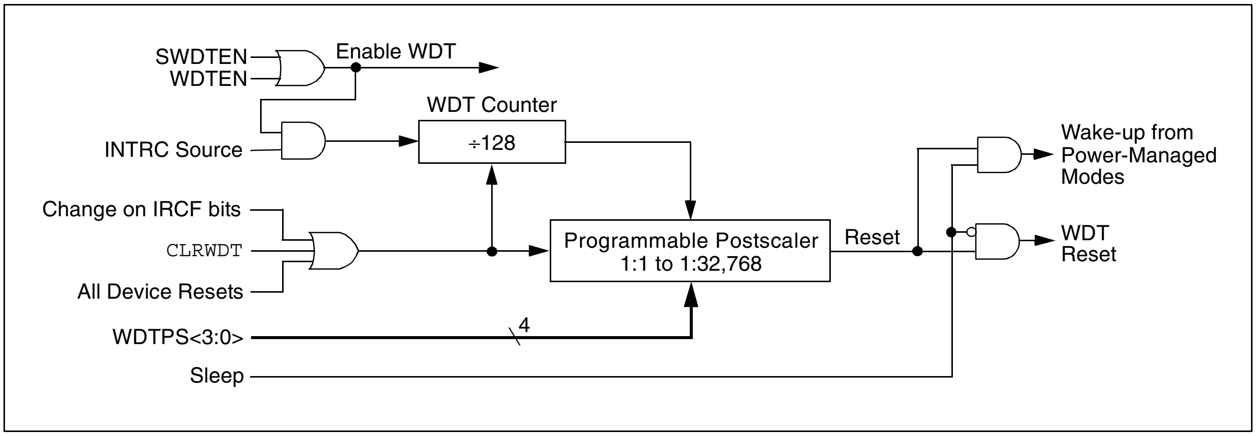
2: Changing the setting of the IRCF bits (OSCCON<6:4>) clears the WDT and postscaler counts.

3: When a `CLRWDT` instruction is executed, the postscaler count will be cleared.

19.2.1 CONTROL REGISTER

Register 19-15 shows the WDTCON register. This is a readable and writable register which contains a control bit that allows software to override the WDT enable Configuration bit, but only if the Configuration bit has disabled the WDT.

FIGURE 19-1: WDT BLOCK DIAGRAM



 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 19-15: WDTCON: WATCHDOG TIMER CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWDTEN[(1)]
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **SWDTEN:** Software Controlled Watchdog Timer Enable bit[(1)]
1 = Watchdog Timer is on
0 = Watchdog Timer is off

Note 1: This bit has no effect if the Configuration bit, WDTEN, is enabled.

TABLE 19-2: SUMMARY OF WATCHDOG TIMER REGISTERS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
RCON	IPEN	SBOREN[(1)]	—	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$	42
WDTCON	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWDTEN[(2)]	42

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Watchdog Timer.

Note 1: The SBOREN bit is only available when the BOREN1:BOREN0 Configuration bits = 01; otherwise, it is disabled and reads as '0'. See **Section 4.4 "Brown-out Reset (BOR)"**.

2: This bit has no effect if the Configuration bit, WDTEN, is enabled.

19.3 Two-Speed Start-up

The Two-Speed Start-up feature helps to minimize the latency period from oscillator start-up to code execution by allowing the microcontroller to use the INTOSC oscillator as a clock source until the primary clock source is available. It is enabled by setting the IESO Configuration bit.

Two-Speed Start-up should be enabled only if the primary oscillator mode is LP, XT, HS or HSPLL (crystal-based modes). Other sources do not require an OST start-up delay; for these, Two-Speed Start-up should be disabled.

When enabled, Resets and wake-ups from Sleep mode cause the device to configure itself to run from the internal oscillator block as the clock source, following the time-out of the Power-up Timer, after a Power-on Reset is enabled. This allows almost immediate code execution while the primary oscillator starts and the OST is running. Once the OST times out, the device automatically switches to PRI_RUN mode.

To use a higher clock speed on wake-up, the INTOSC or postscaler clock sources can be selected to provide a higher clock speed by setting bits, IRCF2:IRCF0, immediately after Reset. For wake-ups from Sleep, the INTOSC or postscaler clock sources can be selected by setting the IRCF2:IRCF0 bits prior to entering Sleep mode.

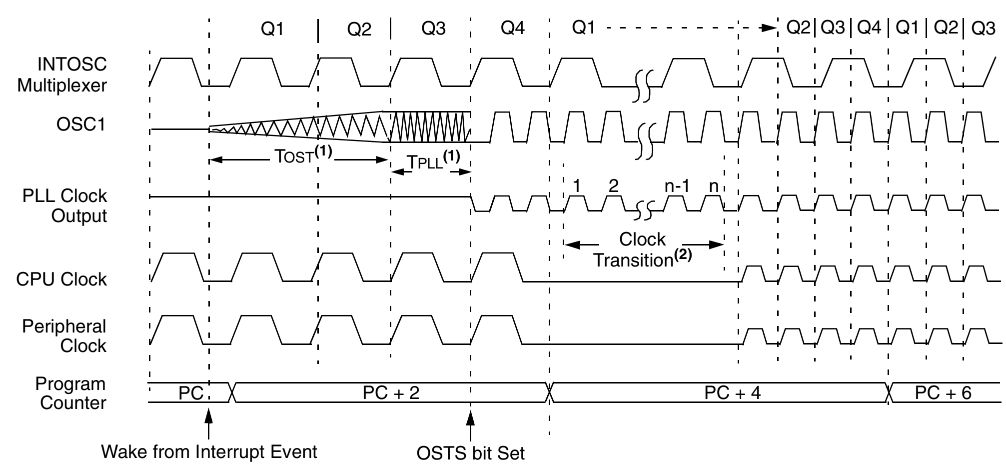
In all other power-managed modes, Two-Speed Start-up is not used. The device will be clocked by the currently selected clock source until the primary clock source becomes available. The setting of the IESO bit is ignored.

19.3.1 SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR USING TWO-SPEED START-UP

While using the INTOSC oscillator in Two-Speed Start-up, the device still obeys the normal command sequences for entering power-managed modes, including multiple `SLEEP` instructions (refer to **Section 3.1.4 "Multiple Sleep Commands"**). In practice, this means that user code can change the SCS1:SCS0 bit settings or issue `SLEEP` instructions before the OST times out. This would allow an application to briefly wake-up, perform routine "housekeeping" tasks and return to Sleep before the device starts to operate from the primary oscillator.

User code can also check if the primary clock source is currently providing the device clocking by checking the status of the OSTS bit (OSCCON<3>). If the bit is set, the primary oscillator is providing the clock. Otherwise, the internal oscillator block is providing the clock during wake-up from Reset or Sleep mode.

FIGURE 19-2: TIMING TRANSITION FOR TWO-SPEED START-UP (INTOSC TO HSPLL)



Note 1: T_{OST} = 1024 T_{OSC}; T_{PLL} = 2 ms (approx). These intervals are not shown to scale.

2: Clock transition typically occurs within 2-4 T_{OSC}.

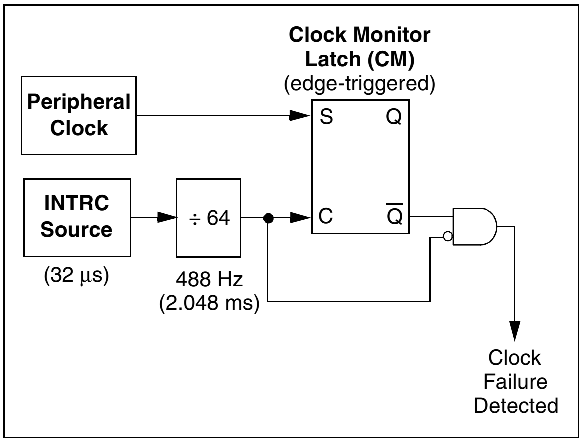
© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

19.4 Fail-Safe Clock Monitor

The Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) allows the microcontroller to continue operation in the event of an external oscillator failure by automatically switching the device clock to the internal oscillator block. The FSCM function is enabled by setting the FCMEN Configuration bit.

When FSCM is enabled, the INTRC oscillator runs at all times to monitor clocks to peripherals and provide a backup clock in the event of a clock failure. Clock monitoring (shown in Figure 19-3) is accomplished by creating a sample clock signal, which is the INTRC output divided by 64. This allows ample time between FSCM sample clocks for a peripheral clock edge to occur. The peripheral device clock and the sample clock are presented as inputs to the Clock Monitor latch (CM). The CM is set on the falling edge of the device clock source, but cleared on the rising edge of the sample clock.

FIGURE 19-3: FSCM BLOCK DIAGRAM



Clock failure is tested for on the falling edge of the sample clock. If a sample clock falling edge occurs while CM is still set, a clock failure has been detected (Figure 19-4). This causes the following:

- The FSCM generates an oscillator fail interrupt by setting bit, OSCFIF (PIR2<7>).
- The device clock source is switched to the internal oscillator block (OSCCON is not updated to show the current clock source – this is the fail-safe condition).
- The WDT is reset.

During switchover, the postscaler frequency from the internal oscillator block may not be sufficiently stable for timing sensitive applications. In these cases, it may be desirable to select another clock configuration and enter an alternate power-managed mode. This can be done to attempt a partial recovery or execute a controlled shutdown. See **Section 3.1.4 "Multiple Sleep Commands"** and **Section 19.3.1 "Special Considerations for Using Two-Speed Start-up"** for more details.

To use a higher clock speed on wake-up, the INTOSC or postscaler clock sources can be selected to provide a higher clock speed by setting bits, IRCF2:IRCF0, immediately after Reset. For wake-ups from Sleep, the INTOSC or postscaler clock sources can be selected by setting the IRCF2:IRCF0 bits prior to entering Sleep mode.

The FSCM will detect failures of the primary or secondary clock sources only. If the internal oscillator block fails, no failure would be detected, nor would any action be possible.

19.4.1 FSCM AND THE WATCHDOG TIMER

Both the FSCM and the WDT are clocked by the INTRC oscillator. Since the WDT operates with a separate divider and counter, disabling the WDT has no effect on the operation of the INTRC oscillator when the FSCM is enabled.

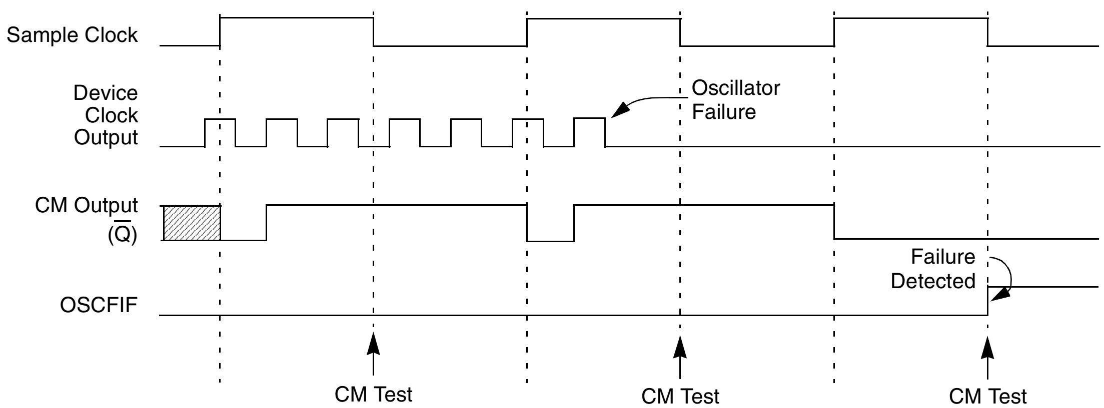
As already noted, the clock source is switched to the INTOSC clock when a clock failure is detected. Depending on the frequency selected by the IRCF2:IRCF0 bits, this may mean a substantial change in the speed of code execution. If the WDT is enabled with a small prescale value, a decrease in clock speed allows a WDT time-out to occur and a subsequent device Reset. For this reason, fail-safe clock events also reset the WDT and postscaler, allowing it to start timing from when execution speed was changed and decreasing the likelihood of an erroneous time-out.

19.4.2 EXITING FAIL-SAFE OPERATION

The fail-safe condition is terminated by either a device Reset or by entering a power-managed mode. On Reset, the controller starts the primary clock source specified in Configuration Register 1H (with any required start-up delays that are required for the oscillator mode, such as the OST or PLL timer). The INTOSC multiplexer provides the device clock until the primary clock source becomes ready (similar to a Two-Speed Start-up). The clock source is then switched to the primary clock (indicated by the OSTS bit in the OSCCON register becoming set). The Fail-Safe Clock Monitor then resumes monitoring the peripheral clock.

The primary clock source may never become ready during start-up. In this case, operation is clocked by the INTOSC multiplexer. The OSCCON register will remain in its Reset state until a power-managed mode is entered.

FIGURE 19-4: FSCM TIMING DIAGRAM



Note: The device clock is normally at a much higher frequency than the sample clock. The relative frequencies in this example have been chosen for clarity.

19.4.3 FSCM INTERRUPTS IN POWER-MANAGED MODES

By entering a power-managed mode, the clock multiplexer selects the clock source selected by the OSCCON register. Fail-Safe Clock Monitoring of the power-managed clock source resumes in the power-managed mode.

If an oscillator failure occurs during power-managed operation, the subsequent events depend on whether or not the oscillator failure interrupt is enabled. If enabled (OSCFIF = `1`), code execution will be clocked by the INTOSC multiplexer. An automatic transition back to the failed clock source will not occur.

If the interrupt is disabled, subsequent interrupts while in Idle mode will cause the CPU to begin executing instructions while being clocked by the INTOSC source.

19.4.4 POR OR WAKE FROM SLEEP

The FSCM is designed to detect oscillator failure at any point after the device has exited Power-on Reset (POR) or low-power Sleep mode. When the primary device clock is EC, RC or INTRC modes, monitoring can begin immediately following these events.

For oscillator modes involving a crystal or resonator (HS, HSPLL, LP or XT), the situation is somewhat different. Since the oscillator may require a start-up time considerably longer than the FCSM sample clock time, a false clock failure may be detected. To prevent this, the internal oscillator block is automatically configured as the device clock and functions until the primary clock is stable (the OST and PLL timers have timed out). This is identical to Two-Speed Start-up mode. Once the primary clock is stable, the INTRC returns to its role as the FSCM source.

Note:	The same logic that prevents false oscillator failure interrupts on POR, or wake from Sleep, will also prevent the detection of the oscillator's failure to start at all following these events. This can be avoided by monitoring the OSTS bit and using a timing routine to determine if the oscillator is taking too long to start. Even so, no oscillator failure interrupt will be flagged.

As noted in **Section 19.3.1 "Special Considerations for Using Two-Speed Start-up"**, it is also possible to select another clock configuration and enter an alternate power-managed mode while waiting for the primary clock to become stable. When the new power-managed mode is selected, the primary clock is disabled.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

19.5 Program Verification and Code Protection

The overall structure of the code protection on the PIC18 Flash devices differs significantly from other PICmicro® devices.

The user program memory is divided into three blocks. One of these is a Boot Block of variable size (maximum 2 Kbytes). The remainder of the memory is divided into two blocks on binary boundaries.

Each of the three blocks has three code protection bits associated with them. They are:

- Code-Protect bit (CPx)
- Write-Protect bit (WRTx)
- External Block Table Read bit (EBTRx)

Figure 19-5 shows the program memory organization for 4 and 8-Kbyte devices and the specific code protection bit associated with each block. The actual locations of the bits are summarized in Table 19-3.

FIGURE 19-5: CODE-PROTECTED PROGRAM MEMORY FOR PIC18F1230/1330

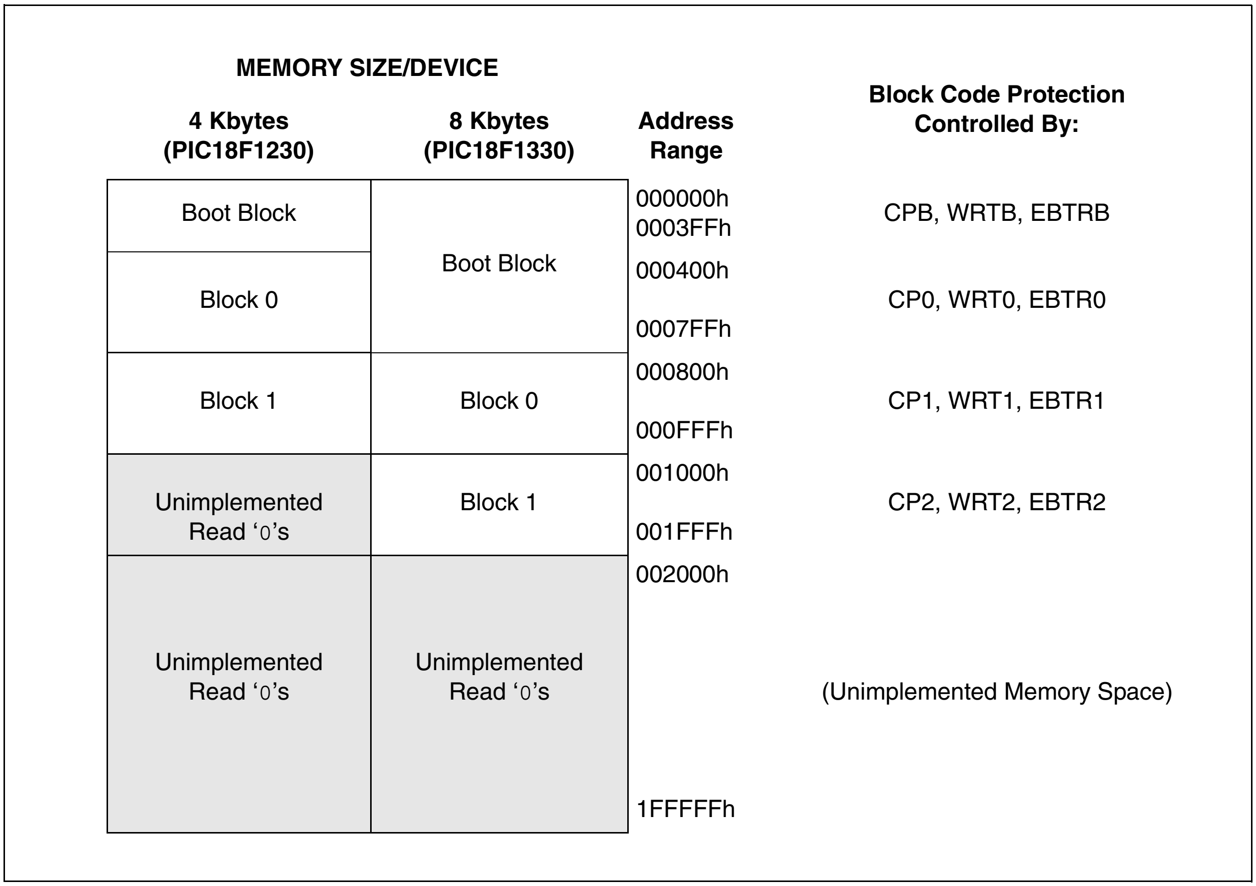


TABLE 19-3: SUMMARY OF CODE PROTECTION REGISTERS

File Name		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
300008h	CONFIG5L	—	—	—	—	—	—	CP1	CP0
300009h	CONFIG5H	CPD	CPB	—	—	—	—	—	—
30000Ah	CONFIG6L	—	—	—	—	—	—	WRT1	WRT0
30000Bh	CONFIG6H	WRTD	WRTB	WRTC	—	—	—	—	—
30000Ch	CONFIG7L	—	—	—	—	—	—	EBTR1	EBTR0
30000Dh	CONFIG7H	—	EBTRB	—	—	—	—	—	—

Legend: Shaded cells are unimplemented.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

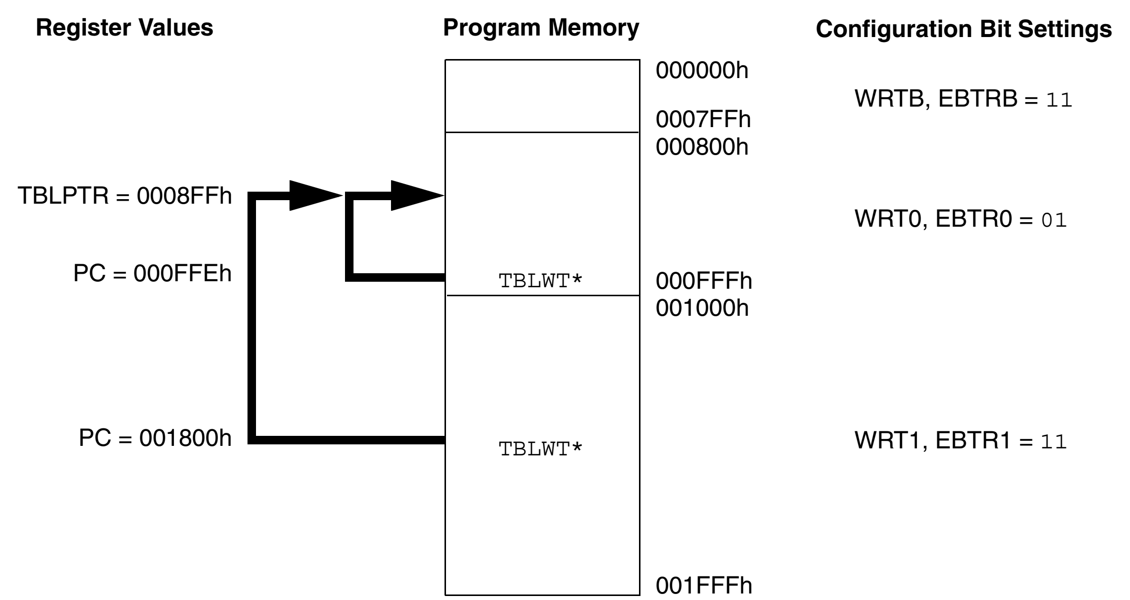
19.5.1 PROGRAM MEMORY CODE PROTECTION

The program memory may be read to or written from any location using the table read and table write instructions. The Device ID may be read with table reads. The Configuration registers may be read and written with the table read and table write instructions.

In normal execution mode, the CPx bits have no direct effect. CPx bits inhibit external reads and writes. A block of user memory may be protected from table writes if the WRTx Configuration bit is '0'. The EBTRx bits control table reads. For a block of user memory with the EBTRx bit set to '0', a table read instruction that executes from within that block is allowed to read. A table read instruction that executes from a location outside of that block is not allowed to read and will result in reading '0's. Figures 19-6 through 19-8 illustrate table write and table read protection.

> **Note:** Code protection bits may only be written to a '0' from a '1' state. It is not possible to write a '1' to a bit in the '0' state. Code protection bits are only set to '1' by a full chip erase or block erase function. The full chip erase and block erase functions can only be initiated via ICSP operation or an external programmer.

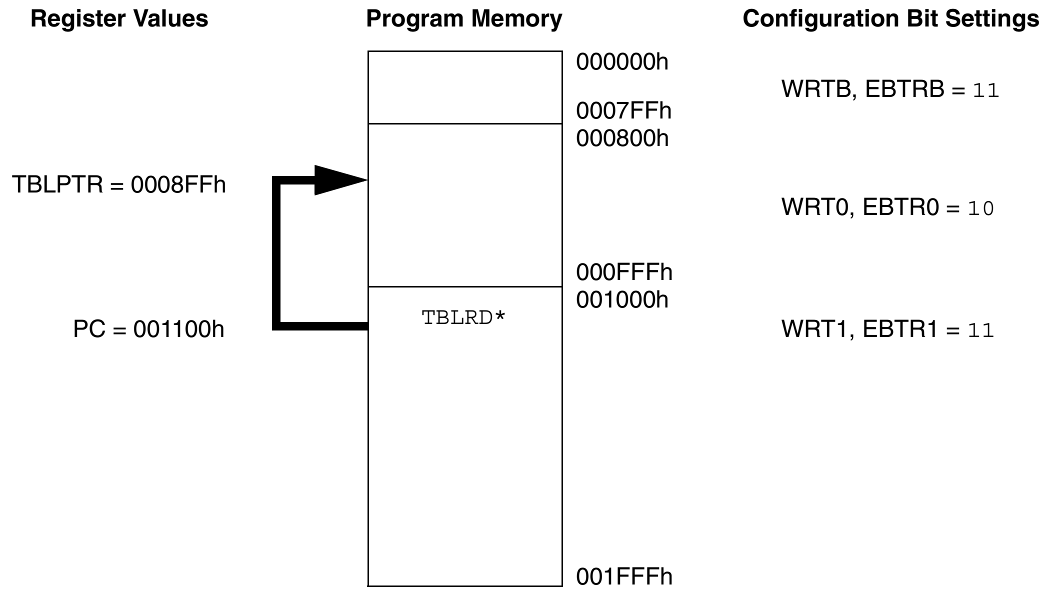
FIGURE 19-6: TABLE WRITE (WRTx) DISALLOWED



Results: All table writes disabled to Blockn whenever WRTx = 0.

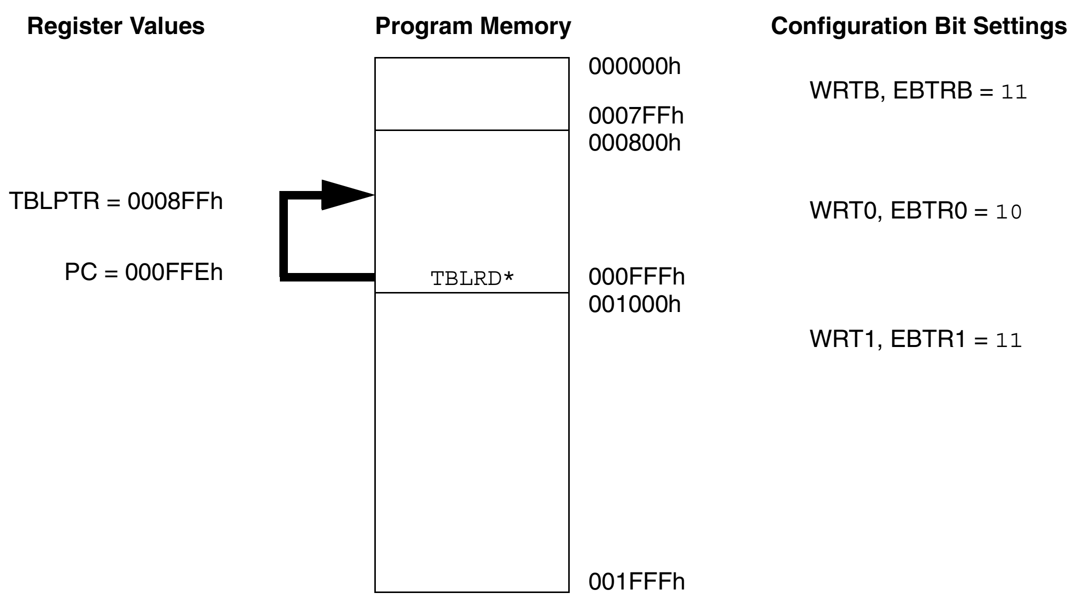
 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 19-7: EXTERNAL BLOCK TABLE READ (EBTRx) DISALLOWED



Results: All table reads from external blocks to Blockn are disabled whenever EBTRx = 0.
TABLAT register returns a value of '0'.

FIGURE 19-8: EXTERNAL BLOCK TABLE READ (EBTRx) ALLOWED



Results: Table reads permitted within Blockn, even when EBTRBx = 0.
TABLAT register returns the value of the data at the location TBLPTR.

19.5.2 DATA EEPROM CODE PROTECTION

The entire data EEPROM is protected from external reads and writes by two bits: CPD and WRTD. CPD inhibits external reads and writes of data EEPROM. WRTD inhibits internal and external writes to data EEPROM. The CPU can always read data EEPROM under normal operation, regardless of the protection bit settings.

19.5.3 CONFIGURATION REGISTER PROTECTION

The Configuration registers can be write-protected. The WRTC bit controls protection of the Configuration registers. In normal execution mode, the WRTC bit is read-only. WRTC can only be written via ICSP operation or an external programmer.

19.6 ID Locations

Eight memory locations (200000h-200007h) are designated as ID locations, where the user can store checksum or other code identification numbers. These locations are both readable and writable during normal execution through the `TBLRD` and `TBLWT` instructions or during program/verify. The ID locations can be read when the device is code-protected.

19.7 In-Circuit Serial Programming

PIC18F1230/1330 microcontrollers can be serially programmed while in the end application circuit. This is simply done with two lines for clock and data and three other lines for power, ground and the programming voltage. This allows customers to manufacture boards with unprogrammed devices and then program the microcontroller just before shipping the product. This also allows the most recent firmware or a custom firmware to be programmed.

19.8 In-Circuit Debugger

When the $\overline{\text{BKBUG}}$ Configuration bit is programmed to a '0', the In-Circuit Debugger functionality is enabled. This function allows simple debugging functions when used with MPLAB® IDE. When the microcontroller has this feature enabled, some resources are not available for general use. Table 19-4 shows which resources are required by the background debugger.

TABLE 19-4: DEBUGGER RESOURCES

I/O pins:	RB6, RB7
Stack:	2 levels
Program Memory:	512 bytes
Data Memory:	10 bytes

To use the In-Circuit Debugger function of the microcontroller, the design must implement In-Circuit Serial Programming connections to $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP/RA5/$\overline{\text{FLTA}}$, VDD, VSS, RB7/PWM5/PGD and RB6/PWM4/PGC. This will interface to the In-Circuit Debugger module available from Microchip or one of the third party development tool companies.

19.9 Single-Supply ICSP Programming

The PIC18F1230/1330 device family does not support Low-Voltage ICSP Programming or LVP. This device family can only be programmed using high-voltage ICSP programming. For more details, refer to the *"PIC18F1230/1330 Flash Microcontroller Programming Specification"* (DS39752).

Memory that is not code-protected can be erased using either a block erase, or erased row by row, then written at any specified VDD. If code-protected memory is to be erased, a block erase is required.

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

20.0 DEVELOPMENT SUPPORT

The PICmicro® microcontrollers are supported with a full range of hardware and software development tools:

- Integrated Development Environment
  - MPLAB® IDE Software
- Assemblers/Compilers/Linkers
  - MPASM™ Assembler
  - MPLAB C18 and MPLAB C30 C Compilers
  - MPLINK™ Object Linker/ MPLIB™ Object Librarian
  - MPLAB ASM30 Assembler/Linker/Library
- Simulators
  - MPLAB SIM Software Simulator
- Emulators
  - MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator
  - MPLAB ICE 4000 In-Circuit Emulator
- In-Circuit Debugger
  - MPLAB ICD 2
- Device Programmers
  - PICSTART® Plus Development Programmer
  - MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer
- Low-Cost Demonstration and Development Boards and Evaluation Kits

20.1 MPLAB Integrated Development Environment Software

The MPLAB IDE software brings an ease of software development previously unseen in the 8/16-bit micro-controller market. The MPLAB IDE is a Windows® operating system-based application that contains:

- A single graphical interface to all debugging tools
  - Simulator
  - Programmer (sold separately)
  - Emulator (sold separately)
  - In-Circuit Debugger (sold separately)
- A full-featured editor with color-coded context
- A multiple project manager
- Customizable data windows with direct edit of contents
- High-level source code debugging
- Visual device initializer for easy register initialization
- Mouse over variable inspection
- Drag and drop variables from source to watch windows
- Extensive on-line help
- Integration of select third party tools, such as HI-TECH Software C Compilers and IAR C Compilers

The MPLAB IDE allows you to:

- Edit your source files (either assembly or C)
- One touch assemble (or compile) and download to PICmicro MCU emulator and simulator tools (automatically updates all project information)
- Debug using:
  - Source files (assembly or C)
  - Mixed assembly and C
  - Machine code

MPLAB IDE supports multiple debugging tools in a single development paradigm, from the cost-effective simulators, through low-cost in-circuit debuggers, to full-featured emulators. This eliminates the learning curve when upgrading to tools with increased flexibility and power.

20.2 MPASM Assembler

The MPASM Assembler is a full-featured, universal macro assembler for all PICmicro MCUs.

The MPASM Assembler generates relocatable object files for the MPLINK Object Linker, Intel® standard HEX files, MAP files to detail memory usage and symbol reference, absolute LST files that contain source lines and generated machine code and COFF files for debugging.

The MPASM Assembler features include:

- Integration into MPLAB IDE projects
- User-defined macros to streamline assembly code
- Conditional assembly for multi-purpose source files
- Directives that allow complete control over the assembly process

20.3 MPLAB C18 and MPLAB C30 C Compilers

The MPLAB C18 and MPLAB C30 Code Development Systems are complete ANSI C compilers for Microchip's PIC18 family of microcontrollers and dsPIC30F family of digital signal controllers. These compilers provide powerful integration capabilities, superior code optimization and ease of use not found with other compilers.

For easy source level debugging, the compilers provide symbol information that is optimized to the MPLAB IDE debugger.

20.4 MPLINK Object Linker/ MPLIB Object Librarian

The MPLINK Object Linker combines relocatable objects created by the MPASM Assembler and the MPLAB C18 C Compiler. It can link relocatable objects from precompiled libraries, using directives from a linker script.

The MPLIB Object Librarian manages the creation and modification of library files of precompiled code. When a routine from a library is called from a source file, only the modules that contain that routine will be linked in with the application. This allows large libraries to be used efficiently in many different applications.

The object linker/library features include:

- Efficient linking of single libraries instead of many smaller files
- Enhanced code maintainability by grouping related modules together
- Flexible creation of libraries with easy module listing, replacement, deletion and extraction

20.5 MPLAB ASM30 Assembler, Linker and Librarian

MPLAB ASM30 Assembler produces relocatable machine code from symbolic assembly language for dsPIC30F devices. MPLAB C30 C Compiler uses the assembler to produce its object file. The assembler generates relocatable object files that can then be archived or linked with other relocatable object files and archives to create an executable file. Notable features of the assembler include:

- Support for the entire dsPIC30F instruction set
- Support for fixed-point and floating-point data
- Command line interface
- Rich directive set
- Flexible macro language
- MPLAB IDE compatibility

20.6 MPLAB SIM Software Simulator

The MPLAB SIM Software Simulator allows code development in a PC-hosted environment by simulating the PICmicro MCUs and dsPIC® DSCs on an instruction level. On any given instruction, the data areas can be examined or modified and stimuli can be applied from a comprehensive stimulus controller. Registers can be logged to files for further run-time analysis. The trace buffer and logic analyzer display extend the power of the simulator to record and track program execution, actions on I/O, as well as internal registers.

The MPLAB SIM Software Simulator fully supports symbolic debugging using the MPLAB C18 and MPLAB C30 C Compilers, and the MPASM and MPLAB ASM30 Assemblers. The software simulator offers the flexibility to develop and debug code outside of the laboratory environment, making it an excellent, economical software development tool.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

20.7 MPLAB ICE 2000 High-Performance In-Circuit Emulator

The MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator is intended to provide the product development engineer with a complete microcontroller design tool set for PICmicro microcontrollers. Software control of the MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator is advanced by the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment, which allows editing, building, downloading and source debugging from a single environment.

The MPLAB ICE 2000 is a full-featured emulator system with enhanced trace, trigger and data monitoring features. Interchangeable processor modules allow the system to be easily reconfigured for emulation of different processors. The architecture of the MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator allows expansion to support new PICmicro microcontrollers.

The MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator system has been designed as a real-time emulation system with advanced features that are typically found on more expensive development tools. The PC platform and Microsoft® Windows® 32-bit operating system were chosen to best make these features available in a simple, unified application.

20.8 MPLAB ICE 4000 High-Performance In-Circuit Emulator

The MPLAB ICE 4000 In-Circuit Emulator is intended to provide the product development engineer with a complete microcontroller design tool set for high-end PICmicro MCUs and dsPIC DSCs. Software control of the MPLAB ICE 4000 In-Circuit Emulator is provided by the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment, which allows editing, building, downloading and source debugging from a single environment.

The MPLAB ICE 4000 is a premium emulator system, providing the features of MPLAB ICE 2000, but with increased emulation memory and high-speed performance for dsPIC30F and PIC18XXXX devices. Its advanced emulator features include complex triggering and timing, and up to 2 Mb of emulation memory.

The MPLAB ICE 4000 In-Circuit Emulator system has been designed as a real-time emulation system with advanced features that are typically found on more expensive development tools. The PC platform and Microsoft Windows 32-bit operating system were chosen to best make these features available in a simple, unified application.

20.9 MPLAB ICD 2 In-Circuit Debugger

Microchip's In-Circuit Debugger, MPLAB ICD 2, is a powerful, low-cost, run-time development tool, connecting to the host PC via an RS-232 or high-speed USB interface. This tool is based on the Flash PICmicro MCUs and can be used to develop for these and other PICmicro MCUs and dsPIC DSCs. The MPLAB ICD 2 utilizes the in-circuit debugging capability built into the Flash devices. This feature, along with Microchip's In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) protocol, offers cost-effective, in-circuit Flash debugging from the graphical user interface of the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment. This enables a designer to develop and debug source code by setting breakpoints, single stepping and watching variables, and CPU status and peripheral registers. Running at full speed enables testing hardware and applications in real time. MPLAB ICD 2 also serves as a development programmer for selected PICmicro devices.

20.10 MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer

The MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer is a universal, CE compliant device programmer with programmable voltage verification at V_{DDMIN} and V_{DDMAX} for maximum reliability. It features a large LCD display (128 x 64) for menus and error messages and a modular, detachable socket assembly to support various package types. The ICSP™ cable assembly is included as a standard item. In Stand-Alone mode, the MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer can read, verify and program PICmicro devices without a PC connection. It can also set code protection in this mode. The MPLAB PM3 connects to the host PC via an RS-232 or USB cable. The MPLAB PM3 has high-speed communications and optimized algorithms for quick programming of large memory devices and incorporates an SD/MMC card for file storage and secure data applications.

20.11 PICSTART Plus Development Programmer

The PICSTART Plus Development Programmer is an easy-to-use, low-cost, prototype programmer. It connects to the PC via a COM (RS-232) port. MPLAB Integrated Development Environment software makes using the programmer simple and efficient. The PICSTART Plus Development Programmer supports most PICmicro devices in DIP packages up to 40 pins. Larger pin count devices, such as the PIC16C92X and PIC17C76X, may be supported with an adapter socket. The PICSTART Plus Development Programmer is CE compliant.

20.12 Demonstration, Development and Evaluation Boards

A wide variety of demonstration, development and evaluation boards for various PICmicro MCUs and dsPIC DSCs allows quick application development on fully functional systems. Most boards include prototyping areas for adding custom circuitry and provide application firmware and source code for examination and modification.

The boards support a variety of features, including LEDs, temperature sensors, switches, speakers, RS-232 interfaces, LCD displays, potentiometers and additional EEPROM memory.

The demonstration and development boards can be used in teaching environments, for prototyping custom circuits and for learning about various microcontroller applications.

In addition to the PICDEM™ and dsPICDEM™ demonstration/development board series of circuits, Microchip has a line of evaluation kits and demonstration software for analog filter design, KEELOQ® security ICs, CAN, IrDA®, PowerSmart® battery management, SEEVAL® evaluation system, Sigma-Delta ADC, flow rate sensing, plus many more.

Check the Microchip web page (www.microchip.com) and the latest *“Product Selector Guide”* (DS00148) for the complete list of demonstration, development and evaluation kits.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

21.0 INSTRUCTION SET SUMMARY

PIC18F1230/1330 devices incorporate the standard set of 75 PIC18 core instructions, as well as an extended set of 8 new instructions for the optimization of code that is recursive or that utilizes a software stack. The extended set is discussed later in this section.

21.1 Standard Instruction Set

The standard PIC18 instruction set adds many enhancements to the previous PICmicro® MCU instruction sets, while maintaining an easy migration from these PICmicro MCU instruction sets. Most instructions are a single program memory word (16 bits), but there are four instructions that require two program memory locations.

Each single-word instruction is a 16-bit word divided into an opcode, which specifies the instruction type and one or more operands, which further specify the operation of the instruction.

The instruction set is highly orthogonal and is grouped into four basic categories:

- **Byte-oriented** operations
- **Bit-oriented** operations
- **Literal** operations
- **Control** operations

The PIC18 instruction set summary in Table 21-2 lists **byte-oriented**, **bit-oriented**, **literal** and **control** operations. Table 21-1 shows the opcode field descriptions.

Most **byte-oriented** instructions have three operands:

1. The file register (specified by 'f')
2. The destination of the result (specified by 'd')
3. The accessed memory (specified by 'a')

The file register designator 'f' specifies which file register is to be used by the instruction. The destination designator 'd' specifies where the result of the operation is to be placed. If 'd' is zero, the result is placed in the WREG register. If 'd' is one, the result is placed in the file register specified in the instruction.

All **bit-oriented** instructions have three operands:

1. The file register (specified by 'f')
2. The bit in the file register (specified by 'b')
3. The accessed memory (specified by 'a')

The bit field designator 'b' selects the number of the bit affected by the operation, while the file register designator 'f' represents the number of the file in which the bit is located.

The **literal** instructions may use some of the following operands:

- A literal value to be loaded into a file register (specified by 'k')
- The desired FSR register to load the literal value into (specified by 'f')
- No operand required (specified by '—')

The **control** instructions may use some of the following operands:

- A program memory address (specified by 'n')
- The mode of the `CALL` or `RETURN` instructions (specified by 's')
- The mode of the table read and table write instructions (specified by 'm')
- No operand required (specified by '—')

All instructions are a single word, except for four double-word instructions. These instructions were made double-word to contain the required information in 32 bits. In the second word, the 4 MSbs are '`1`'s. If this second word is executed as an instruction (by itself), it will execute as a `NOP`.

All single-word instructions are executed in a single instruction cycle, unless a conditional test is true or the program counter is changed as a result of the instruction. In these cases, the execution takes two instruction cycles, with the additional instruction cycle(s) executed as a `NOP`.

The double-word instructions execute in two instruction cycles.

One instruction cycle consists of four oscillator periods. Thus, for an oscillator frequency of 4 MHz, the normal instruction execution time is 1 μs. If a conditional test is true, or the program counter is changed as a result of an instruction, the instruction execution time is 2 μs. Two-word branch instructions (if true) would take 3 μs.

Figure 21-1 shows the general formats that the instructions can have. All examples use the convention 'nnh' to represent a hexadecimal number.

The Instruction Set Summary, shown in Table 21-2, lists the standard instructions recognized by the Microchip MPASM™ Assembler.

Section 21.1.1 "Standard Instruction Set" provides a description of each instruction.

TABLE 21-1: OPCODE FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Field	Description
a	RAM access bit a = 0: RAM location in Access RAM (BSR register is ignored) a = 1: RAM bank is specified by BSR register
bbb	Bit address within an 8-bit file register (0 to 7).
BSR	Bank Select Register. Used to select the current RAM bank.
C, DC, Z, OV, N	ALU Status bits: **C**arry, **D**igit **C**arry, **Z**ero, **Ov**erflow, **N**egative.
d	Destination select bit d = 0: store result in WREG d = 1: store result in file register f
dest	Destination: either the WREG register or the specified register file location.
f	8-bit Register file address (00h to FFh) or 2-bit FSR designator (0h to 3h).
f_s	12-bit Register file address (000h to FFFh). This is the source address.
f_d	12-bit Register file address (000h to FFFh). This is the destination address.
GIE	Global Interrupt Enable bit.
k	Literal field, constant data or label (may be either an 8-bit, 12-bit or a 20-bit value).
label	Label name.
mm * *+ *- +*	The mode of the TBLPTR register for the table read and table write instructions. Only used with table read and table write instructions: No change to register (such as TBLPTR with table reads and writes) Post-Increment register (such as TBLPTR with table reads and writes) Post-Decrement register (such as TBLPTR with table reads and writes) Pre-Increment register (such as TBLPTR with table reads and writes)
n	The relative address (2's complement number) for relative branch instructions or the direct address for Call/Branch and Return instructions.
PC	Program Counter.
PCL	Program Counter Low Byte.
PCH	Program Counter High Byte.
PCLATH	Program Counter High Byte Latch.
PCLATU	Program Counter Upper Byte Latch.
$\overline{PD}$	Power-Down bit.
PRODH	Product of Multiply High Byte.
PRODL	Product of Multiply Low Byte.
s	Fast Call/Return mode select bit s = 0: do not update into/from shadow registers s = 1: certain registers loaded into/from shadow registers (Fast mode)
TBLPTR	21-bit Table Pointer (points to a program memory location).
TABLAT	8-bit Table Latch.
$\overline{TO}$	Time-out bit.
TOS	Top-of-Stack.
u	Unused or unchanged.
WDT	Watchdog Timer.
WREG	Working register (accumulator).
x	Don't care ('0' or '1'). The assembler will generate code with x = 0. It is the recommended form of use for compatibility with all Microchip software tools.
z_s	7-bit offset value for indirect addressing of register files (source).
z_d	7-bit offset value for indirect addressing of register files (destination).
{ }	Optional argument.
[text]	Indicates an indexed address.
(text)	The contents of text.
[expr]<n>	Specifies bit n of the register indicated by the pointer expr.
→	Assigned to.
< >	Register bit field.
∈	In the set of.
italics	User-defined term (font is Courier New).

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 21-1: GENERAL FORMAT FOR INSTRUCTIONS

Byte-oriented file register operations — **Example Instruction**

15–10	9	8	7–0
OPCODE	d	a	f (FILE #)

Example: `ADDWF MYREG, W, B`

d = `0` for result destination to be WREG register
d = `1` for result destination to be file register (f)
a = `0` to force Access Bank
a = `1` for BSR to select bank
f = 8-bit file register address

Byte to Byte move operations (2-word)

15–12	11–0
OPCODE	f (Source FILE #)
`1111`	f (Destination FILE #)

Example: `MOVFF MYREG1, MYREG2`

f = 12-bit file register address

Bit-oriented file register operations

15–12	11–9	8	7–0
OPCODE	b (BIT #)	a	f (FILE #)

Example: `BSF MYREG, bit, B`

b = 3-bit position of bit in file register (f)
a = `0` to force Access Bank
a = `1` for BSR to select bank
f = 8-bit file register address

Literal operations

15–8	7–0
OPCODE	k (literal)

Example: `MOVLW 7Fh`

k = 8-bit immediate value

Control operations

`CALL`, `GOTO` and Branch operations

15–8	7–0
OPCODE	n<7:0> (literal)

15–12	11–0
`1111`	n<19:8> (literal)

Example: `GOTO Label`

n = 20-bit immediate value

15–9	8	7–0
OPCODE	S	n<7:0> (literal)

15–12	11–0
`1111`	n<19:8> (literal)

Example: `CALL MYFUNC`

S = Fast bit

15–11	10–0
OPCODE	n<10:0> (literal)

Example: `BRA MYFUNC`

15–8	7–0
OPCODE	n<7:0> (literal)

Example: `BC MYFUNC`

TABLE 21-2: PIC18FXXXX INSTRUCTION SET

Mnemonic,	Operands	Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word MSb … LSb	Status Affected	Notes
BYTE-ORIENTED OPERATIONS						
ADDWF	f, d, a	Add WREG and f	1	0010 01da0 ffff ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
ADDWFC	f, d, a	Add WREG and Carry bit to f	1	0010 0da ffff ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
ANDWF	f, d, a	AND WREG with f	1	0001 01da ffff ffff	Z, N	1,2
CLRF	f, a	Clear f	1	0110 101a ffff ffff	Z	2
COMF	f, d, a	Complement f	1	0001 11da ffff ffff	Z, N	1, 2
CPFSEQ	f, a	Compare f with WREG, skip =	1 (2 or 3)	0110 001a ffff ffff	None	4
CPFSGT	f, a	Compare f with WREG, skip >	1 (2 or 3)	0110 010a ffff ffff	None	4
CPFSLT	f, a	Compare f with WREG, skip <	1 (2 or 3)	0110 000a ffff ffff	None	1, 2
DECF	f, d, a	Decrement f	1	0000 01da ffff ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 3, 4
DECFSZ	f, d, a	Decrement f, Skip if 0	1 (2 or 3)	0010 11da ffff ffff	None	1, 2, 3, 4
DCFSNZ	f, d, a	Decrement f, Skip if Not 0	1 (2 or 3)	0100 11da ffff ffff	None	1, 2
INCF	f, d, a	Increment f	1	0010 10da ffff ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 3, 4
INCFSZ	f, d, a	Increment f, Skip if 0	1 (2 or 3)	0011 11da ffff ffff	None	4
INFSNZ	f, d, a	Increment f, Skip if Not 0	1 (2 or 3)	0100 10da ffff ffff	None	1, 2
IORWF	f, d, a	Inclusive OR WREG with f	1	0001 00da ffff ffff	Z, N	1, 2
MOVF	f, d, a	Move f	1	0101 00da ffff ffff	Z, N	1
MOVFF	f_s, f_d	Move f_s (source) to 1st word f_d (destination) 2nd word	2	1100 ffff ffff ffff 1111 ffff ffff ffff	None	
MOVWF	f, a	Move WREG to f	1	0110 111a ffff ffff	None	
MULWF	f, a	Multiply WREG with f	1	0000 001a ffff ffff	None	1, 2
NEGF	f, a	Negate f	1	0110 110a ffff ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
RLCF	f, d, a	Rotate Left f through Carry	1	0011 01da ffff ffff	C, Z, N	1, 2
RLNCF	f, d, a	Rotate Left f (No Carry)	1	0100 01da ffff ffff	Z, N	
RRCF	f, d, a	Rotate Right f through Carry	1	0011 00da ffff ffff	C, Z, N	
RRNCF	f, d, a	Rotate Right f (No Carry)	1	0100 00da ffff ffff	Z, N	
SETF	f, a	Set f	1	0110 100a ffff ffff	None	1, 2
SUBFWB	f, d, a	Subtract f from WREG with borrow	1	0101 01da ffff ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
SUBWF	f, d, a	Subtract WREG from f	1	0101 11da ffff ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
SUBWFB	f, d, a	Subtract WREG from f with borrow	1	0101 10da ffff ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
SWAPF	f, d, a	Swap nibbles in f	1	0011 10da ffff ffff	None	4
TSTFSZ	f, a	Test f, skip if 0	1 (2 or 3)	0110 011a ffff ffff	None	1, 2
XORWF	f, d, a	Exclusive OR WREG with f	1	0001 10da ffff ffff	Z, N	

Note 1: When a PORT register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1, 0`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and where applicable, 'd' = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned.

3: If the Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP`.

4: Some instructions are two-word instructions. The second word of these instructions will be executed as a `NOP` unless the first word of the instruction retrieves the information embedded in these 16 bits. This ensures that all program memory locations have a valid instruction.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 21-2: PIC18FXXXX INSTRUCTION SET (CONTINUED)

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word MSb			LSb	Status Affected	Notes
BIT-ORIENTED OPERATIONS									
BCF	f, b, a	Bit Clear f	1	1001	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
BSF	f, b, a	Bit Set f	1	1000	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
BTFSC	f, b, a	Bit Test f, Skip if Clear	1 (2 or 3)	1011	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	3, 4
BTFSS	f, b, a	Bit Test f, Skip if Set	1 (2 or 3)	1010	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	3, 4
BTG	f, d, a	Bit Toggle f	1	0111	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
CONTROL OPERATIONS									
BC	n	Branch if Carry	1 (2)	1110	0010	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BN	n	Branch if Negative	1 (2)	1110	0110	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNC	n	Branch if Not Carry	1 (2)	1110	0011	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNN	n	Branch if Not Negative	1 (2)	1110	0111	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNOV	n	Branch if Not Overflow	1 (2)	1110	0101	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNZ	n	Branch if Not Zero	1 (2)	1110	0001	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BOV	n	Branch if Overflow	1 (2)	1110	0100	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BRA	n	Branch Unconditionally	2	1101	0nnn	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BZ	n	Branch if Zero	1 (2)	1110	0000	nnnn	nnnn	None	
CALL	n, s	Call subroutine 1st word	2	1110	110s	kkkk	kkkk	None	
		2nd word		1111	kkkk	kkkk	kkkk		
CLRWDT	—	Clear Watchdog Timer	1	0000	0000	0000	0100	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$	
DAW	—	Decimal Adjust WREG	1	0000	0000	0000	0111	C	
GOTO	n	Go to address 1st word	2	1110	1111	kkkk	kkkk	None	
		2nd word		1111	kkkk	kkkk	kkkk		
NOP	—	No Operation	1	0000	0000	0000	0000	None	
NOP	—	No Operation	1	1111	xxxx	xxxx	xxxx	None	4
POP	—	Pop top of return stack (TOS)	1	0000	0000	0000	0110	None	
PUSH	—	Push top of return stack (TOS)	1	0000	0000	0000	0101	None	
RCALL	n	Relative Call	2	1101	1nnn	nnnn	nnnn	None	
RESET		Software device Reset	1	0000	0000	1111	1111	All	
RETFIE	s	Return from interrupt enable	2	0000	0000	0001	000s	GIE/GIEH, PEIE/GIEL	
RETLW	k	Return with literal in WREG	2	0000	1100	kkkk	kkkk	None	
RETURN	s	Return from Subroutine	2	0000	0000	0001	001s	None	
SLEEP	—	Go into Standby mode	1	0000	0000	0000	0011	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$	

Note 1: When a PORT register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1, 0`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and where applicable, 'd' = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned.

3: If the Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP`.

4: Some instructions are two-word instructions. The second word of these instructions will be executed as a `NOP` unless the first word of the instruction retrieves the information embedded in these 16 bits. This ensures that all program memory locations have a valid instruction.

TABLE 21-2: PIC18FXXXX INSTRUCTION SET (CONTINUED)

Mnemonic, Operands	Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word MSb … LSb	Status Affected	Notes
LITERAL OPERATIONS					
ADDLW k	Add literal and WREG	1	0000 1111 kkkk kkkk	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
ANDLW k	AND literal with WREG	1	0000 1011 kkkk kkkk	Z, N	
IORLW k	Inclusive OR literal with WREG	1	0000 1001 kkkk kkkk	Z, N	
LFSR f, k	Move literal (12-bit) 2nd word	2	1110 1110 00ff kkkk	None	
	to FSR(f) 1st word		1111 0000 kkkk kkkk		
MOVLB k	Move literal to BSR<3:0>	1	0000 0001 0000 kkkk	None	
MOVLW k	Move literal to WREG	1	0000 1110 kkkk kkkk	None	
MULLW k	Multiply literal with WREG	1	0000 1101 kkkk kkkk	None	
RETLW k	Return with literal in WREG	2	0000 1100 kkkk kkkk	None	
SUBLW k	Subtract WREG from literal	1	0000 1000 kkkk kkkk	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
XORLW k	Exclusive OR literal with WREG	1	0000 1010 kkkk kkkk	Z, N	
DATA MEMORY ↔ PROGRAM MEMORY OPERATIONS					
TBLRD*	Table Read	2	0000 0000 0000 1000	None	
TBLRD*+	Table Read with post-increment		0000 0000 0000 1001	None	
TBLRD*-	Table Read with post-decrement		0000 0000 0000 1010	None	
TBLRD+*	Table Read with pre-increment		0000 0000 0000 1011	None	
TBLWT*	Table Write	2	0000 0000 0000 1100	None	
TBLWT*+	Table Write with post-increment		0000 0000 0000 1101	None	
TBLWT*-	Table Write with post-decrement		0000 0000 0000 1110	None	
TBLWT+*	Table Write with pre-increment		0000 0000 0000 1111	None	

Note 1: When a PORT register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1, 0`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and where applicable, 'd' = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned.

3: If the Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP`.

4: Some instructions are two-word instructions. The second word of these instructions will be executed as a `NOP` unless the first word of the instruction retrieves the information embedded in these 16 bits. This ensures that all program memory locations have a valid instruction.

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

21.1.1 STANDARD INSTRUCTION SET

ADDLW **ADD Literal to W**

Syntax:	ADDLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(W) + k $\rightarrow$ W
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0000` `1111` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The contents of W are added to the 8-bit literal 'k' and the result is placed in W.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `ADDLW 15h`

Before Instruction
W = 10h
After Instruction
W = 25h

ADDWF **ADD W to f**

Syntax:	ADDWF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ d $\in$ [0,1] a $\in$ [0,1]
Operation:	(W) + (f) $\rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0010` `01da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Add W to register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \le 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ADDWF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
W = 17h
REG = 0C2h
After Instruction
W = 0D9h
REG = 0C2h

Note: All PIC18 instructions may take an optional label argument preceding the instruction mnemonic for use in symbolic addressing. If a label is used, the instruction format then becomes: {label} instruction argument(s).

ADDWFC — ADD W and Carry bit to f

Syntax:	ADDWFC f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) + (f) + (C) $\rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	N,OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0010` `00da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Add W, the Carry flag and data memory location ‘f’. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is placed in W. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is placed in data memory location ‘f’. If ‘a’ is ‘0’, the Access Bank is selected. If ‘a’ is ‘1’, the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If ‘a’ is ‘0’ and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \le 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 “Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode”** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register ‘f’	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ADDWFC REG, 0, 1`

Before Instruction
- Carry bit = 1
- REG = 02h
- W = 4Dh

After Instruction
- Carry bit = 0
- REG = 02h
- W = 50h

ANDLW — AND Literal with W

Syntax:	ANDLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(W) .AND. k $\rightarrow$ W
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	`0000` `1011` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The contents of W are ANDed with the 8-bit literal ‘k’. The result is placed in W.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal ‘k’	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `ANDLW 05Fh`

Before Instruction
- W = A3h

After Instruction
- W = 03h

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

ANDWF — AND W with f

Syntax:	ANDWF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) .AND. (f) → dest
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	0001 01da ffff ffff

0001	01da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of W are ANDed with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default).
If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default).
If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ANDWF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
- W = 17h
- REG = C2h

After Instruction
- W = 02h
- REG = C2h

BC — Branch if Carry

Syntax:	BC n
Operands:	$-128 \leq n \leq 127$
Operation:	if Carry bit is '1' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1110	0010	nnnn	nnnn

Description: If the Carry bit is '1', then the program will branch.
The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC + 2 + 2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:

If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BC 5`

Before Instruction
- PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
- If Carry = 1;
- PC = address (HERE + 12)
- If Carry = 0;
- PC = address (HERE + 2)

BCF — Bit Clear f

Syntax:	BCF f, b {,a}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 0 ≤ b ≤ 7 a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	0 → f<b>
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1001 bbba ffff ffff
Description:	Bit 'b' in register 'f' is cleared. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `BCF FLAG_REG, 7, 0`

Before Instruction
FLAG_REG = C7h
After Instruction
FLAG_REG = 47h

BN — Branch if Negative

Syntax:	BN n
Operands:	-128 ≤ n ≤ 127
Operation:	if Negative bit is '1' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 0110 nnnn nnnn
Description:	If the Negative bit is '1', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC + 2 + 2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BN Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Negative = 1;
PC = address (Jump)
If Negative = 0;
PC = address (HERE + 2)

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

BNC — Branch if Not Carry

Syntax:	BNC n
Operands:	-128 ≤ n ≤ 127
Operation:	if Carry bit is '0' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1110` `0011` `nnnn` `nnnn`
Description:	If the Carry bit is '0', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC + 2 + 2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNC Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Carry = 0;
PC = address (Jump)
If Carry = 1;
PC = address (HERE + 2)

BNN — Branch if Not Negative

Syntax:	BNN n
Operands:	-128 ≤ n ≤ 127
Operation:	if Negative bit is '0' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1110` `0111` `nnnn` `nnnn`
Description:	If the Negative bit is '0', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC + 2 + 2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNN Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Negative = 0;
PC = address (Jump)
If Negative = 1;
PC = address (HERE + 2)

BNOV — Branch if Not Overflow

Syntax:	BNOV n
Operands:	-128 ≤ n ≤ 127
Operation:	if Overflow bit is '0' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 0101 nnnn nnnn
Description:	If the Overflow bit is '0', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC + 2 + 2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNOV Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Overflow = 0;
PC = address (Jump)
If Overflow = 1;
PC = address (HERE + 2)

BNZ — Branch if Not Zero

Syntax:	BNZ n
Operands:	-128 ≤ n ≤ 127
Operation:	if Zero bit is '0' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 0001 nnnn nnnn
Description:	If the Zero bit is '0', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC + 2 + 2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNZ Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Zero = 0;
PC = address (Jump)
If Zero = 1;
PC = address (HERE + 2)

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

BRA — Unconditional Branch

Syntax: BRA n

Operands: $-1024 \le n \le 1023$

Operation: $(PC) + 2 + 2n \rightarrow PC$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1101	0nnn	nnnn	nnnn

Description: Add the 2's complement number '2n' to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC + 2 + 2n. This instruction is a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE      BRA  Jump
```

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
PC = address (Jump)

BSF — Bit Set f

Syntax: BSF f, b {,a}

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$0 \le b \le 7$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: $1 \rightarrow$ f<b>

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1000	bbba	ffff	ffff

Description: Bit 'b' in register 'f' is set.
If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default).
If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \le 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example:
```
BSF     FLAG_REG, 7, 1
```

Before Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0Ah
After Instruction
FLAG_REG = 8Ah

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

BTFSC — Bit Test File, Skip if Clear

Syntax:	BTFSC f, b {,a}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 0 ≤ b ≤ 7 a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	skip if (f<b>) = `0`
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1011` | `bbba` | `ffff` | `ffff`
Description:	If bit 'b' in register 'f' is '`0`', then the next instruction is skipped. If bit 'b' is '`0`', then the next instruction fetched during the current instruction execution is discarded and a `NOP` is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '`0`', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '`1`', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '`0`' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    BTFSC   FLAG, 1, 0
FALSE   :
TRUE    :
```

Before Instruction
PC = address (`HERE`)
After Instruction
If FLAG<1> = 0;
PC = address (`TRUE`)
If FLAG<1> = 1;
PC = address (`FALSE`)

BTFSS — Bit Test File, Skip if Set

Syntax:	BTFSS f, b {,a}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 0 ≤ b < 7 a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	skip if (f<b>) = `1`
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1010` | `bbba` | `ffff` | `ffff`
Description:	If bit 'b' in register 'f' is '`1`', then the next instruction is skipped. If bit 'b' is '`1`', then the next instruction fetched during the current instruction execution is discarded and a `NOP` is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '`0`', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '`1`', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '`0`' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    BTFSS   FLAG, 1, 0
FALSE   :
TRUE    :
```

Before Instruction
PC = address (`HERE`)
After Instruction
If FLAG<1> = 0;
PC = address (`FALSE`)
If FLAG<1> = 1;
PC = address (`TRUE`)

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

BTG — Bit Toggle f

Syntax: BTG f, b {,a}

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$0 \le b < 7$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: $(\overline{f<b>}) \to f<b>$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0111	bbba	ffff	ffff

Description: Bit 'b' in data memory location 'f' is inverted.
If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default).
If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `BTG PORTC, 4, 0`

Before Instruction:
PORTC = 0111 0101 [75h]
After Instruction:
PORTC = 0110 0101 [65h]

BOV — Branch if Overflow

Syntax: BOV n

Operands: $-128 \le n \le 127$

Operation: if Overflow bit is '1'
$(PC) + 2 + 2n \to PC$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1110	0100	nnnn	nnnn

Description: If the Overflow bit is '1', then the program will branch.
The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC + 2 + 2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BOV Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)
After Instruction
If Overflow = 1;
PC = address (Jump)
If Overflow = 0;
PC = address (HERE + 2)

BZ — Branch if Zero

Syntax:	BZ n
Operands:	-128 ≤ n ≤ 127
Operation:	if Zero bit is '1' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 | 0000 | nnnn | nnnn
Description:	If the Zero bit is '1', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC + 2 + 2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:

If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE    BZ   Jump`

Before Instruction
- PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
- If Zero = 1;
- PC = address (Jump)
- If Zero = 0;
- PC = address (HERE + 2)

CALL — Subroutine Call

Syntax:	CALL k {,s}
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 1048575 s ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(PC) + 4 → TOS, k → PC<20:1> if s = 1 (W) → WS, (STATUS) → STATUSS, (BSR) → BSRS
Status Affected:	None
Encoding: 1st word (k<7:0>) 2nd word(k<19:8>)	1110 | 110s | $k_7$kkk | kkkk_0 1111 | k_{19}kkk | kkkk | kkkk_8
Description:	Subroutine call of entire 2-Mbyte memory range. First, return address (PC + 4) is pushed onto the return stack. If 's' = 1, the W, STATUS and BSR registers are also pushed into their respective shadow registers, WS, STATUSS and BSRS. If 's' = 0, no update occurs (default). Then, the 20-bit value 'k' is loaded into PC<20:1>. CALL is a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	2
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'<7:0>,	PUSH PC to stack	Read literal 'k'<19:8>, Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `HERE    CALL   THERE, 1`

Before Instruction
- PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
- PC = address (THERE)
- TOS = address (HERE + 4)
- WS = W
- BSRS = BSR
- STATUSS = STATUS

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

CLRF — Clear f

Syntax:	CLRF f {,a}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	000h → f, 1 → Z
Status Affected:	Z
Encoding:	0110 101a ffff ffff
Description:	Clears the contents of the specified register. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `CLRF FLAG_REG, 1`

Before Instruction
FLAG_REG = 5Ah
After Instruction
FLAG_REG = 00h

CLRWDT — Clear Watchdog Timer

Syntax:	CLRWDT
Operands:	None
Operation:	000h → WDT, 000h → WDT postscaler, 1 → $\overline{TO}$, 1 → $\overline{PD}$
Status Affected:	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$
Encoding:	0000 0000 0000 0100
Description:	`CLRWDT` instruction resets the Watchdog Timer. It also resets the postscaler of the WDT. Status bits, $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$, are set.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Process Data	No operation

Example: `CLRWDT`

Before Instruction
WDT Counter = ?
After Instruction
WDT Counter = 00h
WDT Postscaler = 0
$\overline{TO}$ = 1
$\overline{PD}$ = 1

COMF — Complement f

Syntax:	COMF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(\bar{f}) \rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	`0001` | `11da` | `ffff` | `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are complemented. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \leq 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `COMF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 13h
After Instruction
REG = 13h
W = ECh

CPFSEQ — Compare f with W, Skip if f = W

Syntax:	CPFSEQ f {,a}
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – (W), skip if (f) = (W) (unsigned comparison)
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0110` | `001a` | `ffff` | `ffff`
Description:	Compares the contents of data memory location 'f' to the contents of W by performing an unsigned subtraction. If 'f' = W, then the fetched instruction is discarded and a `NOP` is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \leq 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE     CPFSEQ REG, 0
NEQUAL   :
EQUAL    :
```

Before Instruction
PC Address = `HERE`
W = ?
REG = ?
After Instruction
If REG = W;
PC = Address (`EQUAL`)
If REG ≠ W;
PC = Address (`NEQUAL`)

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

CPFSGT — Compare f with W, Skip if f > W

Syntax:	CPFSGT f {,a}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – (W), skip if (f) > (W) (unsigned comparison)
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0110` `010a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Compares the contents of data memory location 'f' to the contents of the W by performing an unsigned subtraction. If the contents of 'f' are greater than the contents of WREG, then the fetched instruction is discarded and a `NOP` is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE      CPFSGT REG, 0
NGREATER  :
GREATER   :
```

Before Instruction
- PC = Address (HERE)
- W = ?

After Instruction
- If REG > W;
  - PC = Address (GREATER)
- If REG ≤ W;
  - PC = Address (NGREATER)

CPFSLT — Compare f with W, Skip if f < W

Syntax:	CPFSLT f {,a}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – (W), skip if (f) < (W) (unsigned comparison)
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0110` `000a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Compares the contents of data memory location 'f' to the contents of W by performing an unsigned subtraction. If the contents of 'f' are less than the contents of W, then the fetched instruction is discarded and a `NOP` is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    CPFSLT REG, 1
NLESS   :
LESS    :
```

Before Instruction
- PC = Address (HERE)
- W = ?

After Instruction
- If REG < W;
- PC = Address (LESS)
- If REG ≥ W;
- PC = Address (NLESS)

DAW — Decimal Adjust W Register

Syntax: DAW

Operands: None

Operation:
If [W<3:0> > 9] or [DC = 1] then
(W<3:0>) + 6 → W<3:0>;
else
(W<3:0>) → W<3:0>

If [W<7:4> + DC > 9] or [C = 1] then
(W<7:4>) + 6 + DC → W<7:4> ;
else
(W<7:4>) + DC → W<7:4>

Status Affected: C

Encoding:

0000	0000	0000	0111

Description: `DAW` adjusts the eight-bit value in W resulting from the earlier addition of two variables (each in packed BCD format) and produces a correct packed BCD result.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register W	Process Data	Write W

Example 1:

`DAW`

Before Instruction
- W = A5h
- C = 0
- DC = 0

After Instruction
- W = 05h
- C = 1
- DC = 0

Example 2:

Before Instruction
- W = CEh
- C = 0
- DC = 0

After Instruction
- W = 34h
- C = 1
- DC = 0

DECF — Decrement f

Syntax: DECF f {,d {,a}}

Operands:
$0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) – 1 → dest

Status Affected: C, DC, N, OV, Z

Encoding:

0000	01da	ffff	ffff

Description: Decrement register ‘f’. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is stored in W. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is stored back in register ‘f’ (default).
If ‘a’ is ‘0’, the Access Bank is selected. If ‘a’ is ‘1’, the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default).
If ‘a’ is ‘0’ and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 “Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode”** for details.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register ‘f’	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `DECF CNT, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
- CNT = 01h
- Z = 0

After Instruction
- CNT = 00h
- Z = 1

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

DECFSZ — Decrement f, Skip if 0

Syntax:	DECFSZ f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 d ∈ [0,1] a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(f) – 1 → dest, skip if result = 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0010` `11da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are decremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If the result is '0', the next instruction, which is already fetched, is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE      DECFSZ   CNT, 1, 1
          GOTO     LOOP
CONTINUE
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)
After Instruction
CNT = CNT – 1
If CNT = 0;
PC = Address (CONTINUE)
If CNT ≠ 0;
PC = Address (HERE + 2)

DCFSNZ — Decrement f, Skip if Not 0

Syntax:	DCFSNZ f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 d ∈ [0,1] a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(f) – 1 → dest, skip if result ≠ 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0100` `11da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are decremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If the result is not '0', the next instruction, which is already fetched, is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    DCFSNZ  TEMP, 1, 0
ZERO    :
NZERO   :
```

Before Instruction
TEMP = ?
After Instruction
TEMP = TEMP – 1
If TEMP = 0;
PC = Address (ZERO)
If TEMP ≠ 0;
PC = Address (NZERO)

GOTO — Unconditional Branch

Syntax:	GOTO k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 1048575$
Operation:	k → PC<20:1>
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1st word (k<7:0>)	1110	1111	$k_7$kkk	kkkk$_0$
2nd word(k<19:8>)	1111	k_{19}kkk	kkkk	kkkk$_8$

Description: GOTO allows an unconditional branch anywhere within entire 2-Mbyte memory range. The 20-bit value 'k' is loaded into PC<20:1>. GOTO is always a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 2

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'<7:0>,	No operation	Read literal 'k'<19:8>, Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `GOTO THERE`

After Instruction
PC = Address (THERE)

INCF — Increment f

Syntax:	INCF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) + 1 → dest
Status Affected:	C, DC, N, OV, Z

Encoding:

0010	10da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default).
If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default).
If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \le 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `INCF CNT, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
CNT = FFh
Z = 0
C = ?
DC = ?
After Instruction
CNT = 00h
Z = 1
C = 1
DC = 1

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

INCFSZ — Increment f, Skip if 0

Syntax:	INCFSZ f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) + 1 → dest, skip if result = 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0011` `11da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register ‘f’ are incremented. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is placed in W. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is placed back in register ‘f’ (default). If the result is ‘0’, the next instruction, which is already fetched, is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction. If ‘a’ is ‘0’, the Access Bank is selected. If ‘a’ is ‘1’, the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If ‘a’ is ‘0’ and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \leq 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 “Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode”** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register ‘f’	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE     INCFSZ   CNT, 1, 0
NZERO    :
ZERO     :
```

Before Instruction
- PC = Address (HERE)

After Instruction
- CNT = CNT + 1
- If CNT = 0;
- PC = Address (ZERO)
- If CNT ≠ 0;
- PC = Address (NZERO)

INFSNZ — Increment f, Skip if Not 0

Syntax:	INFSNZ f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) + 1 → dest, skip if result ≠ 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0100` `10da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register ‘f’ are incremented. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is placed in W. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is placed back in register ‘f’ (default). If the result is not ‘0’, the next instruction, which is already fetched, is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction. If ‘a’ is ‘0’, the Access Bank is selected. If ‘a’ is ‘1’, the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If ‘a’ is ‘0’ and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \leq 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 “Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode”** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register ‘f’	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE     INFSNZ  REG, 1, 0
ZERO
NZERO
```

Before Instruction
- PC = Address (HERE)

After Instruction
- REG = REG + 1
- If REG ≠ 0;
- PC = Address (NZERO)
- If REG = 0;
- PC = Address (ZERO)

IORLW — Inclusive OR Literal with W

Syntax:	IORLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(W) .OR. k → W
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	`0000` `1001` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The contents of W are ORed with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in W.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `IORLW 35h`

Before Instruction
W = 9Ah
After Instruction
W = BFh

IORWF — Inclusive OR W with f

Syntax:	IORWF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) .OR. (f) → dest
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	`0001` `00da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Inclusive OR W with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \le 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `IORWF RESULT, 0, 1`

Before Instruction
RESULT = 13h
W = 91h
After Instruction
RESULT = 13h
W = 93h

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

LFSR — Load FSR

Syntax:	LFSR f, k
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 2$ $0 \le k \le 4095$
Operation:	$k \rightarrow$ FSRf
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1110	1110	00ff	k_{11}kkk
1111	0000	$k_7$kkk	kkkk

Description:	The 12-bit literal 'k' is loaded into the File Select Register pointed to by 'f'.
Words:	2
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k' MSB	Process Data	Write literal 'k' MSB to FSRfH
Decode	Read literal 'k' LSB	Process Data	Write literal 'k' to FSRfL

Example: `LFSR 2, 3ABh`

After Instruction
FSR2H = 03h
FSR2L = ABh

MOVF — Move f

Syntax:	MOVF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$f \rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	N, Z

Encoding:

0101	00da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are moved to a destination dependent upon the status of 'd'. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). Location 'f' can be anywhere in the 256-byte bank.
If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default).
If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \le 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.

Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write W

Example: `MOVF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 22h
W = FFh
After Instruction
REG = 22h
W = 22h

MOVFF — Move f to f

Syntax:	MOVFF f_s,f_d
Operands:	$0 \le f_s \le 4095$ $0 \le f_d \le 4095$
Operation:	$(f_s) \rightarrow f_d$
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1st word (source)	1100	ffff	ffff	$ffff_s$
2nd word (destin.)	1111	ffff	ffff	$ffff_d$

Description: The contents of source register 'f_s' are moved to destination register 'f_d'. Location of source 'f_s' can be anywhere in the 4096-byte data space (000h to FFFh) and location of destination 'f_d' can also be anywhere from 000h to FFFh.
Either source or destination can be W (a useful special situation).
`MOVFF` is particularly useful for transferring a data memory location to a peripheral register (such as the transmit buffer or an I/O port).
The `MOVFF` instruction cannot use the PCL, TOSU, TOSH or TOSL as the destination register.

Words: 2

Cycles: 2 (3)

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f' (src)	Process Data	No operation
Decode	No operation No dummy read	No operation	Write register 'f' (dest)

Example: `MOVFF REG1, REG2`

Before Instruction
REG1 = 33h
REG2 = 11h
After Instruction
REG1 = 33h
REG2 = 33h

MOVLB — Move Literal to Low Nibble in BSR

Syntax:	MOVLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	$k \rightarrow$ BSR
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 0001 kkkk kkkk

Description: The eight-bit literal 'k' is loaded into the Bank Select Register (BSR). The value of BSR<7:4> always remains '0', regardless of the value of k_7:k_4.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write literal 'k' to BSR

Example: `MOVLB 5`

Before Instruction
BSR Register = 02h
After Instruction
BSR Register = 05h

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

MOVLW — Move Literal to W

Syntax:	MOVLW k
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 255
Operation:	k → W
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0000` `1110` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The eight-bit literal 'k' is loaded into W.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `MOVLW 5Ah`

After Instruction

W = 5Ah

MOVWF — Move W to f

Syntax:	MOVWF f {,a}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(W) → f
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0110` `111a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Move data from W to register 'f'. Location 'f' can be anywhere in the 256-byte bank. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `MOVWF REG, 0`

Before Instruction

W = 4Fh
REG = FFh

After Instruction

W = 4Fh
REG = 4Fh

MULLW — Multiply Literal with W

Syntax:	MULLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(W) x k → PRODH:PRODL
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 1101 kkkk kkkk
Description:	An unsigned multiplication is carried out between the contents of W and the 8-bit literal 'k'. The 16-bit result is placed in the PRODH:PRODL register pair. PRODH contains the high byte. W is unchanged. None of the Status flags are affected. Note that neither Overflow nor Carry is possible in this operation. A Zero result is possible but not detected.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write registers PRODH: PRODL

Example: `MULLW 0C4h`

Before Instruction
- W = E2h
- PRODH = ?
- PRODL = ?

After Instruction
- W = E2h
- PRODH = ADh
- PRODL = 08h

MULWF — Multiply W with f

Syntax:	MULWF f {,a}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) x (f) → PRODH:PRODL
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 001a ffff ffff
Description:	An unsigned multiplication is carried out between the contents of W and the register file location 'f'. The 16-bit result is stored in the PRODH:PRODL register pair. PRODH contains the high byte. Both W and 'f' are unchanged. None of the Status flags are affected. Note that neither Overflow nor Carry is possible in this operation. A Zero result is possible but not detected. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \le 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write registers PRODH: PRODL

Example: `MULWF REG, 1`

Before Instruction
- W = C4h
- REG = B5h
- PRODH = ?
- PRODL = ?

After Instruction
- W = C4h
- REG = B5h
- PRODH = 8Ah
- PRODL = 94h

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

NEGF — Negate f

Syntax:	NEGF f {,a}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(\bar{f}) + 1 \rightarrow f$
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0110` `110a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Location ‘f’ is negated using two’s complement. The result is placed in the data memory location ‘f’. If ‘a’ is ‘0’, the Access Bank is selected. If ‘a’ is ‘1’, the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If ‘a’ is ‘0’ and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \le 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 “Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode”** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register ‘f’	Process Data	Write register ‘f’

Example: `NEGF REG, 1`

Before Instruction
REG = `0011 1010` [3Ah]
After Instruction
REG = `1100 0110` [C6h]

NOP — No Operation

Syntax:	NOP
Operands:	None
Operation:	No operation
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0000` `0000` `0000` `0000` `1111` `xxxx` `xxxx` `xxxx`
Description:	No operation.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

None.

POP — Pop Top of Return Stack

Syntax:	POP
Operands:	None
Operation:	(TOS) → bit bucket
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 0000 0000 0110
Description:	The TOS value is pulled off the return stack and is discarded. The TOS value then becomes the previous value that was pushed onto the return stack. This instruction is provided to enable the user to properly manage the return stack to incorporate a software stack.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	POP TOS value	No operation

Example:
```
POP
GOTO    NEW
```

Before Instruction
- TOS = 0031A2h
- Stack (1 level down) = 014332h

After Instruction
- TOS = 014332h
- PC = NEW

PUSH — Push Top of Return Stack

Syntax:	PUSH
Operands:	None
Operation:	(PC + 2) → TOS
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 0000 0000 0101
Description:	The PC + 2 is pushed onto the top of the return stack. The previous TOS value is pushed down on the stack. This instruction allows implementing a software stack by modifying TOS and then pushing it onto the return stack.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	PUSH PC + 2 onto return stack	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
PUSH
```

Before Instruction
- TOS = 345Ah
- PC = 0124h

After Instruction
- PC = 0126h
- TOS = 0126h
- Stack (1 level down) = 345Ah

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

RCALL **Relative Call**

Syntax:	RCALL n
Operands:	$-1024 \leq n \leq 1023$
Operation:	(PC) + 2 → TOS, (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1101	1nnn	nnnn	nnnn

Description:	Subroutine call with a jump up to 1K from the current location. First, return address (PC + 2) is pushed onto the stack. Then, add the 2's complement number '2n' to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC + 2 + 2n. This instruction is a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n' PUSH PC to stack	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `HERE RCALL Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = Address `(HERE)`
After Instruction
PC = Address `(Jump)`
TOS = Address `(HERE + 2)`

RESET **Reset**

Syntax:	RESET
Operands:	None
Operation:	Reset all registers and flags that are affected by a $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset.
Status Affected:	All

Encoding:

0000	0000	1111	1111

Description:	This instruction provides a way to execute a $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset in software.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Start Reset	No operation	No operation

Example: `RESET`

After Instruction
Registers = Reset Value
Flags* = Reset Value

RETFIE — Return from Interrupt

Syntax:	RETFIE {s}
Operands:	s ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(TOS) → PC, 1 → GIE/GIEH or PEIE/GIEL if s = 1 (WS) → W, (STATUSS) → STATUS, (BSRS) → BSR, PCLATU, PCLATH are unchanged
Status Affected:	GIE/GIEH, PEIE/GIEL
Encoding:	0000 0000 0001 000s
Description:	Return from interrupt. Stack is popped and Top-of-Stack (TOS) is loaded into the PC. Interrupts are enabled by setting either the high or low priority global interrupt enable bit. If 's' = 1, the contents of the shadow registers, WS, STATUSS and BSRS, are loaded into their corresponding registers, W, STATUS and BSR. If 's' = 0, no update of these registers occurs (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	POP PC from stack Set GIEH or GIEL
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `RETFIE 1`

After Interrupt

PC	=	TOS
W	=	WS
BSR	=	BSRS
STATUS	=	STATUSS
GIE/GIEH, PEIE/GIEL	=	1

RETLW — Return Literal to W

Syntax:	RETLW k
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 255
Operation:	k → W, (TOS) → PC, PCLATU, PCLATH are unchanged
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 1100 kkkk kkkk
Description:	W is loaded with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The program counter is loaded from the top of the stack (the return address). The high address latch (PCLATH) remains unchanged.
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	POP PC from stack, Write to W
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
    CALL TABLE ; W contains table
               ; offset value
               ; W now has
               ; table value
   :
TABLE
    ADDWF PCL  ; W = offset
    RETLW k0   ; Begin table
    RETLW k1   ;
   :
   :
    RETLW kn   ; End of table
```

Before Instruction

W = 07h

After Instruction

W = value of kn

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

RETURN **Return from Subroutine**

Syntax:	RETURN {s}
Operands:	s ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(TOS) → PC if s = `1` (WS) → W, (STATUSS) → STATUS, (BSRS) → BSR, PCLATU, PCLATH are unchanged
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0000` `0000` `0001` `001s`
Description:	Return from subroutine. The stack is popped and the top of the stack (TOS) is loaded into the program counter. If ‘s’= `1`, the contents of the shadow registers, WS, STATUSS and BSRS, are loaded into their corresponding registers, W, STATUS and BSR. If ‘s’ = `0`, no update of these registers occurs (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Process Data	POP PC from stack
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `RETURN`

After Instruction:
PC = TOS

RLCF **Rotate Left f through Carry**

Syntax:	RLCF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 d ∈ [0,1] a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(f<n>) → dest<n + 1>, (f<7>) → C, (C) → dest<0>
Status Affected:	C, N, Z
Encoding:	`0011` `01da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register ‘f’ are rotated one bit to the left through the Carry flag. If ‘d’ is ‘`0`’, the result is placed in W. If ‘d’ is ‘`1`’, the result is stored back in register ‘f’ (default). If ‘a’ is ‘`0`’, the Access Bank is selected. If ‘a’ is ‘`1`’, the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If ‘a’ is ‘`0`’ and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 “Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode”** for details.

Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register ‘f’	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `RLCF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = `1110 0110`
C = 0
After Instruction
REG = `1110 0110`
W = `1100 1100`
C = 1

RLNCF — Rotate Left f (No Carry)

Syntax:	RLNCF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(f\langle n\rangle) \rightarrow dest\langle n + 1\rangle$, $(f\langle 7\rangle) \rightarrow dest\langle 0\rangle$
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	`0100` `01da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the left. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \le 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.

Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `RLNCF REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = `1010 1011`
After Instruction
REG = `0101 0111`

RRCF — Rotate Right f through Carry

Syntax:	RRCF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(f\langle n\rangle) \rightarrow dest\langle n - 1\rangle$, $(f\langle 0\rangle) \rightarrow C$, $(C) \rightarrow dest\langle 7\rangle$
Status Affected:	C, N, Z
Encoding:	`0011` `00da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the right through the Carry flag. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \le 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.

Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `RRCF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = `1110 0110`
C = 0
After Instruction
REG = `1110 0110`
W = `0111 0011`
C = 0

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

RRNCF — Rotate Right f (No Carry)

Syntax:	RRNCF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 d ∈ [0,1] a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(f<n>) → dest<n – 1>, (f<0>) → dest<7>
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	`0100` `00da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the right. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is '1', then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.

Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1: `RRNCF REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 1101 0111
After Instruction
REG = 1110 1011

Example 2: `RRNCF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
W = ?
REG = 1101 0111
After Instruction
W = 1110 1011
REG = 1101 0111

SETF — Set f

Syntax:	SETF f {,a}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	FFh → f
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0110` `100a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of the specified register are set to FFh. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `SETF REG, 1`

Before Instruction
REG = 5Ah
After Instruction
REG = FFh

SLEEP — Enter Sleep mode

Syntax:	SLEEP
Operands:	None
Operation:	00h → WDT, 0 → WDT postscaler, 1 → $\overline{\text{TO}}$, 0 → $\overline{\text{PD}}$
Status Affected:	$\overline{\text{TO}}$, $\overline{\text{PD}}$
Encoding:	0000 0000 0000 0011
Description:	The Power-Down status bit ($\overline{\text{PD}}$) is cleared. The Time-out status bit ($\overline{\text{TO}}$) is set. Watchdog Timer and its postscaler are cleared. The processor is put into Sleep mode with the oscillator stopped.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Process Data	Go to Sleep

Example: `SLEEP`

Before Instruction
- $\overline{\text{TO}}$ = ?
- $\overline{\text{PD}}$ = ?

After Instruction
- $\overline{\text{TO}}$ = 1†
- $\overline{\text{PD}}$ = 0

† If WDT causes wake-up, this bit is cleared.

SUBFWB — Subtract f from W with Borrow

Syntax:	SUBFWB f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 d ∈ [0,1] a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(W) – (f) – ($\overline{\text{C}}$) → dest
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	0101 01da ffff ffff
Description:	Subtract register 'f' and Carry flag (borrow) from W (2's complement method). If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1: `SUBFWB REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
- REG = 3
- W = 2
- C = 1

After Instruction
- REG = FF
- W = 2
- C = 0
- Z = 0
- N = 1 ; result is negative

Example 2: `SUBFWB REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
- REG = 2
- W = 5
- C = 1

After Instruction
- REG = 2
- W = 3
- C = 1
- Z = 0
- N = 0 ; result is positive

Example 3: `SUBFWB REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
- REG = 1
- W = 2
- C = 0

After Instruction
- REG = 0
- W = 2
- C = 1
- Z = 1 ; result is zero
- N = 0

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

SUBLW — Subtract W from Literal

Syntax:	SUBLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	$k - (W) \rightarrow W$
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0000` `1000` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description	W is subtracted from the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in W.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example 1: `SUBLW 02h`

```
Before Instruction
     W    =   01h
     C    =   ?
After Instruction
     W    =   01h
     C    =   1     ; result is positive
     Z    =   0
     N    =   0
```

Example 2: `SUBLW 02h`

```
Before Instruction
     W    =   02h
     C    =   ?
After Instruction
     W    =   00h
     C    =   1     ; result is zero
     Z    =   1
     N    =   0
```

Example 3: `SUBLW 02h`

```
Before Instruction
     W    =   03h
     C    =   ?
After Instruction
     W    =   FFh   ; (2's complement)
     C    =   0     ; result is negative
     Z    =   0
     N    =   1
```

SUBWF — Subtract W from f

Syntax:	SUBWF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(f) - (W) \rightarrow dest$
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0101` `11da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Subtract W from register 'f' (2's complement method). If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \le 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1: `SUBWF REG, 1, 0`

```
Before Instruction
     REG  =   3
     W    =   2
     C    =   ?
After Instruction
     REG  =   1
     W    =   2
     C    =   1     ; result is positive
     Z    =   0
     N    =   0
```

Example 2: `SUBWF REG, 0, 0`

```
Before Instruction
     REG  =   2
     W    =   2
     C    =   ?
After Instruction
     REG  =   2
     W    =   0
     C    =   1     ; result is zero
     Z    =   1
     N    =   0
```

Example 3: `SUBWF REG, 1, 0`

```
Before Instruction
     REG  =   1
     W    =   2
     C    =   ?
After Instruction
     REG  =   FFh   ;(2's complement)
     W    =   2
     C    =   0     ; result is negative
     Z    =   0
     N    =   1
```

SUBWFB — Subtract W from f with Borrow

Syntax:	SUBWFB f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 d ∈ [0,1] a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(f) – (W) – ($\overline{C}$) → dest
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0101` `10da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Subtract W and the Carry flag (borrow) from register 'f' (2's complement method). If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1: `SUBWFB REG, 1, 0`

```
Before Instruction
    REG   =   19h    (0001 1001)
    W     =   0Dh    (0000 1101)
    C     =   1
After Instruction
    REG   =   0Ch    (0000 1011)
    W     =   0Dh    (0000 1101)
    C     =   1
    Z     =   0
    N     =   0      ; result is positive
```

Example 2: `SUBWFB REG, 0, 0`

```
Before Instruction
    REG   =   1Bh    (0001 1011)
    W     =   1Ah    (0001 1010)
    C     =   0
After Instruction
    REG   =   1Bh    (0001 1011)
    W     =   00h
    C     =   1
    Z     =   1      ; result is zero
    N     =   0
```

Example 3: `SUBWFB REG, 1, 0`

```
Before Instruction
    REG   =   03h    (0000 0011)
    W     =   0Eh    (0000 1101)
    C     =   1
After Instruction
    REG   =   F5h    (1111 0100)
                     ; [2's comp]
    W     =   0Eh    (0000 1101)
    C     =   0
    Z     =   0
    N     =   1      ; result is negative
```

SWAPF — Swap f

Syntax:	SWAPF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 d ∈ [0,1] a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(f<3:0>) → dest<7:4>, (f<7:4>) → dest<3:0>
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0011` `10da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The upper and lower nibbles of register 'f' are exchanged. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `SWAPF REG, 1, 0`

```
Before Instruction
    REG   =   53h
After Instruction
    REG   =   35h
```

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TBLRD Table Read

Syntax:	TBLRD (*; *+; *-; +*)
Operands:	None
Operation:	if TBLRD * (Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT; TBLPTR – No Change; if TBLRD *+ (Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT; (TBLPTR) + 1 → TBLPTR; if TBLRD *- (Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT; (TBLPTR) – 1 → TBLPTR; if TBLRD +* (TBLPTR) + 1 → TBLPTR; (Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

0000	0000	0000	10nn nn=0 * =1 *+ =2 *- =3 +*

Description: This instruction is used to read the contents of Program Memory (P.M.). To address the program memory, a pointer called Table Pointer (TBLPTR) is used.
The TBLPTR (a 21-bit pointer) points to each byte in the program memory. TBLPTR has a 2-Mbyte address range.

TBLPTR[0] = 0: Least Significant Byte of Program Memory Word
TBLPTR[0] = 1: Most Significant Byte of Program Memory Word

The TBLRD instruction can modify the value of TBLPTR as follows:

- no change
- post-increment
- post-decrement
- pre-increment

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation (Read Program Memory)	No operation	No operation (Write TABLAT)

TBLRD Table Read (Continued)

Example 1: `TBLRD *+ ;`

Before Instruction

TABLAT	=	55h
TBLPTR	=	00A356h
MEMORY (00A356h)	=	34h

After Instruction

TABLAT	=	34h
TBLPTR	=	00A357h

Example 2: `TBLRD +* ;`

Before Instruction

TABLAT	=	AAh
TBLPTR	=	01A357h
MEMORY (01A357h)	=	12h
MEMORY (01A358h)	=	34h

After Instruction

TABLAT	=	34h
TBLPTR	=	01A358h

TBLWT Table Write

Syntax: TBLWT (*; *+; *-; +*)

Operands: None

Operation:
if TBLWT*
(TABLAT) → Holding Register;
TBLPTR – No Change;
if TBLWT*+
(TABLAT) → Holding Register;
(TBLPTR) + 1 → TBLPTR;
if TBLWT*-
(TABLAT) → Holding Register;
(TBLPTR) – 1 → TBLPTR;
if TBLWT+*
(TBLPTR) + 1 → TBLPTR;
(TABLAT) → Holding Register

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	0000	0000	11nn nn=0 * =1 *+ =2 *- =3 +*

Description: This instruction uses the 3 LSBs of TBLPTR to determine which of the 8 holding registers the TABLAT is written to. The holding registers are used to program the contents of Program Memory (P.M.). (Refer to **Section 6.0 "Flash Program Memory"** for additional details on programming Flash memory.)
The TBLPTR (a 21-bit pointer) points to each byte in the program memory. TBLPTR has a 2-Mbyte address range. The LSb of the TBLPTR selects which byte of the program memory location to access.

TBLPTR[0] = 0: Least Significant Byte of Program Memory Word
TBLPTR[0] = 1: Most Significant Byte of Program Memory Word

The `TBLWT` instruction can modify the value of TBLPTR as follows:

- no change
- post-increment
- post-decrement
- pre-increment

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation (Read TABLAT)	No operation	No operation (Write to Holding Register)

TBLWT Table Write (Continued)

Example 1: `TBLWT *+;`

Before Instruction

TABLAT	=	55h
TBLPTR	=	00A356h
HOLDING REGISTER (00A356h)	=	FFh

After Instructions (table write completion)

TABLAT	=	55h
TBLPTR	=	00A357h
HOLDING REGISTER (00A356h)	=	55h

Example 2: `TBLWT +*;`

Before Instruction

TABLAT	=	34h
TBLPTR	=	01389Ah
HOLDING REGISTER (01389Ah)	=	FFh
HOLDING REGISTER (01389Bh)	=	FFh

After Instruction (table write completion)

TABLAT	=	34h
TBLPTR	=	01389Bh
HOLDING REGISTER (01389Ah)	=	FFh
HOLDING REGISTER (01389Bh)	=	34h

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TSTFSZ — Test f, Skip if 0

Syntax:	TSTFSZ f {,a}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	skip if f = 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0110 | 011a | ffff | ffff
Description:	If 'f' = 0, the next instruction fetched during the current instruction execution is discarded and a NOP is executed, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever f ≤ 95 (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE     TSTFSZ  CNT, 1
NZERO    :
ZERO     :
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)
After Instruction
If CNT = 00h,
PC = Address (ZERO)
If CNT ≠ 00h,
PC = Address (NZERO)

XORLW — Exclusive OR Literal with W

Syntax:	XORLW k
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 255
Operation:	(W) .XOR. k → W
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	0000 | 1010 | kkkk | kkkk
Description:	The contents of W are XORed with the 8-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in W.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example:

```
XORLW   0AFh
```

Before Instruction
W = B5h
After Instruction
W = 1Ah

XORWF — Exclusive OR W with f

Syntax:	XORWF f {,d {,a}}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) .XOR. (f) $\rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	`0001` `10da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Exclusive OR the contents of W with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in the register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank is selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used to select the GPR bank (default). If 'a' is '0' and the extended instruction set is enabled, this instruction operates in Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode whenever $f \le 95$ (5Fh). See **Section 21.2.3 "Byte-Oriented and Bit-Oriented Instructions in Indexed Literal Offset Mode"** for details.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `XORWF REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = AFh
W = B5h

After Instruction
REG = 1Ah
W = B5h

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

21.2 Extended Instruction Set

In addition to the standard 75 instructions of the PIC18 instruction set, PIC18F1230/1330 devices also provide an optional extension to the core CPU functionality. The added features include eight additional instructions that augment indirect and indexed addressing operations and the implementation of Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode for many of the standard PIC18 instructions.

The additional features of the extended instruction set are disabled by default. To enable them, users must set the XINST Configuration bit.

The instructions in the extended set (with the exception of `CALLW`, `MOVSF` and `MOVSS`) can all be classified as literal operations, which either manipulate the File Select Registers, or use them for indexed addressing. Two of the instructions, `ADDFSR` and `SUBFSR`, each have an additional special instantiation for using FSR2. These versions (`ADDULNK` and `SUBULNK`) allow for automatic return after execution.

The extended instructions are specifically implemented to optimize re-entrant program code (that is, code that is recursive or that uses a software stack) written in high-level languages, particularly C. Among other things, they allow users working in high-level languages to perform certain operations on data structures more efficiently. These include:

- Dynamic allocation and deallocation of software stack space when entering and leaving subroutines
- Function Pointer invocation
- Software Stack Pointer manipulation
- Manipulation of variables located in a software stack

A summary of the instructions in the extended instruction set is provided in Table 21-3. Detailed descriptions are provided in **Section 21.2.2 "Extended Instruction Set"**. The opcode field descriptions in Table 21-1 (page 208) apply to both the standard and extended PIC18 instruction sets.

Note:	The instruction set extension and the Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode were designed for optimizing applications written in C; the user may likely never use these instructions directly in the assembler. The syntax for these commands is provided as a reference for users who may be reviewing code that has been generated by a compiler.

21.2.1 EXTENDED INSTRUCTION SYNTAX

Most of the extended instructions use indexed arguments, using one of the File Select Registers and some offset to specify a source or destination register. When an argument for an instruction serves as part of indexed addressing, it is enclosed in square brackets ("[ ]"). This is done to indicate that the argument is used as an index or offset. The MPASM™ Assembler will flag an error if it determines that an index or offset value is not bracketed.

When the extended instruction set is enabled, brackets are also used to indicate index arguments in byte-oriented and bit-oriented instructions. This is in addition to other changes in their syntax. For more details, see **Section 21.2.3.1 "Extended Instruction Syntax with Standard PIC18 Commands"**.

Note:	In the past, square brackets have been used to denote optional arguments in the PIC18 and earlier instruction sets. In this text and going forward, optional arguments are denoted by braces ("{ }").

TABLE 21-3: EXTENSIONS TO THE PIC18 INSTRUCTION SET

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word				Status Affected
				MSb			LSb	
ADDFSR	f, k	Add literal to FSR	1	1110	1000	ffkk	kkkk	None
ADDULNK	k	Add literal to FSR2 and return	2	1110	1000	11kk	kkkk	None
CALLW		Call subroutine using WREG	2	0000	0000	0001	0100	None
MOVSF	z_s, f_d	Move z_s (source) to 1st word	2	1110	1011	0zzz	zzzz	None
		f_d (destination) 2nd word		1111	ffff	ffff	ffff	
MOVSS	z_s, z_d	Move z_s (source) to 1st word	2	1110	1011	1zzz	zzzz	None
		z_d (destination) 2nd word		1111	xxxx	xzzz	zzzz	
PUSHL	k	Store literal at FSR2, decrement FSR2	1	1110	1010	kkkk	kkkk	None
SUBFSR	f, k	Subtract literal from FSR	1	1110	1001	ffkk	kkkk	None
SUBULNK	k	Subtract literal from FSR2 and return	2	1110	1001	11kk	kkkk	None

21.2.2 EXTENDED INSTRUCTION SET

ADDFSR — **Add Literal to FSR**

Syntax:	ADDFSR f, k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 63$ $f \in [0, 1, 2]$
Operation:	FSR(f) + k → FSR(f)
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 | 1000 | ffkk | kkkk
Description:	The 6-bit literal 'k' is added to the contents of the FSR specified by 'f'.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to FSR

Example: `ADDFSR 2, 23h`

Before Instruction
FSR2 = 03FFh

After Instruction
FSR2 = 0422h

ADDULNK — **Add Literal to FSR2 and Return**

Syntax:	ADDULNK k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 63$
Operation:	FSR2 + k → FSR2, (TOS) → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 | 1000 | 11kk | kkkk
Description:	The 6-bit literal 'k' is added to the contents of FSR2. A `RETURN` is then executed by loading the PC with the TOS. The instruction takes two cycles to execute; a `NOP` is performed during the second cycle. This may be thought of as a special case of the `ADDFSR` instruction, where f = 3 (binary '`11`'); it operates only on FSR2.
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to FSR
No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation

Example: `ADDULNK 23h`

Before Instruction
FSR2 = 03FFh
PC = 0100h

After Instruction
FSR2 = 0422h
PC = (TOS)

> **Note:** All PIC18 instructions may take an optional label argument preceding the instruction mnemonic for use in symbolic addressing. If a label is used, the instruction syntax then becomes: {label} instruction argument(s).

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

CALLW — Subroutine Call Using WREG

Syntax:	CALLW
Operands:	None
Operation:	(PC + 2) → TOS, (W) → PCL, (PCLATH) → PCH, (PCLATU) → PCU
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 0000 0001 0100
Description	First, the return address (PC + 2) is pushed onto the return stack. Next, the contents of W are written to PCL; the existing value is discarded. Then, the contents of PCLATH and PCLATU are latched into PCH and PCU, respectively. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP` instruction while the new next instruction is fetched. Unlike `CALL`, there is no option to update W, STATUS or BSR.
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read WREG	PUSH PC to stack	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `HERE CALLW`

Before Instruction
- PC = address `(HERE)`
- PCLATH = 10h
- PCLATU = 00h
- W = 06h

After Instruction
- PC = 001006h
- TOS = address `(HERE + 2)`
- PCLATH = 10h
- PCLATU = 00h
- W = 06h

MOVSF — Move Indexed to f

Syntax:	MOVSF [z_s], f_d
Operands:	$0 \le z_s \le 127$ $0 \le f_d \le 4095$
Operation:	$((FSR2) + z_s) \rightarrow f_d$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding: 1st word (source) 2nd word (destin.)	 1110 1011 0zzz $zzzz_s$ 1111 ffff ffff $ffff_d$
Description:	The contents of the source register are moved to destination register 'f_d'. The actual address of the source register is determined by adding the 7-bit literal offset 'z_s' in the first word to the value of FSR2. The address of the destination register is specified by the 12-bit literal 'f_d' in the second word. Both addresses can be anywhere in the 4096-byte data space (000h to FFFh). The `MOVSF` instruction cannot use the PCL, TOSU, TOSH or TOSL as the destination register. If the resultant source address points to an indirect addressing register, the value returned will be 00h.
Words:	2
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Determine source addr	Determine source addr	Read source reg
Decode	No operation No dummy read	No operation	Write register 'f' (dest)

Example: `MOVSF [05h], REG2`

Before Instruction
- FSR2 = 80h
- Contents of 85h = 33h
- REG2 = 11h

After Instruction
- FSR2 = 80h
- Contents of 85h = 33h
- REG2 = 33h

MOVSS — Move Indexed to Indexed

Syntax:	MOVSS [z_s], [z_d]
Operands:	$0 \le z_s \le 127$ $0 \le z_d \le 127$
Operation:	$((FSR2) + z_s) \rightarrow ((FSR2) + z_d)$
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1st word (source)	1110	1011	1zzz	$zzzz_s$
2nd word (dest.)	1111	xxxx	xzzz	$zzzz_d$

Description: The contents of the source register are moved to the destination register. The addresses of the source and destination registers are determined by adding the 7-bit literal offsets 'z_s' or 'z_d', respectively, to the value of FSR2. Both registers can be located anywhere in the 4096-byte data memory space (000h to FFFh).
The `MOVSS` instruction cannot use the PCL, TOSU, TOSH or TOSL as the destination register.
If the resultant source address points to an indirect addressing register, the value returned will be 00h. If the resultant destination address points to an indirect addressing register, the instruction will execute as a `NOP`.

Words: 2

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Determine source addr	Determine source addr	Read source reg
Decode	Determine dest addr	Determine dest addr	Write to dest reg

Example: `MOVSS [05h], [06h]`

Before Instruction

FSR2	=	80h
Contents of 85h	=	33h
Contents of 86h	=	11h

After Instruction

FSR2	=	80h
Contents of 85h	=	33h
Contents of 86h	=	33h

PUSHL — Store Literal at FSR2, Decrement FSR2

Syntax:	PUSHL k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	$k \rightarrow (FSR2)$, $FSR2 - 1 \rightarrow FSR2$
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1111	1010	kkkk	kkkk

Description: The 8-bit literal 'k' is written to the data memory address specified by FSR2. FSR2 is decremented by 1 after the operation. This instruction allows users to push values onto a software stack.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read 'k'	Process data	Write to destination

Example: `PUSHL 08h`

Before Instruction

FSR2H:FSR2L	=	01ECh
Memory (01ECh)	=	00h

After Instruction

FSR2H:FSR2L	=	01EBh
Memory (01ECh)	=	08h

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

SUBFSR — Subtract Literal from FSR

Syntax:	SUBFSR f, k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 63$ $f \in [0, 1, 2]$
Operation:	FSR(f – k) → FSR(f)
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1110` `1001` `ffkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The 6-bit literal 'k' is subtracted from the contents of the FSR specified by 'f'.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `SUBFSR 2, 23h`

Before Instruction
FSR2 = 03FFh
After Instruction
FSR2 = 03DCh

SUBULNK — Subtract Literal from FSR2 and Return

Syntax:	SUBULNK k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 63$
Operation:	FSR2 – k → FSR2 (TOS) → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1110` `1001` `11kk` `kkkk`
Description:	The 6-bit literal 'k' is subtracted from the contents of the FSR2. A `RETURN` is then executed by loading the PC with the TOS. The instruction takes two cycles to execute; a `NOP` is performed during the second cycle. This may be thought of as a special case of the `SUBFSR` instruction, where f = 3 (binary '`11`'); it operates only on FSR2.
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination
No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation

Example: `SUBULNK 23h`

Before Instruction
FSR2 = 03FFh
PC = 0100h
After Instruction
FSR2 = 03DCh
PC = (TOS)

21.2.3 BYTE-ORIENTED AND BIT-ORIENTED INSTRUCTIONS IN INDEXED LITERAL OFFSET MODE

Note:	Enabling the PIC18 instruction set extension may cause legacy applications to behave erratically or fail entirely.

In addition to eight new commands in the extended set, enabling the extended instruction set also enables Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode (**Section 5.5.1 "Indexed Addressing with Literal Offset"**). This has a significant impact on the way that many commands of the standard PIC18 instruction set are interpreted.

When the extended set is disabled, addresses embedded in opcodes are treated as literal memory locations: either as a location in the Access Bank ('a' = `0`) or in a GPR bank designated by the BSR ('a' = `1`). When the extended instruction set is enabled and 'a' = `0`, however, a file register argument of 5Fh or less is interpreted as an offset from the pointer value in FSR2 and not as a literal address. For practical purposes, this means that all instructions that use the Access RAM bit as an argument – that is, all byte-oriented and bit-oriented instructions, or almost half of the core PIC18 instructions – may behave differently when the extended instruction set is enabled.

When the content of FSR2 is 00h, the boundaries of the Access RAM are essentially remapped to their original values. This may be useful in creating backward compatible code. If this technique is used, it may be necessary to save the value of FSR2 and restore it when moving back and forth between C and assembly routines in order to preserve the Stack Pointer. Users must also keep in mind the syntax requirements of the extended instruction set (see **Section 21.2.3.1 "Extended Instruction Syntax with Standard PIC18 Commands"**).

Although the Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode can be very useful for dynamic stack and pointer manipulation, it can also be very annoying if a simple arithmetic operation is carried out on the wrong register. Users who are accustomed to the PIC18 programming must keep in mind that, when the extended instruction set is enabled, register addresses of 5Fh or less are used for Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode.

Representative examples of typical byte-oriented and bit-oriented instructions in the Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode are provided on the following page to show how execution is affected. The operand conditions shown in the examples are applicable to all instructions of these types.

21.2.3.1 Extended Instruction Syntax with Standard PIC18 Commands

When the extended instruction set is enabled, the file register argument, 'f', in the standard byte-oriented and bit-oriented commands is replaced with the literal offset value, 'k'. As already noted, this occurs only when 'f' is less than or equal to 5Fh. When an offset value is used, it must be indicated by square brackets ("[ ]"). As with the extended instructions, the use of brackets indicates to the compiler that the value is to be interpreted as an index or an offset. Omitting the brackets, or using a value greater than 5Fh within brackets, will generate an error in the MPASM Assembler.

If the index argument is properly bracketed for Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode, the Access RAM argument is never specified; it will automatically be assumed to be '`0`'. This is in contrast to standard operation (extended instruction set disabled) when 'a' is set on the basis of the target address. Declaring the Access RAM bit in this mode will also generate an error in the MPASM Assembler.

The destination argument, 'd', functions as before.

In the latest versions of the MPASM Assembler, language support for the extended instruction set must be explicitly invoked. This is done with either the command line option, `/y`, or the PE directive in the source listing.

21.2.4 CONSIDERATIONS WHEN ENABLING THE EXTENDED INSTRUCTION SET

It is important to note that the extensions to the instruction set may not be beneficial to all users. In particular, users who are not writing code that uses a software stack may not benefit from using the extensions to the instruction set.

Additionally, the Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode may create issues with legacy applications written to the PIC18 assembler. This is because instructions in the legacy code may attempt to address registers in the Access Bank below 5Fh. Since these addresses are interpreted as literal offsets to FSR2 when the instruction set extension is enabled, the application may read or write to the wrong data addresses.

When porting an application to the PIC18F1230/1330, it is very important to consider the type of code. A large, re-entrant application that is written in 'C' and would benefit from efficient compilation will do well when using the instruction set extensions. Legacy applications that heavily use the Access Bank will most likely not benefit from using the extended instruction set.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

ADDWF — ADD W to Indexed (Indexed Literal Offset mode)

Syntax:	ADDWF [k] {,d}
Operands:	$0 \leq k \leq 95$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) + ((FSR2) + k) → dest
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0010` `01d0` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The contents of W are added to the contents of the register indicated by FSR2, offset by the value 'k'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read 'k'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ADDWF [OFST] , 0`

Before Instruction

W	=	17h
OFST	=	2Ch
FSR2	=	0A00h
Contents of 0A2Ch	=	20h

After Instruction

W	=	37h
Contents of 0A2Ch	=	20h

BSF — Bit Set Indexed (Indexed Literal Offset mode)

Syntax:	BSF [k], b
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 95$ $0 \leq b \leq 7$
Operation:	1 → ((FSR2) + k)<b>
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1000` `bbb0` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	Bit 'b' of the register indicated by FSR2, offset by the value 'k', is set.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `BSF [FLAG_OFST], 7`

Before Instruction

FLAG_OFST	=	0Ah
FSR2	=	0A00h
Contents of 0A0Ah	=	55h

After Instruction

Contents of 0A0Ah	=	D5h

SETF — Set Indexed (Indexed Literal Offset mode)

Syntax:	SETF [k]
Operands:	$0 \leq k \leq 95$
Operation:	FFh → ((FSR2) + k)
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0110` `1000` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The contents of the register indicated by FSR2, offset by 'k', are set to FFh.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read 'k'	Process Data	Write register

Example: `SETF [OFST]`

Before Instruction

OFST	=	2Ch
FSR2	=	0A00h
Contents of 0A2Ch	=	00h

After Instruction

Contents of 0A2Ch	=	FFh

21.2.5 SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS WITH MICROCHIP MPLAB® IDE TOOLS

The latest versions of Microchip's software tools have been designed to fully support the extended instruction set of the PIC18F1230/1330 family of devices. This includes the MPLAB C18 C Compiler, MPASM Assembly language and MPLAB Integrated Development Environment (IDE).

When selecting a target device for software development, MPLAB IDE will automatically set default Configuration bits for that device. The default setting for the XINST Configuration bit is '0', disabling the extended instruction set and Indexed Literal Offset Addressing mode. For proper execution of applications developed to take advantage of the extended instruction set, XINST must be set during programming.

To develop software for the extended instruction set, the user must enable support for the instructions and the Indexed Addressing mode in their language tool(s). Depending on the environment being used, this may be done in several ways:

- A menu option, or dialog box within the environment, that allows the user to configure the language tool and its settings for the project
- A command line option
- A directive in the source code

These options vary between different compilers, assemblers and development environments. Users are encouraged to review the documentation accompanying their development systems for the appropriate information.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.0 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Absolute Maximum Ratings(†)

Ambient temperature under bias	-40°C to +125°C
Storage temperature	-65°C to +150°C
Voltage on any pin with respect to V_{SS} (except V_{DD} and $\overline{MCLR}$)	-0.3V to (V_{DD} + 0.3V)
Voltage on V_{DD} with respect to V_{SS}	-0.3V to +7.5V
Voltage on $\overline{MCLR}$ with respect to V_{SS} **(Note 2)**	0V to +13.25V
Total power dissipation **(Note 1)**	1.0W
Maximum current out of V_{SS} pin	300 mA
Maximum current into V_{DD} pin	250 mA
Input clamp current, I_{IK} ($V_I < 0$ or $V_I > V_{DD}$)	±20 mA
Output clamp current, I_{OK} ($V_O < 0$ or $V_O > V_{DD}$)	±20 mA
Maximum output current sunk by any I/O pin	25 mA
Maximum output current sourced by any I/O pin	25 mA
Maximum current sunk by all ports	200 mA
Maximum current sourced by all ports	200 mA

Note 1: Power dissipation is calculated as follows:
$P_{dis} = V_{DD} \times \{I_{DD} - \sum I_{OH}\} + \sum \{(V_{DD} - V_{OH}) \times I_{OH}\} + \sum(V_{OL} \times I_{OL})$

2: Voltage spikes below V_{SS} at the $\overline{MCLR}$/V_{PP}/RA5/$\overline{FLTA}$ pin, inducing currents greater than 80 mA, may cause latch-up. Thus, a series resistor of 50-100Ω should be used when applying a "low" level to the $\overline{MCLR}$/V_{PP}/RA5/$\overline{FLTA}$ pin, rather than pulling this pin directly to V_{SS}.

† **NOTICE:** Stresses above those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at those or any other conditions above those indicated in the operation listings of this specification is not implied. Exposure to maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

FIGURE 22-1: PIC18F1230/1330 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH (INDUSTRIAL)

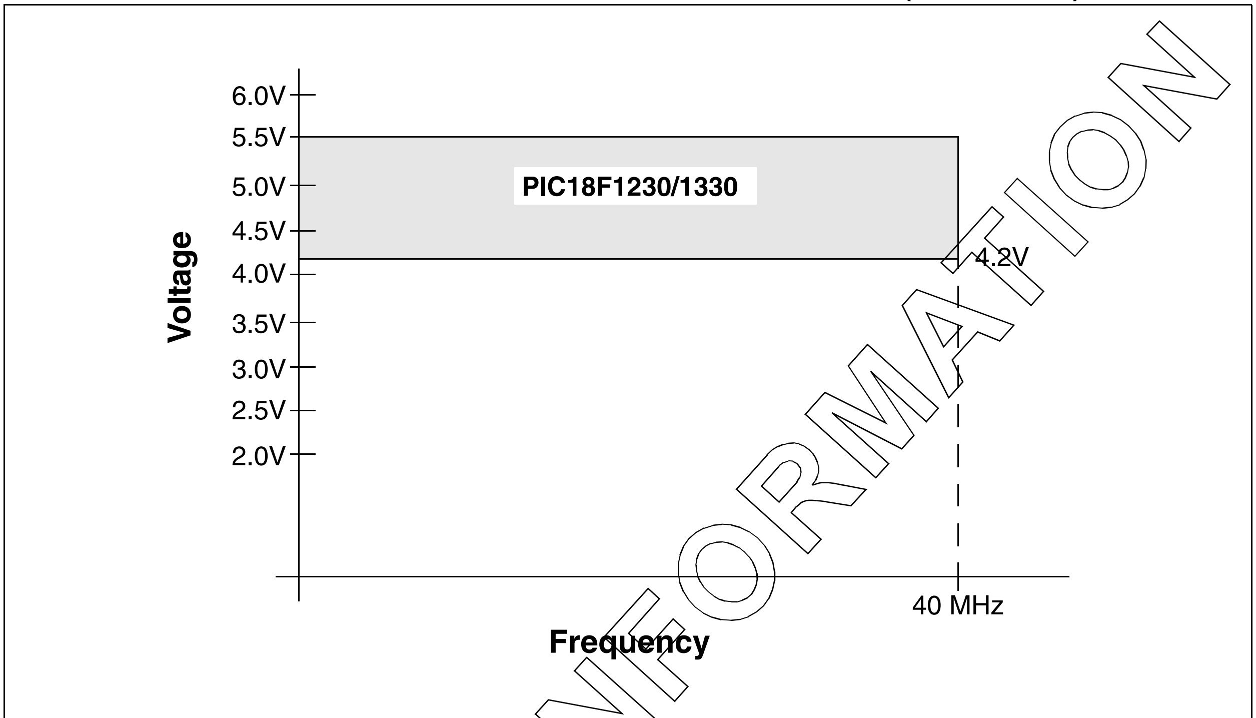
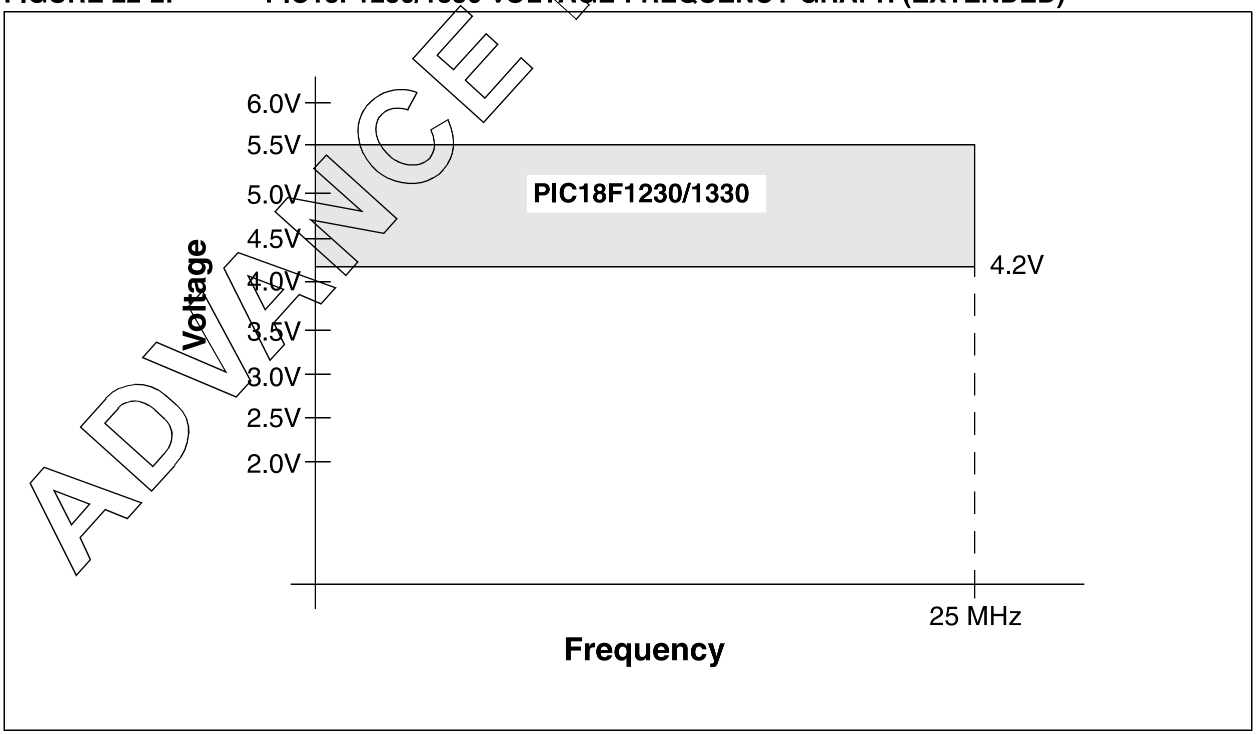


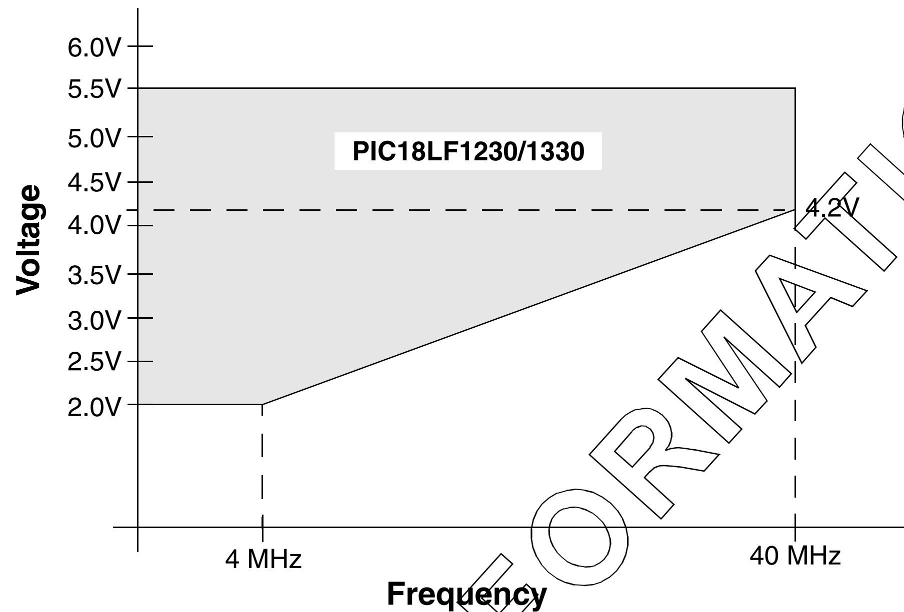
FIGURE 22-2: PIC18F1230/1330 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH (EXTENDED)



ADVANCE INFORMATION

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 22-3: PIC18LF1230/1330 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH (INDUSTRIAL)



$F_{MAX} = (16.36 \text{ MHz/V}) (V_{DDAPPMIN} - 2.0V) + 4 \text{ MHz}$

Note: $V_{DDAPPMIN}$ is the minimum voltage of the PICmicro® device in the application.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

22.1 DC Characteristics: Supply Voltage PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)

PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial				
PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial, Extended)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial; -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
D001	VDD	**Supply Voltage**					
		PIC18LF1230/1330	2.0	—	5.5	V	HS, XT, RC and LP Oscillator modes
		PIC18F1230/1330	4.2	—	5.5	V	
D002	VDR	**RAM Data Retention Voltage**(1)	1.5	—	—	V	
D003	VPOR	**VDD Start Voltage** to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal	—	—	0.7	V	See section on Power-on Reset for details
D004	SVDD	**VDD Rise Rate** to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal	0.05	—	—	V/ms	See section on Power-on Reset for details
	VBOR	**Brown-out Reset Voltage**					
D005		PIC18LF1230/1330					
		BORV1:BORV0 = 11	2.00	2.05	2.16	V	
		BORV1:BORV0 = 10	2.65	2.79	2.93	V	
D005		All devices					
		BORV1:BORV0 = 01	4.11	4.33	4.55	V	
		BORV1:BORV0 = 00	4.36	4.59	4.82	V	

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered in Sleep mode, or during a device Reset, without losing RAM data.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)

PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)					Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial	
PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial, Extended)					**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended	
Param No.	**Device**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**	
	Power-Down Current (IPD)[1]					
	PIC18LF1230/1330	100	TBD	nA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V (**Sleep** mode)
		0.1	TBD	μA	+25°C	
		0.2	TBD	μA	+85°C	
	PIC18LF1230/1330	0.1	TBD	μA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V (**Sleep** mode)
		0.1	TBD	μA	+25°C	
		0.3	TBD	μA	+85°C	
	All devices	0.1	TBD	μA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V (**Sleep** mode)
		0.1	TBD	μA	+25°C	
		0.4	TBD	μA	+85°C	
	Extended devices only	10	TBD	μA	+125°C	

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined. Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD or VSS;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: Low-power Timer1 oscillator selected.

4: BOR and LVD enable internal band gap reference. With both modules enabled, current consumption will be less than the sum of both specifications.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

22.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)	Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial
PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial, Extended)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial; -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Device	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions		
	Supply Current (IDD)(2)						
	PIC18LF1230/1330	15	TBD	μA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 31 kHz (**RC_RUN** mode, INTRC source)
		15	TBD	μA	+25°C		
		15	TBD	μA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	40	TBD	μA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		35	TBD	μA	+25°C		
		30	TBD	μA	+85°C		
	All devices	105	TBD	μA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		90	TBD	μA	+25°C		
		80	TBD	μA	+85°C		
	Extended devices only	80	TBD	μA	+125°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	0.32	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 1 MHz (**RC_RUN** mode, INTOSC source)
		0.33	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		0.33	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	0.6	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		0.55	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		0.6	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	All devices	1.1	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		1.1	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		1.0	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	Extended devices only	1	TBD	mA	+125°C		

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined. Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD or VSS;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: Low-power Timer1 oscillator selected.

4: BOR and LVD enable internal band gap reference. With both modules enabled, current consumption will be less than the sum of both specifications.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)	Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial
PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial, Extended)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Device	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions		
	Supply Current (IDD)(2)						
	PIC18LF1230/1330	0.8	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 4 MHz (**RC_RUN** mode, INTOSC source)
		0.8	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		0.8	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	1.3	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		1.3	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		1.3	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	All devices	2.5	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		2.5	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		2.5	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	Extended devices only	2.5	TBD	mA	+125°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	2.9	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 31 kHz (**RC_IDLE** mode, INTRC source)
		3.1	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		3.6	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	4.5	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		4.8	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		5.8	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	9.2	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		9.8	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		11.4	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	Extended devices only	21	TBD	µA	+125°C		

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined. Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD or VSS;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: Low-power Timer1 oscillator selected.

4: BOR and LVD enable internal band gap reference. With both modules enabled, current consumption will be less than the sum of both specifications.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

22.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial
PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial, Extended)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Device	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions		
	Supply Current (IDD)(2)						
	PIC18LF1230/1330	165	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 1 MHz (**RC_IDLE** mode, INTOSC source)
		175	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		190	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	250	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		270	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		290	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	500	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		520	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		550	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	Extended devices only	0.6	TBD	mA	+125°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	340	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 4 MHz (**RC_IDLE** mode, INTOSC source)
		350	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		360	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	520	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		540	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		580	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	1.0	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		1.1	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		1.1	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	Extended devices only	1.1	TBD	mA	+125°C		

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined. Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD or VSS;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: Low-power Timer1 oscillator selected.

4: BOR and LVD enable internal band gap reference. With both modules enabled, current consumption will be less than the sum of both specifications.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial
PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial, Extended)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Device	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions		
	Supply Current (IDD)[2]						
	PIC18LF1230/1330	250	TBD	μA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 1 MHz (**PRI_RUN**, EC oscillator)
		260	TBD	μA	+25°C		
		250	TBD	μA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	550	TBD	μA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		480	TBD	μA	+25°C		
		460	TBD	μA	+85°C		
	All devices	1.2	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		1.1	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		1.0	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	Extended devices only	1.0	TBD	mA	+125°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	0.72	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 4 MHz (**PRI_RUN**, EC oscillator)
		0.74	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		0.74	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	1.3	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		1.3	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		1.3	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	All devices	2.7	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		2.6	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		2.5	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	Extended devices only	2.6	TBD	mA	+125°C		
	Extended devices only	8.4	TBD	mA	+125°C	VDD = 4.2V	FOSC = 25 MHz (**PRI_RUN**, EC oscillator)
		11	TBD	mA	+125°C	VDD = 5.0V	
	All devices	15	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 4.2V	FOSC = 40 MHz (**PRI_RUN**, EC oscillator)
		16	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		16	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	All devices	21	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		21	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		21	TBD	mA	+85°C		

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined. Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD or VSS;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: Low-power Timer1 oscillator selected.

4: BOR and LVD enable internal band gap reference. With both modules enabled, current consumption will be less than the sum of both specifications.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

22.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial
PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial, Extended)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Device	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions		
	Supply Current (IDD)(2)						
	All devices	7.5	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 4.2V	FOSC = 4 MHz, 16 MHz internal (**PRI_RUN HS+PLL**)
		7.4	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		7.3	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	Extended devices only	8.0	TBD	mA	+125°C		
	All devices	10	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	FOSC = 4 MHz, 16 MHz internal (**PRI_RUN HS+PLL**)
		10	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		9.7	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	Extended devices only	10	TBD	mA	+125°C		
	All devices	17	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 4.2V	FOSC = 10 MHz, 40 MHz internal (**PRI_RUN HS+PLL**)
		17	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		17	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	All devices	23	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	FOSC = 10 MHz, 40 MHz internal (**PRI_RUN HS+PLL**)
		23	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		23	TBD	mA	+85°C		

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined. Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD or VSS;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: Low-power Timer1 oscillator selected.

4: BOR and LVD enable internal band gap reference. With both modules enabled, current consumption will be less than the sum of both specifications.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial
PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial, Extended)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Device	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions		
	Supply Current (IDD)[2]						
	PIC18LF1230/1330	65	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 1 MHz (**PRI_IDLE** mode, EC oscillator)
		65	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		70	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	120	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		120	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		130	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	300	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		240	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		300	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	Extended devices only	320	TBD	µA	+125°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	260	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 4 MHz (**PRI_IDLE** mode, EC oscillator)
		255	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		270	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	420	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		430	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		450	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	0.9	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		0.9	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		0.9	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	Extended devices only	1	TBD	mA	+125°C		
	Extended devices only	2.8	TBD	mA	+125°C	VDD = 4.2V	FOSC = 25 MHz (**PRI_IDLE** mode, EC oscillator)
		4.3	TBD	mA	+125°C	VDD = 5.0V	
	All devices	6.0	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 4.2V	FOSC = 40 MHz (**PRI_IDLE** mode, EC oscillator)
		6.2	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		6.6	TBD	mA	+85°C		
	All devices	8.1	TBD	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		9.1	TBD	mA	+25°C		
		8.3	TBD	mA	+85°C		

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined. Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD or VSS;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: Low-power Timer1 oscillator selected.

4: BOR and LVD enable internal band gap reference. With both modules enabled, current consumption will be less than the sum of both specifications.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

22.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)	Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial
PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial, Extended)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Device	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions		
	Supply Current (IDD)[2]						
	PIC18LF1230/1330	14	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 32 kHz[4] (**SEC_RUN** mode, Timer1 as clock)
		15	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		16	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	40	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		35	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		31	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	99	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		81	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		75	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	2.5	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 32 kHz[4] (**SEC_IDLE** mode, Timer1 as clock)
		3.7	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		4.5	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	PIC18LF1230/1330	5.0	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		5.4	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		6.3	TBD	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	8.5	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		9.0	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		10.5	TBD	µA	+85°C		

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined. Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD or VSS;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: Low-power Timer1 oscillator selected.

4: BOR and LVD enable internal band gap reference. With both modules enabled, current consumption will be less than the sum of both specifications.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial
PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial, Extended)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Device	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions		
	Module Differential Currents (ΔIWDT, ΔIBOR, ΔILVD, ΔIOSCB, ΔIAD)						
D022 (ΔIWDT)	**Watchdog Timer**	1.3	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	
		1.4	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		2.0	TBD	µA	+85°C		
		1.9	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		2.0	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		2.8	TBD	µA	+85°C		
		4.0	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		5.5	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		5.6	TBD	µA	+85°C		
		13	TBD	µA	+125°C		
D022A (ΔIBOR)	**Brown-out Reset**(4)	35	TBD	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		40	TBD	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		55	TBD	µA	-40°C to +125°C		
		0	TBD	µA	-40°C to +85°C		Sleep mode, BOREN1:BOREN0 = 10
		0	TBD	µA	-40°C to +125°C		
D022B (ΔILVD)	**Low-Voltage Detect**(4)	22	TBD	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.0V	
		25	TBD	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		29	TBD	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		30	TBD	µA	-40°C to +125°C		
D025 (ΔIOSCB)	**Timer1 Oscillator**	2.1	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	32 kHz on Timer1(3)
		1.8	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		2.1	TBD	µA	+85°C		
		2.2	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	32 kHz on Timer1(3)
		2.6	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		2.9	TBD	µA	+85°C		
		3.0	TBD	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	32 kHz on Timer1(3)
		3.2	TBD	µA	+25°C		
		3.4	TBD	µA	+85°C		

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined. Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD or VSS;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: Low-power Timer1 oscillator selected.

4: BOR and LVD enable internal band gap reference. With both modules enabled, current consumption will be less than the sum of both specifications.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

22.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)		Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial, Extended)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial; -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended					
Param No.	**Device**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**		
	Module Differential Currents (ΔIWDT, ΔIBOR, ΔILVD, ΔIOSCB, ΔIAD)						
D026 (ΔIAD)	**A/D Converter**	1.0	TBD	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.0V	A/D on, not converting
		1.0	TBD	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		1.0	TBD	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		2.0	TBD	µA	-40°C to +125°C		

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined. Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD or VSS;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: Low-power Timer1 oscillator selected.

4: BOR and LVD enable internal band gap reference. With both modules enabled, current consumption will be less than the sum of both specifications.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.3 DC Characteristics: PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +85°C for industrial			
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	V_{IL}	**Input Low Voltage**				
		I/O ports:				
D030		with TTL buffer	V_{SS}	0.15 V_{DD}	V	V_{DD} < 4.5V
D030A			—	0.8	V	4.5V ≤ V_{DD} ≤ 5.5V
D031		with Schmitt Trigger buffer	V_{SS}	0.2 V_{DD}	V	
D032		$\overline{MCLR}$	V_{SS}	0.2 V_{DD}	V	
D033		OSC1	V_{SS}	0.3 V_{DD}	V	HS, HSPLL modes
D033A		OSC1	V_{SS}	0.2 V_{DD}	V	RC, EC modes(1)
D033B		OSC1	V_{SS}	0.3	V	XT, LP modes
D034		T1CKI	V_{SS}	0.3	V	
	V_{IH}	**Input High Voltage**				
		I/O ports:				
D040		with TTL buffer	0.25 V_{DD} + 0.8V	V_{DD}	V	V_{DD} < 4.5V
D040A			2.0	V_{DD}	V	4.5V ≤ V_{DD} ≤ 5.5V
D041		with Schmitt Trigger buffer	0.8 V_{DD}	V_{DD}	V	
D042		$\overline{MCLR}$	0.8 V_{DD}	V_{DD}	V	
D043		OSC1	0.7 V_{DD}	V_{DD}	V	HS, HSPLL modes
D043A		OSC1	0.8 V_{DD}	V_{DD}	V	EC mode
D043B		OSC1	0.9 V_{DD}	V_{DD}	V	RC mode(1)
D043C		OSC1	1.6	V_{DD}	V	XT, LP modes
D044		T1CKI	1.6	V_{DD}	V	
	I_{IL}	**Input Leakage Current**(2,3)				
D060		I/O ports	—	±1	μA	V_{SS} ≤ V_{PIN} ≤ V_{DD}, Pin at high-impedance
D061		$\overline{MCLR}$	—	±5	μA	V_{SS} ≤ V_{PIN} ≤ V_{DD}
D063		OSC1	—	±5	μA	V_{SS} ≤ V_{PIN} ≤ V_{DD}
	I_{PU}	**Weak Pull-up Current**				
D070	I_{PURB}	PORTB weak pull-up current	50	400	μA	V_{DD} = 5V, V_{PIN} = V_{SS}

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended that the PICmicro® device be driven with an external clock while in RC mode.

2: The leakage current on the $\overline{MCLR}$ pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

3: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

4: Parameter is characterized but not tested.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

22.3 DC Characteristics: PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial) PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial) (Continued)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial			
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	VOL	**Output Low Voltage**				
D080		I/O ports	—	0.6	V	IOL = 8.5 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D083		OSC2/CLKO (RC, RCIO, EC, ECIO modes)	—	0.6	V	IOL = 1.6 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
	VOH	**Output High Voltage(3)**				
D090		I/O ports	VDD – 0.7	—	V	IOH = -3.0 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D092		OSC2/CLKO (RC, RCIO, EC, ECIO modes)	VDD – 0.7	—	V	IOH = -1.3 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
		Capacitive Loading Specs on Output Pins				
D100(4)	COSC2	OSC2 pin	—	15	pF	In XT, HS and LP modes when external clock is used to drive OSC1
D101	CIO	All I/O pins and OSC2 (in RC mode)	—	50	pF	To meet the AC Timing Specifications

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended that the PICmicro® device be driven with an external clock while in RC mode.

2: The leakage current on the MCLR pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

3: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

4: Parameter is characterized but not tested.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 22-1: MEMORY PROGRAMMING REQUIREMENTS

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +85°C for industrial				
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Typ†**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
		Data EEPROM Memory					
D120	E_D	Byte Endurance	100K	1M	—	E/W	-40°C to +85°C
D121	V_{DRW}	V_{DD} for Read/Write	V_{MIN}	—	5.5	V	Using EECON to read/write V_{MIN} = Minimum operating voltage
D122	T_{DEW}	Erase/Write Cycle Time	—	4	—	ms	
D123	T_{RETD}	Characteristic Retention	40	—	—	Year	Provided no other specifications are violated
D124	T_{REF}	Number of Total Erase/Write Cycles before Refresh(1)	1M	10M	—	E/W	-40°C to +85°C
D125	I_{DDP}	Supply Current during Programming	—	10	—	mA	
		Program Flash Memory					
D130	E_P	Cell Endurance	10K	100K	—	E/W	-40°C to +85°C
D131	V_{PR}	V_{DD} for Read	V_{MIN}	—	5.5	V	V_{MIN} = Minimum operating voltage
D132B	V_{PEW}	V_{DD} for Self-Timed Write	V_{MIN}	—	5.5	V	V_{MIN} = Minimum operating voltage
D133A	T_{IW}	Self-Timed Write Cycle Time	—	2	—	ms	
D134	T_{RETD}	Characteristic Retention	40	100	—	Year	Provided no other specifications are violated
D135	I_{DDP}	Supply Current during Programming	—	10	—	mA	

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: Refer to **Section 7.8 "Using the Data EEPROM"** for a more detailed discussion on data EEPROM endurance.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

TABLE 22-2: COMPARATOR SPECIFICATIONS

Operating Conditions: 3.0V < VDD < 5.5V, -40°C < TA < +85°C (unless otherwise stated).							
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristics**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Comments**
D300	VIOFF	Input Offset Voltage	—	±5.0	±10	mV	
D301	VICM	Input Common Mode Voltage	0	—	VDD – 1.5	V	
D302	CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio	55	—	—	dB	
300	TRESP	Response Time(1)	—	150	400	ns	PIC18**F**XXXX
300A			—	150	600	ns	PIC18**LF**XXXX, VDD = 2.0V
301	TMC2OV	Comparator Mode Change to Output Valid	—	—	10	µs	

Note 1: Response time measured with one comparator input at (VDD – 1.5)/2, while the other input transitions from VSS to VDD.

TABLE 22-3: VOLTAGE REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS

Operating Conditions: 3.0V < VDD < 5.5V, -40°C < TA < +85°C (unless otherwise stated).							
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristics**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Comments**
D310	VRES	Resolution	VDD/24	—	VDD/32	LSb	
D311	VRAA	Absolute Accuracy	—	—	1/2	LSb	
D312	VRUR	Unit Resistor Value (R)	—	2k	—	Ω	
310	TSET	Settling Time(1)	—	—	10	µs	

Note 1: Settling time measured while CVRR = `1` and CVR3:CVR0 transitions from ‘`0000`’ to ‘`1111`’.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 22-4: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT CHARACTERISTICS

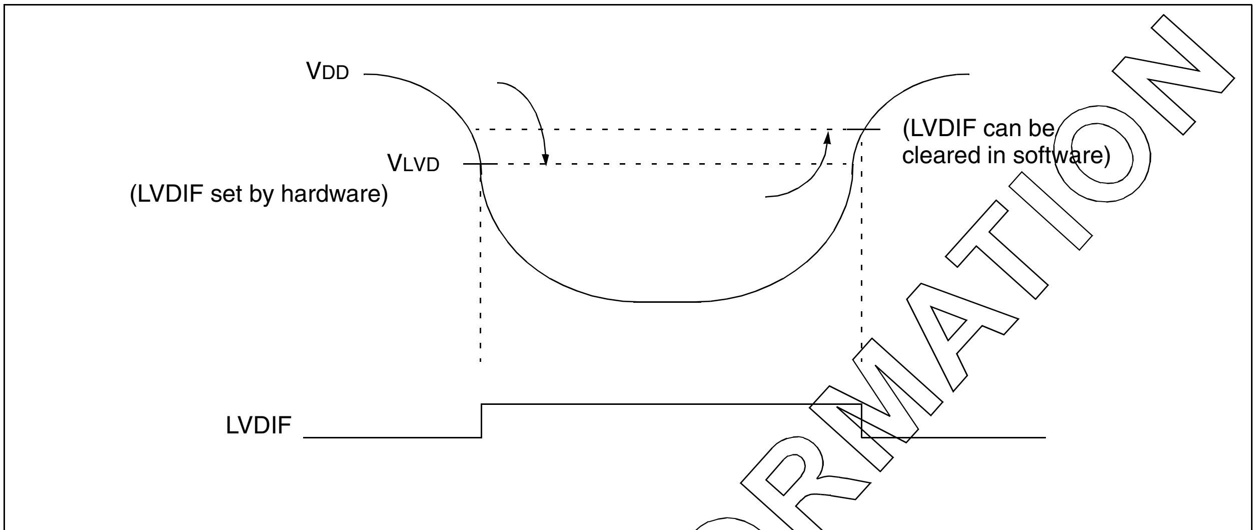


TABLE 22-4: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT CHARACTERISTICS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)
Operating temperature -40°C $\leq T_A \leq$ +85°C for industrial

Param No.	Sym	Characteristic		Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
D420		LVD Voltage on V_{DD} Transition High-to-Low	LVDL<3:0> = 0000	2.06	2.17	2.28	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0001	2.12	2.23	2.34	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0010	2.24	2.36	2.48	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0011	2.32	2.44	2.56	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0100	2.47	2.60	2.73	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0101	2.65	2.79	2.93	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0110	2.74	2.89	3.04	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0111	2.96	3.12	3.28	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1000	3.22	3.39	3.56	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1001	3.37	3.55	3.73	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1010	3.52	3.71	3.90	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1011	3.70	3.90	4.10	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1100	3.90	4.11	4.32	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1101	4.11	4.33	4.55	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1110	4.36	4.59	4.82	V	

ADVANCE INFORMATION

22.4 AC (Timing) Characteristics

22.4.1 TIMING PARAMETER SYMBOLOGY

The timing parameter symbols have been created using one of the following formats:

1. TppS2ppS		3. TCC:ST	(I^2C specifications only)
2. TppS		4. Ts	(I^2C specifications only)
T			
F	Frequency	T	Time
Lowercase letters (pp) and their meanings:			
pp			
cc	CCP1	osc	OSC1
ck	CLKO	rd	$\overline{\text{RD}}$
cs	$\overline{\text{CS}}$	rw	$\overline{\text{RD}}$ or $\overline{\text{WR}}$
di	SDI	sc	SCK
do	SDO	ss	$\overline{\text{SS}}$
dt	Data in	t0	T0CKI
io	I/O port	t1	T13CKI
mc	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$	wr	$\overline{\text{WR}}$
Uppercase letters and their meanings:			
S			
F	Fall	P	Period
H	High	R	Rise
I	Invalid (High-impedance)	V	Valid
L	Low	Z	High-impedance
I^2C only			
AA	output access	High	High
BUF	Bus free	Low	Low
TCC:ST (I^2C specifications only)			
CC			
HD	Hold	SU	Setup
ST			
DAT	DATA input hold	STO	Stop condition
STA	Start condition		

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.4.2 TIMING CONDITIONS

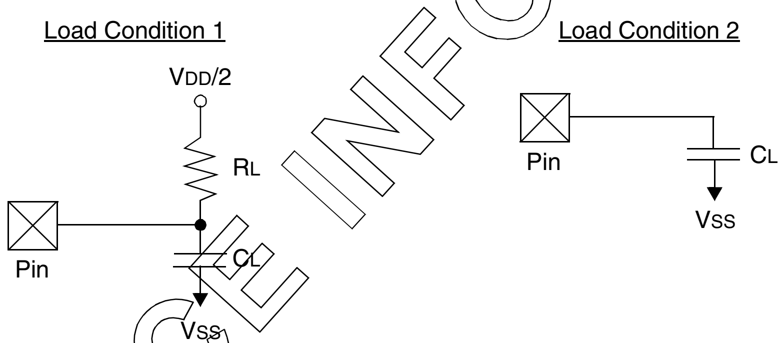
The temperature and voltages specified in Table 22-5 apply to all timing specifications unless otherwise noted. Figure 22-5 specifies the load conditions for the timing specifications.

Note: Because of space limitations, the generic terms "PIC18FXXXX" and "PIC18LFXXXX" are used throughout this section to refer to the PIC18F1230/1330 and PIC18LF1230/1330 families of devices specifically and only those devices.

TABLE 22-5: TEMPERATURE AND VOLTAGE SPECIFICATIONS – AC

AC CHARACTERISTICS	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +85°C for industrial Operating voltage V_{DD} range as described in DC spec **Section 22.1** and **Section 22.3**. LF parts operate for industrial temperatures only.

FIGURE 22-5: LOAD CONDITIONS FOR DEVICE TIMING SPECIFICATIONS



R_L = 464Ω

C_L = 50 pF for all pins except OSC2/CLKO and including D and E outputs as ports

ADVANCE INFORMATION

22.4.3 TIMING DIAGRAMS AND SPECIFICATIONS

FIGURE 22-6: EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING (ALL MODES EXCEPT PLL)

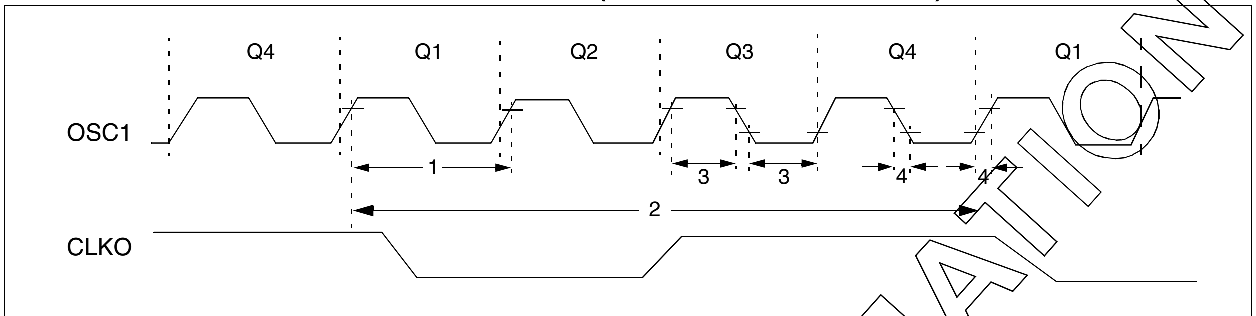


TABLE 22-6: EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Max	Units	Conditions
1A	FOSC	External CLKI Frequency(1)	DC	1	MHz	XT, RC Oscillator modes
			DC	20	MHz	HS Oscillator mode
			DC	31.25	kHz	LP Oscillator mode
		Oscillator Frequency(1)	DC	4	MHz	RC Oscillator mode
			0.1	4	MHz	XT Oscillator mode
			4	20	MHz	HS Oscillator mode
			5	200	kHz	LP Oscillator mode
1	TOSC	External CLKI Period(1)	1000	—	ns	XT, RC Oscillator modes
			50	—	ns	HS Oscillator mode
			32	—	μs	LP Oscillator mode
		Oscillator Period(1)	250	—	ns	RC Oscillator mode
			250	1	μs	XT Oscillator mode
			100	250	ns	HS Oscillator mode
			50	250	ns	HS Oscillator mode
			5	—	μs	LP Oscillator mode
2	TCY	Instruction Cycle Time(1)	100	—	ns	TCY = 4/FOSC, Industrial
			160	—	ns	TCY = 4/FOSC, Extended
3	TOSL, TOSH	External Clock in (OSC1) High or Low Time	30	—	ns	XT Oscillator mode
			2.5	—	μs	LP Oscillator mode
			10	—	ns	HS Oscillator mode
4	TOSR, TOSF	External Clock in (OSC1) Rise or Fall Time	—	20	ns	XT Oscillator mode
			—	50	ns	LP Oscillator mode
			—	7.5	ns	HS Oscillator mode

Note 1: Instruction cycle period (TCY) equals four times the input oscillator time base period for all configurations except PLL. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type under standard operating conditions with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at “min.” values with an external clock applied to the OSC1/CLKI pin. When an external clock input is used, the “max.” cycle time limit is “DC” (no clock) for all devices.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 22-7: PLL CLOCK TIMING SPECIFICATIONS (VDD = 4.2V TO 5.5V)

Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
F10	FOSC	Oscillator Frequency Range	4	—	10	MHz	HS mode only
F11	FSYS	On-Chip VCO System Frequency	16	—	40	MHz	HS mode only
F12	t_{rc}	PLL Start-up Time (Lock Time)	—	—	2	ms	
F13	ΔCLK	CLKO Stability (Jitter)	-2	—	+2	%	

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

TABLE 22-8: AC CHARACTERISTICS: INTERNAL RC ACCURACY PIC18F1230/1330 (INDUSTRIAL) PIC18LF1230/1330 (INDUSTRIAL)

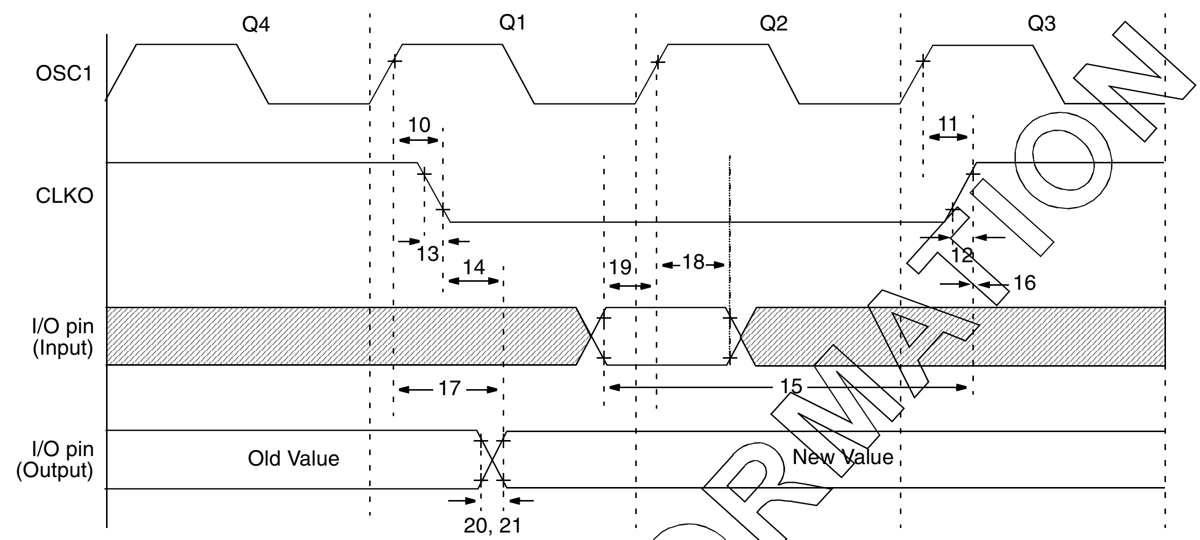
PIC18LF1230/1330 (Industrial)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial
PIC18F1230/1330 (Industrial)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial

Param No.	Device	Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions	
	INTOSC Accuracy @ Freq = 8 MHz, 4 MHz, 2 MHz, 1 MHz, 500 kHz, 250 kHz, 125 kHz, 31 kHz(1)						
	PIC18LF1230/1330	-2	+/-1	2	%	+25°C	VDD = 2.7-3.3V
		-5	—	5	%	-10°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.7-3.3V
		-10	+/-1	10	%	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.7-3.3V
	PIC18F1230/1330	-2	+/-1	2	%	+25°C	VDD = 4.5-5.5V
		-5	—	5	%	-10°C to +85°C	VDD = 4.5-5.5V
		-10	+/-1	10	%	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 4.5-5.5V
	INTRC Accuracy @ Freq = 31 kHz(2,3)						
	PIC18LF1230/1330	26.562	—	35.938	kHz	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.7-3.3V
	PIC18F1230/1330	26.562	—	35.938	kHz	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 4.5-5.5V

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.
Note 1: Frequency calibrated at 25°C. OSCTUNE register can be used to compensate for temperature drift.
2: INTRC frequency after calibration.
3: Change of INTRC frequency as VDD changes.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

FIGURE 22-7: CLKO AND I/O TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 22-5 for load conditions.

TABLE 22-9: CLKO AND I/O TIMING REQUIREMENTS

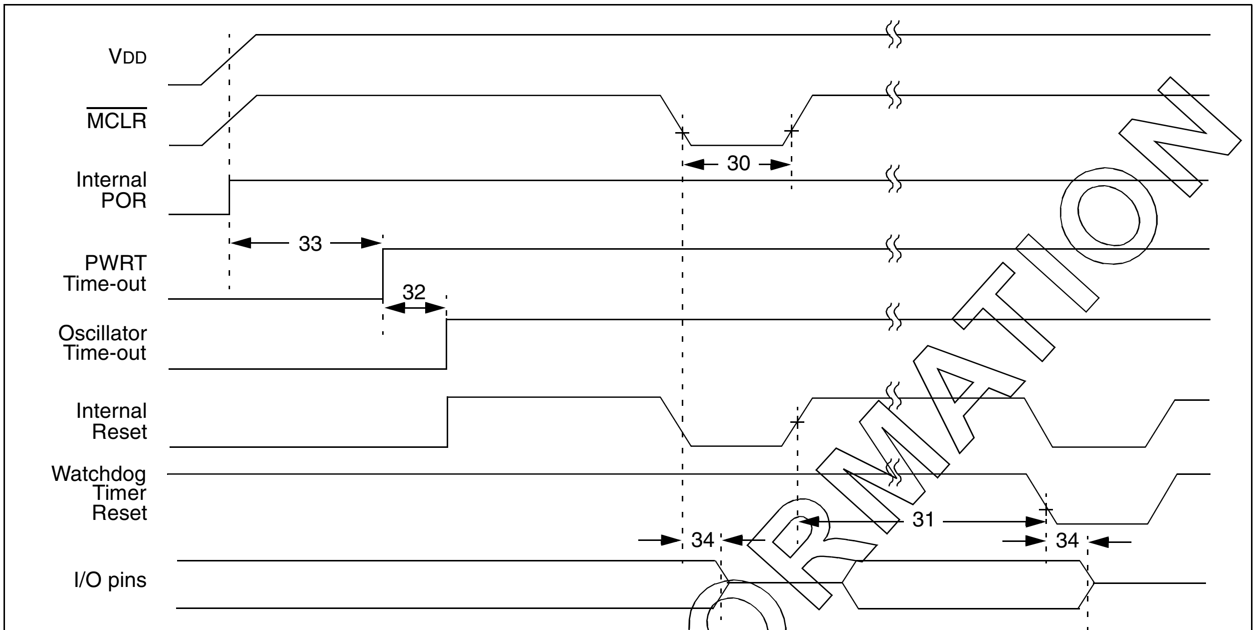
Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
10	TosH2ckL	OSC1 ↑ to CLKO ↓		—	75	200	ns	**(Note 1)**
11	TosH2ckH	OSC1 ↑ to CLKO ↑		—	75	200	ns	**(Note 1)**
12	TckR	CLKO Rise Time		—	35	100	ns	**(Note 1)**
13	TckF	CLKO Fall Time		—	35	100	ns	**(Note 1)**
14	TckL2ioV	CLKO ↓ to Port Out Valid		—	—	0.5 TCY + 20	ns	**(Note 1)**
15	TioV2ckH	Port In Valid before CLKO ↑		0.25 TCY + 25	—	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
16	TckH2ioI	Port In Hold after CLKO ↑		0	—	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
17	TosH2ioV	OSC1 ↑ (Q1 cycle) to Port Out Valid		—	50	150	ns	
18	TosH2ioI	OSC1 ↑ (Q2 cycle) to Port Input Invalid (I/O in hold time)	PIC18**F**XXXX	100	—	—	ns	
18A			PIC18**LF**XXXX	200	—	—	ns	VDD = 2.0V
19	TioV2osH	Port Input Valid to OSC1 ↑ (I/O in setup time)		0	—	—	ns	
20	TioR	Port Output Rise Time	PIC18**F**XXXX	—	10	25	ns	
20A			PIC18**LF**XXXX	—	—	60	ns	VDD = 2.0V
21	TioF	Port Output Fall Time	PIC18**F**XXXX	—	10	25	ns	
21A			PIC18**LF**XXXX	—	—	60	ns	VDD = 2.0V
22†	TINP	INTx Pin High or Low Time		TCY	—	—	ns	
23†	TRBP	RB7:RB4 Change INTx High or Low Time		TCY	—	—	ns	

† These parameters are asynchronous events not related to any internal clock edges.

Note 1: Measurements are taken in RC mode, where CLKO output is 4 x TOSC.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

FIGURE 22-8: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER AND POWER-UP TIMER TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 22-5 for load conditions.

FIGURE 22-9: BROWN-OUT RESET TIMING

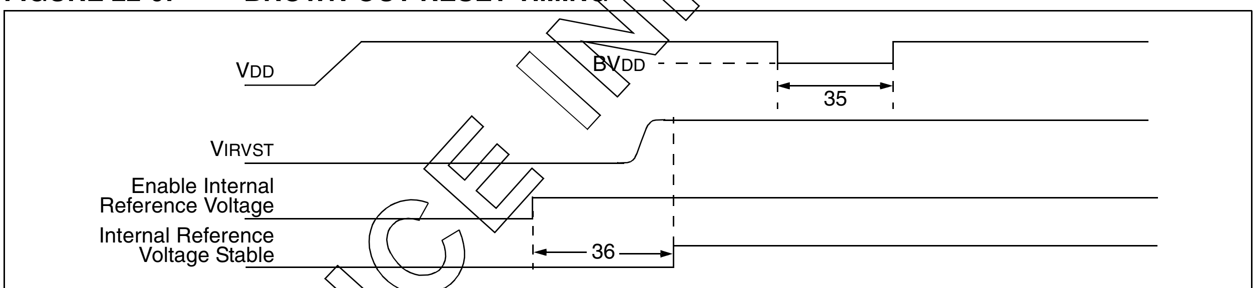
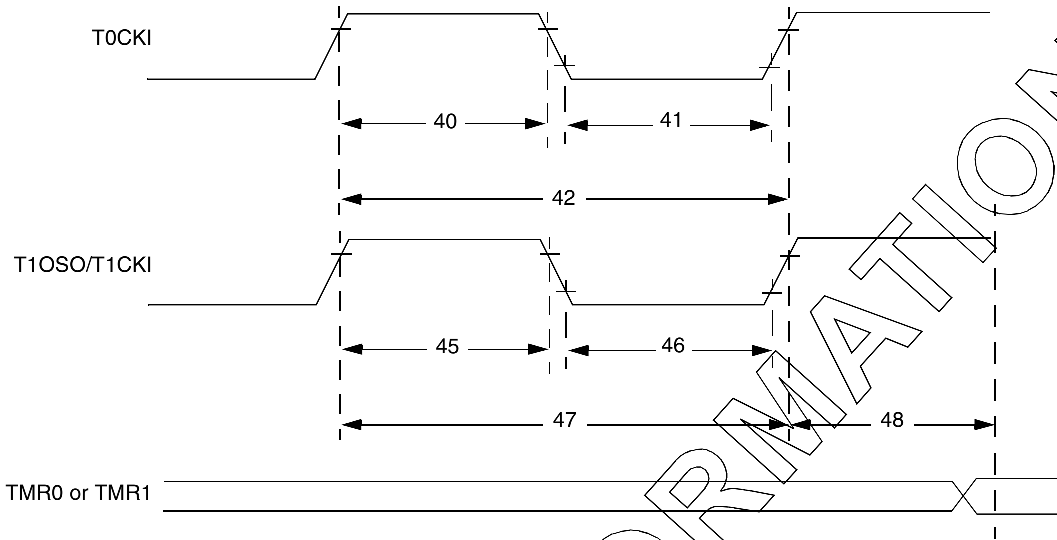


TABLE 22-10: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER, POWER-UP TIMER AND BROWN-OUT RESET REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
30	TmcL	$\overline{MCLR}$ Pulse Width (low)	2	—	—	μs	
31	TWDT	Watchdog Timer Time-out Period (no postscaler)	3.4	4.0	4.6	ms	
32	TOST	Oscillation Start-up Timer Period	1024 TOSC	—	1024 TOSC	—	TOSC = OSC1 period
33	TPWRT	Power-up Timer Period	55.6	65.5	75	ms	
34	TIOZ	I/O High-Impedance from $\overline{MCLR}$ Low or Watchdog Timer Reset	—	2	—	μs	
35	TBOR	Brown-out Reset Pulse Width	200	—	—	μs	VDD ≤ BVDD (see D005)
36	TIRVST	Time for Internal Reference Voltage to become Stable	—	20	50	μs	
37	TLVD	Low-Voltage Detect Pulse Width	200	—	—	μs	VDD ≤ VLVD
38	TCSD	CPU Start-up Time	—	10	—	μs	
39	TIOBST	Time for INTOSC to Stabilize	—	1	—	μs	

ADVANCE INFORMATION

FIGURE 22-10: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMINGS



Note: Refer to Figure 22-5 for load conditions.

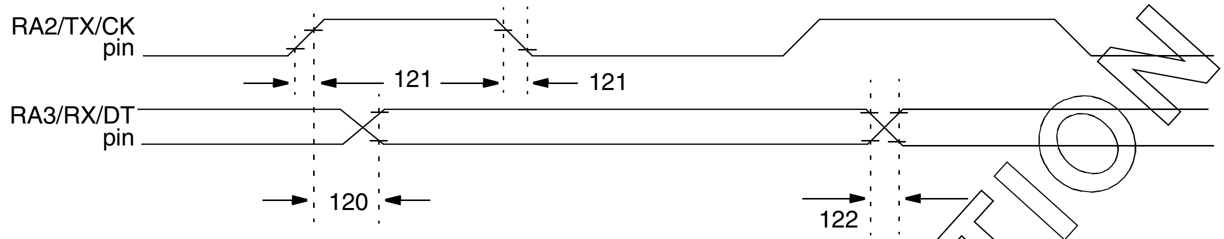
TABLE 22-11: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic			Min	Max	Units	Conditions
40	Tt0H	T0CKI High Pulse Width	No prescaler		0.5 TCY + 20	—	ns	
			With prescaler		10	—	ns	
41	Tt0L	T0CKI Low Pulse Width	No prescaler		0.5 TCY + 20	—	ns	
			With prescaler		10	—	ns	
42	Tt0P	T0CKI Period	No prescaler		TCY + 10	—	ns	
			With prescaler		Greater of: 20 ns or (TCY + 40)/N	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 2, 4,..., 256)
45	Tt1H	T1CKI High Time	Synchronous, no prescaler		0.5 TCY + 20	—	ns	
			Synchronous, with prescaler	PIC18**F**XXXX	10	—	ns	
				PIC18**LF**XXXX	25	—	ns	VDD = 2.0V
			Asynchronous	PIC18**F**XXXX	30	—	ns	
				PIC18**LF**XXXX	50	—	ns	VDD = 2.0V
46	Tt1L	T1CKI Low Time	Synchronous, no prescaler		0.5 TCY + 5	—	ns	
			Synchronous, with prescaler	PIC18**F**XXXX	10	—	ns	
				PIC18**LF**XXXX	25	—	ns	VDD = 2.0V
			Asynchronous	PIC18**F**XXXX	30	—	ns	
				PIC18**LF**XXXX	50	—	ns	VDD = 2.0V
47	Tt1P	T1CKI Input Period	Synchronous		Greater of: 20 ns or (TCY + 40)/N	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 2, 4, 8)
			Asynchronous		60	—	ns	
	Ft1	T1CKI Oscillator Input Frequency Range			DC	50	kHz	
48	Tcke2tmrl	Delay from External T1CKI Clock Edge to Timer Increment			2 TOSC	7 TOSC	—	

ADVANCE INFORMATION

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 22-11: EUSART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING

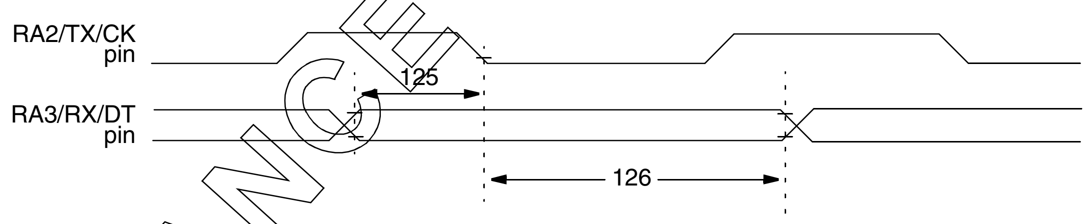


Note: Refer to Figure 22-5 for load conditions.

TABLE 22-12: EUSART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
120	TckH2dtV	SYNC XMIT (MASTER & SLAVE) Clock High to Data Out Valid	PIC18**F**XXXX	—	40	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXXX	—	100	ns	VDD = 2.0V
121	Tckrf	Clock Out Rise Time and Fall Time (Master mode)	PIC18**F**XXXX	—	20	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXXX	—	50	ns	VDD = 2.0V
122	Tdtrf	Data Out Rise Time and Fall Time	PIC18**F**XXXX	—	20	ns	
			PIC18**LF**XXXX	—	50	ns	VDD = 2.0V

FIGURE 22-12: EUSART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 22-5 for load conditions.

TABLE 22-13: EUSART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Max	Units	Conditions
125	TdtV2ckl	SYNC RCV (MASTER & SLAVE) Data Hold before CK ↓ (DT hold time)	10	—	ns	
126	TckL2dtl	Data Hold after CK ↓ (DT hold time)	15	—	ns	

ADVANCE INFORMATION

**TABLE 22-14: A/D CONVERTER CHARACTERISTICS: PIC18F1230/1330 (INDUSTRIAL)
PIC18LF1230/1330 (INDUSTRIAL)**

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
A01	NR	Resolution	—	—	10	bit	ΔVREF ≥ 3.0V
A03	EIL	Integral Linearity Error	—	—	< ±1	LSb	ΔVREF ≥ 3.0V
A04	EDL	Differential Linearity Error	—	—	< ±1	LSb	ΔVREF ≥ 3.0V
A06	EOFF	Offset Error	—	—	< ±1.5	LSb	ΔVREF ≥ 3.0V
A07	EGN	Gain Error	—	—	< ±1	LSb	ΔVREF ≥ 3.0V
A10	—	Monotonicity	Guaranteed(1)			—	VSS ≤ VAIN ≤ VREF
A20	ΔVREF	Reference Voltage Range (VREF+ – VSS)	1.8 3	— —	— —	V V	VDD < 3.0V VDD ≥ 3.0V
A21	VREF+	Positive Reference Voltage	VSS	—	VREF+	V	
A25	VAIN	Analog Input Voltage	VSS	—	VREF+	V	
A30	ZAIN	Recommended Impedance of Analog Voltage Source	—	—	2.5	kΩ	
A50	IREF	VREF+ Input Current(2)	— —	— —	5 150	μA μA	During VAIN acquisition. During A/D conversion cycle.

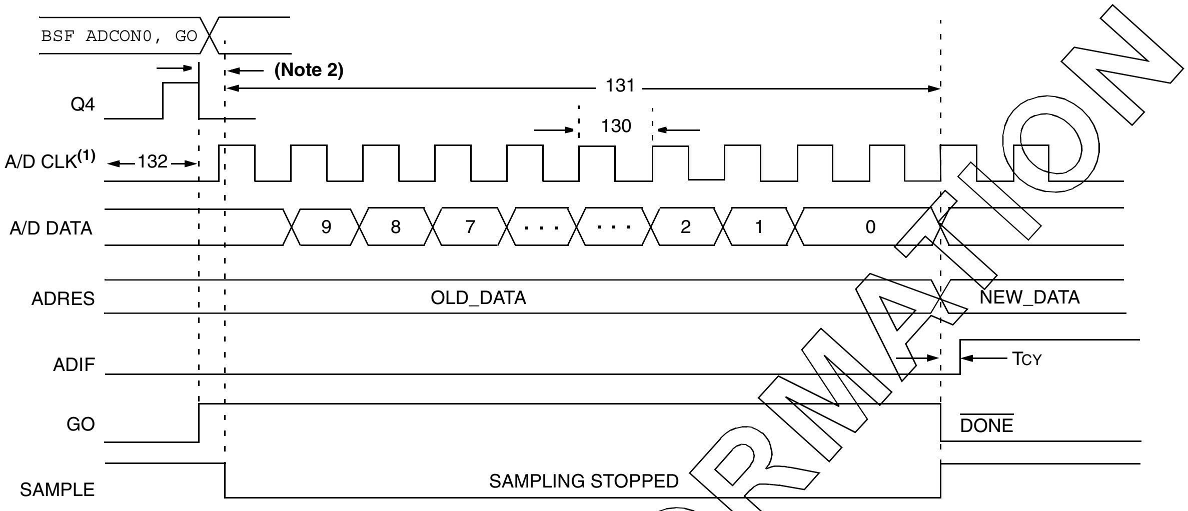
Note 1: The A/D conversion result never decreases with an increase in the input voltage and has no missing codes.

2: VREF+ current is from RA4/T0CKI/AN2/VREF+ pin or VDD, whichever is selected as the VREF+ source.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 22-13: A/D CONVERSION TIMING



Note 1: If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of T_{CY} is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the `SLEEP` instruction to be executed.

2: This is a minimal RC delay (typically 100 ns), which also disconnects the holding capacitor from the analog input.

TABLE 22-15: A/D CONVERSION REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
130	T_{AD}	A/D Clock Period	PIC18**F**XXXX	0.7	25.0[(1)]	μs	T_{OSC} based, $V_{REF} \geq 3.0V$
			PIC18**LF**XXXX	1.4	25.0[(1)]	μs	$V_{DD} = 2.0V$, T_{OSC} based, V_{REF} full range
			PIC18**F**XXXX	TBD	1	μs	A/D RC mode
			PIC18**LF**XXXX	TBD	3	μs	$V_{DD} = 2.0V$, A/D RC mode
131	T_{CNV}	Conversion Time (not including acquisition time)[(2)]		11	12	T_{AD}	
132	T_{ACQ}	Acquisition Time[(3)]		1.4 TBD	— —	μs μs	-40°C to +85°C 0°C ≤ to ≤ +85°C
135	T_{SWC}	Switching Time from Convert → Sample		—	**(Note 4)**		
TBD	T_{DIS}	Discharge Time		0.2	—	μs	

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined

Note 1: The time of the A/D clock period is dependent on the device frequency and the T_{AD} clock divider.

2: ADRES register may be read on the following T_{CY} cycle.

3: The time for the holding capacitor to acquire the "New" input voltage when the voltage changes full scale after the conversion (V_{DD} to V_{SS} or V_{SS} to V_{DD}). The source impedance (R_S) on the input channels is 50Ω.

4: On the following cycle of the device clock.

ADVANCE INFORMATION

NOTES:

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

23.0 DC AND AC CHARACTERISTICS GRAPHS AND TABLES

Graphs and tables are not available at this time.

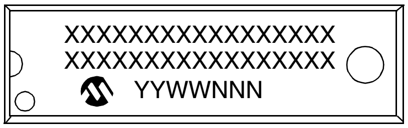
NOTES:

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

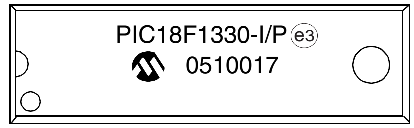
24.0 PACKAGING INFORMATION

24.1 Package Marking Information

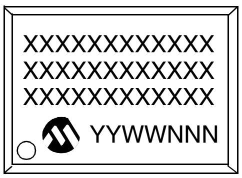
18-Lead PDIP



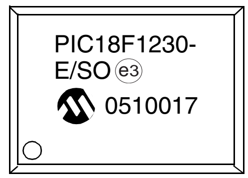
Example



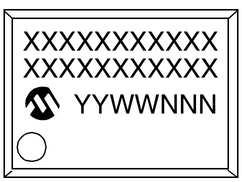
18-Lead SOIC



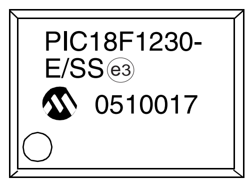
Example



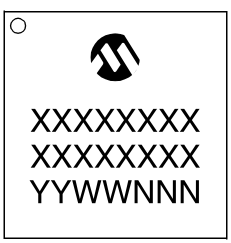
20-Lead SSOP



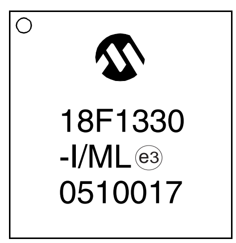
Example



28-Lead QFN



Example



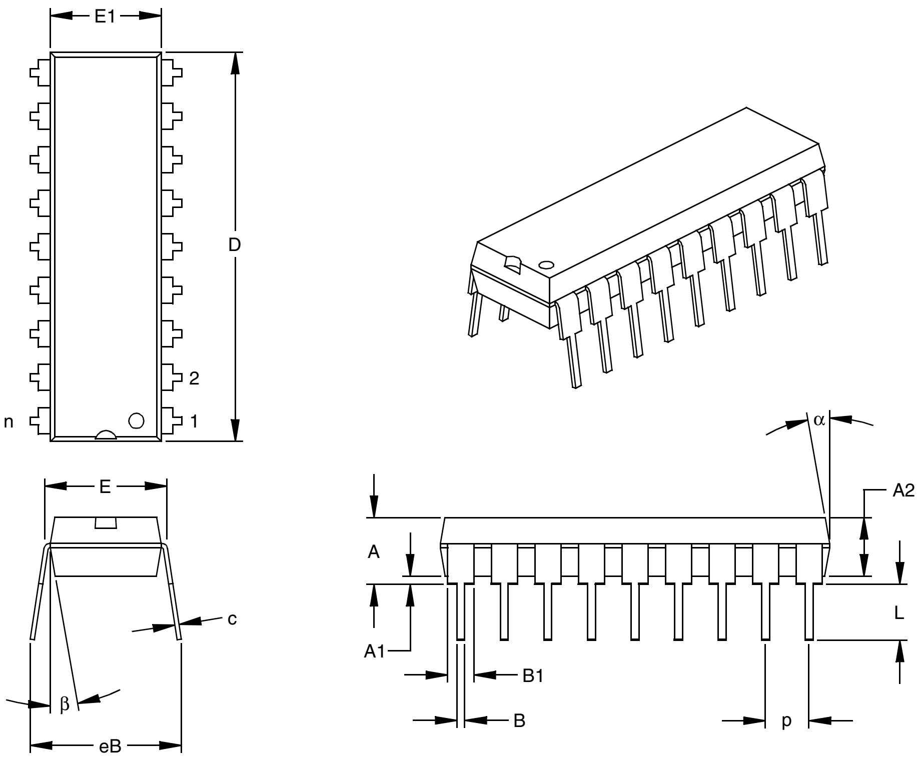
Legend:	XX...X	Customer-specific information
	Y	Year code (last digit of calendar year)
	YY	Year code (last 2 digits of calendar year)
	WW	Week code (week of January 1 is week '01')
	NNN	Alphanumeric traceability code
	e3	Pb-free JEDEC designator for Matte Tin (Sn)
	*	This package is Pb-free. The Pb-free JEDEC designator (e3) can be found on the outer packaging for this package.

Note: In the event the full Microchip part number cannot be marked on one line, it will be carried over to the next line, thus limiting the number of available characters for customer-specific information.

24.2 Package Details

The following sections give the technical details of the packages.

18-Lead Plastic Dual In-line (P) – 300 mil Body (PDIP)



Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		18			18	
Pitch	p		.100			2.54	
Top to Seating Plane	A	.140	.155	.170	3.56	3.94	4.32
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.115	.130	.145	2.92	3.30	3.68
Base to Seating Plane	A1	.015			0.38		
Shoulder to Shoulder Width	E	.300	.313	.325	7.62	7.94	8.26
Molded Package Width	E1	.240	.250	.260	6.10	6.35	6.60
Overall Length	D	.890	.898	.905	22.61	22.80	22.99
Tip to Seating Plane	L	.125	.130	.135	3.18	3.30	3.43
Lead Thickness	c	.008	.012	.015	0.20	0.29	0.38
Upper Lead Width	B1	.045	.058	.070	1.14	1.46	1.78
Lower Lead Width	B	.014	.018	.022	0.36	0.46	0.56
Overall Row Spacing **§**	eB	.310	.370	.430	7.87	9.40	10.92
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	5	10	15	5	10	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	5	10	15	5	10	15

***** Controlling Parameter

§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:

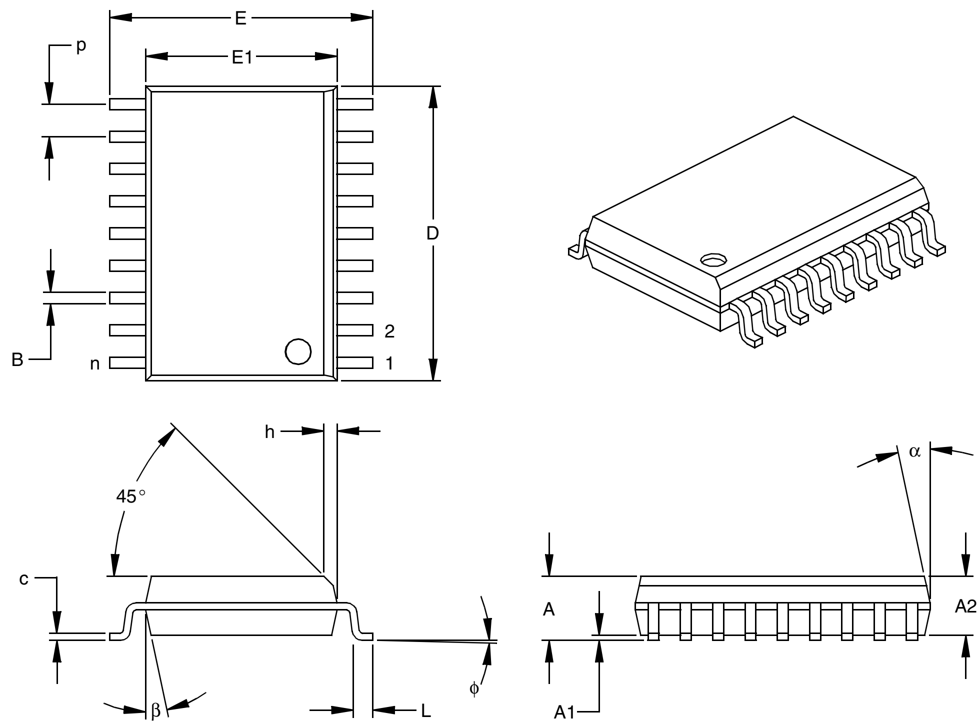
Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010” (0.254mm) per side.

JEDEC Equivalent: MS-001

Drawing No. C04-007

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

18-Lead Plastic Small Outline (SO) – Wide, 300 mil Body (SOIC)



Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		18			18	
Pitch	p		.050			1.27	
Overall Height	A	.093	.099	.104	2.36	2.50	2.64
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.088	.091	.094	2.24	2.31	2.39
Standoff §	A1	.004	.008	.012	0.10	0.20	0.30
Overall Width	E	.394	.407	.420	10.01	10.34	10.67
Molded Package Width	E1	.291	.295	.299	7.39	7.49	7.59
Overall Length	D	.446	.454	.462	11.33	11.53	11.73
Chamfer Distance	h	.010	.020	.029	0.25	0.50	0.74
Foot Length	L	.016	.033	.050	0.41	0.84	1.27
Foot Angle	φ	0	4	8	0	4	8
Lead Thickness	c	.009	.011	.012	0.23	0.27	0.30
Lead Width	B	.014	.017	.020	0.36	0.42	0.51
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	0	12	15	0	12	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	0	12	15	0	12	15

***** Controlling Parameter

§ Significant Characteristic

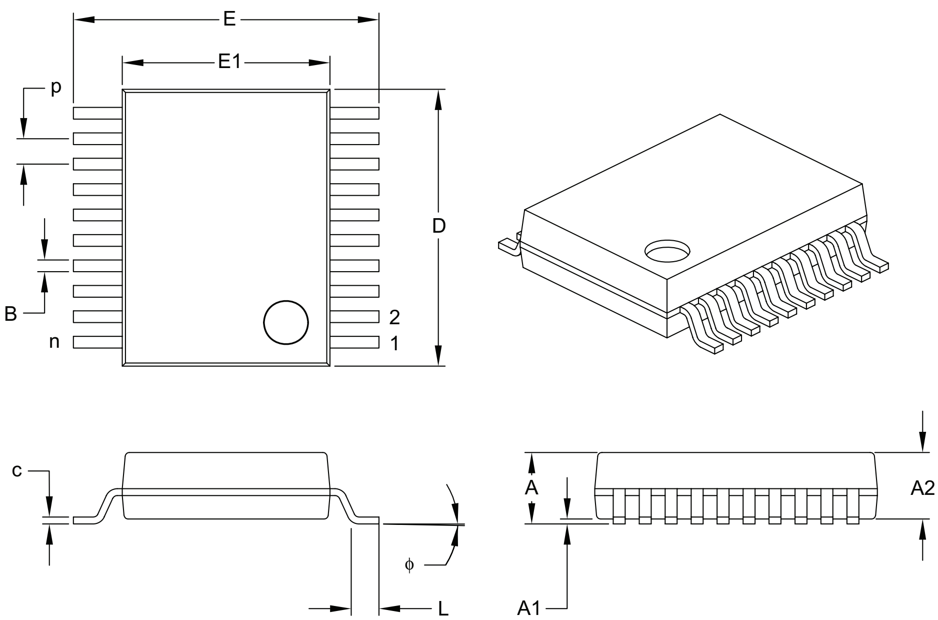
Notes:

Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed 010” (0.254mm) per side.

JEDEC Equivalent: MS-013

Drawing No. C04-051

20-Lead Plastic Shrink Small Outline (SS) – 209 mil Body, 5.30 mm (SSOP)



Units		INCHES			MILLIMETERS*		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		20			20	
Pitch	p		.026			.065	
Overall Height	A	–	–	.079	–	–	2.00
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.065	.069	.073	1.65	1.75	1.85
Standoff	A1	.002	–	–	0.05	–	–
Overall Width	E	.291	.307	.323	7.40	7.80	8.20
Molded Package Width	E1	.197	.209	.220	5.00	5.30	5.60
Overall Length	D	.272	.283	.295	6.90	7.20	7.50
Foot Length	L	0.22	0.30	0.37	0.55	0.75	0.95
Lead Thickness	c	.004	–	.010	0.09	–	0.25
Foot Angle	φ	0°	4°	8°	0°	4°	8°
Lead Width	B	.009	–	.015	0.22	–	0.38

* Controlling Parameter

Notes:

Dimensions D and E1 do no include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed 010" (0.254mm) per side.

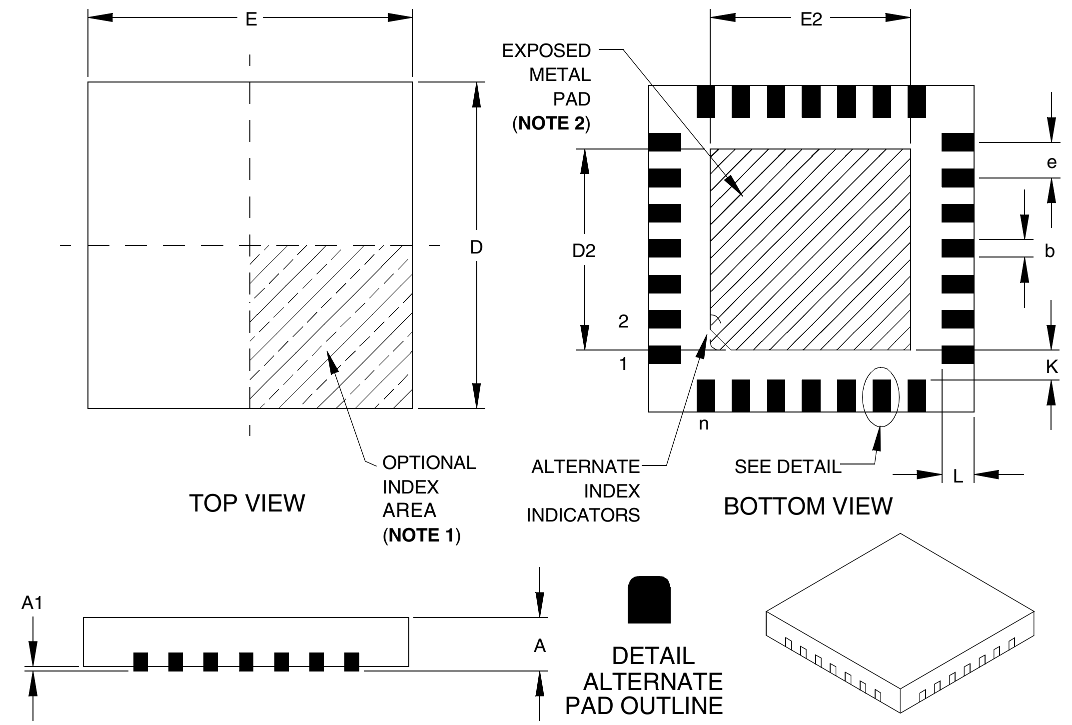
JEDEC Equivalent: MO-150

Drawing No. C04-072

Revised 8-27-04

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

28-Lead Plastic Quad Flat No Lead Package (ML) 6x6 mm Body (QFN) – With 0.55 mm Contact Length (Saw Singulated)



Units		INCHES			MILLIMETERS*		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		28			28	
Pitch	e		.026 BSC			0.65 BSC	
Overall Height	A	.031	.035	.039	0.80	0.90	1.00
Standoff	A1	.000	.001	.002	0.00	0.02	0.05
Contact Thickness	A3		.008 REF			0.20 REF	
Overall Width	E	.232	.236	.240	5.90	6.00	6.10
Exposed Pad Width	E2	.153	.167	.169	3.89	4.24	4.29
Overall Length	D	.232	.236	.240	5.90	6.00	6.10
Exposed Pad Length	D2	.153	.167	.169	3.89	4.24	4.29
Contact Width	β	.009	.011	.013	0.23	0.28	0.33
Contact Length §	L	.018	.022	.024	0.45	0.55	0.65
Contact-to-Exposed Pad §	K	.008	–	–	0.20	–	–

* Controlling Parameter

§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:

1. Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.

2. Exposed pad varies according to die attach paddle size.

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.
See ASME Y14.5M

REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.
See ASME Y14.5M

JEDEC equivalent: MO-220

Drawing No. C04-105

Revised 09-12-05

NOTES:

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

APPENDIX A: REVISION HISTORY

Revision A (November 2005)

Original data sheet for PIC18F1230/1330 devices.

Revision B (February 2006)

Data bank information was updated and a note was added for calculating the PCPWM duty cycle.

APPENDIX B: DEVICE DIFFERENCES

The differences between the devices listed in this data sheet are shown in Table B-1.

TABLE B-1: DEVICE DIFFERENCES

Features	PIC18F1230	PIC18F1330
Program Memory (Bytes)	4096	8192
Program Memory (Instructions)	2048	4096
Packages	18-pin PDIP 18-pin SOIC 20-pin SSOP 28-pin QFN	18-pin PDIP 18-pin SOIC 20-pin SSOP 28-pin QFN

APPENDIX C: CONVERSION CONSIDERATIONS

This appendix discusses the considerations for converting from previous versions of a device to the ones listed in this data sheet. Typically, these changes are due to the differences in the process technology used. An example of this type of conversion is from a PIC16C74A to a PIC16C74B.

Not Applicable

APPENDIX D: MIGRATION FROM BASELINE TO ENHANCED DEVICES

This section discusses how to migrate from a Baseline device (i.e., PIC16C5X) to an Enhanced MCU device (i.e., PIC18FXXX).

The following are the list of modifications over the PIC16C5X microcontroller family:

Not Currently Available

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

APPENDIX E: MIGRATION FROM MID-RANGE TO ENHANCED DEVICES

A detailed discussion of the differences between the mid-range MCU devices (i.e., PIC16CXXX) and the Enhanced devices (i.e., PIC18FXXX) is provided in *AN716, "Migrating Designs from PIC16C74A/74B to PIC18C442"*. The changes discussed, while device specific, are generally applicable to all mid-range to Enhanced device migrations.

This Application Note is available as Literature Number DS00716.

APPENDIX F: MIGRATION FROM HIGH-END TO ENHANCED DEVICES

A detailed discussion of the migration pathway and differences between the high-end MCU devices (i.e., PIC17CXXX) and the Enhanced devices (i.e., PIC18FXXX) is provided in *AN726, "PIC17CXXX to PIC18CXXX Migration"*.

This Application Note is available as Literature Number DS00726.

NOTES:

  © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

INDEX

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

D

E

 Advance Information © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

V

W

X

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

THE MICROCHIP WEB SITE

Microchip provides online support via our WWW site at www.microchip.com. This web site is used as a means to make files and information easily available to customers. Accessible by using your favorite Internet browser, the web site contains the following information:

- **Product Support** – Data sheets and errata, application notes and sample programs, design resources, user's guides and hardware support documents, latest software releases and archived software
- **General Technical Support** – Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), technical support requests, online discussion groups, Microchip consultant program member listing
- **Business of Microchip** – Product selector and ordering guides, latest Microchip press releases, listing of seminars and events, listings of Microchip sales offices, distributors and factory representatives

CUSTOMER CHANGE NOTIFICATION SERVICE

Microchip's customer notification service helps keep customers current on Microchip products. Subscribers will receive e-mail notification whenever there are changes, updates, revisions or errata related to a specified product family or development tool of interest.

To register, access the Microchip web site at www.microchip.com, click on Customer Change Notification and follow the registration instructions.

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

Users of Microchip products can receive assistance through several channels:

- Distributor or Representative
- Local Sales Office
- Field Application Engineer (FAE)
- Technical Support
- Development Systems Information Line

Customers should contact their distributor, representative or field application engineer (FAE) for support. Local sales offices are also available to help customers. A listing of sales offices and locations is included in the back of this document.

Technical support is available through the web site at: http://support.microchip.com

READER RESPONSE

It is our intention to provide you with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip product. If you wish to provide your comments on organization, clarity, subject matter, and ways in which our documentation can better serve you, please FAX your comments to the Technical Publications Manager at (480) 792-4150.

Please list the following information, and use this outline to provide us with your comments about this document.

To: Technical Publications Manager — Total Pages Sent ________

RE: Reader Response

From: Name ______________________________

Company ______________________________

Address ______________________________

City / State / ZIP / Country ______________________________

Telephone: (_______) _________ - _________ FAX: (______) _________ - _________

Application (optional):

Would you like a reply?____Y ____N

Device: PIC18F1230/1330 Literature Number: DS39758B

Questions:

1. What are the best features of this document?

____

____

2. How does this document meet your hardware and software development needs?

____

____

3. Do you find the organization of this document easy to follow? If not, why?

____

____

4. What additions to the document do you think would enhance the structure and subject?

____

____

5. What deletions from the document could be made without affecting the overall usefulness?

____

____

6. Is there any incorrect or misleading information (what and where)?

____

____

7. How would you improve this document?

____

____

 © 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.

PIC18F1230/1330 PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

To order or obtain information, e.g., on pricing or delivery, refer to the factory or the listed sales office.

PART NO.	X	/XX	XXX
Device	Temperature Range	Package	Pattern

Device	PIC18F1230/1330(1) PIC18F1230/1330T(2) VDD range 4.2V to 5.5V PIC18LF1230/1330(1) PIC18LF1230/1330T(2) VDD range 2.0V to 5.5V
Temperature Range	I = -40°C to +85°C (Industrial) E = -40°C to +125°C (Extended)
Package(3)	SO = Plastic Small Outline (SOIC) SS = Plastic Shrink Small Outline (SSOP) P = Plastic Dual In-line (PDIP) ML = Plastic Quad Flat No Lead (QFN)
Pattern	QTP, SQTP, Code or Special Requirements (blank otherwise)

Examples:

a) PIC18LF1330-I/P 301 = Industrial temp., PDIP package, Extended VDD limits, QTP pattern #301.

b) PIC18LF1230-I/SO = Industrial temp., SOIC package, Extended VDD limits.

Note 1: F = Standard Voltage Range
LF = Wide Voltage Range

2: T = in tape and reel QFN packages only

WORLDWIDE SALES AND SERVICE

AMERICAS

Corporate Office
2355 West Chandler Blvd.
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199
Tel: 480-792-7200
Fax: 480-792-7277
Technical Support:
http://support.microchip.com
Web Address:
www.microchip.com

Atlanta
Alpharetta, GA
Tel: 770-640-0034
Fax: 770-640-0307

Boston
Westborough, MA
Tel: 774-760-0087
Fax: 774-760-0088

Chicago
Itasca, IL
Tel: 630-285-0071
Fax: 630-285-0075

Dallas
Addison, TX
Tel: 972-818-7423
Fax: 972-818-2924

Detroit
Farmington Hills, MI
Tel: 248-538-2250
Fax: 248-538-2260

Kokomo
Kokomo, IN
Tel: 765-864-8360
Fax: 765-864-8387

Los Angeles
Mission Viejo, CA
Tel: 949-462-9523
Fax: 949-462-9608

San Jose
Mountain View, CA
Tel: 650-215-1444
Fax: 650-961-0286

Toronto
Mississauga, Ontario,
Canada
Tel: 905-673-0699
Fax: 905-673-6509

ASIA/PACIFIC

Australia - Sydney
Tel: 61-2-9868-6733
Fax: 61-2-9868-6755

China - Beijing
Tel: 86-10-8528-2100
Fax: 86-10-8528-2104

China - Chengdu
Tel: 86-28-8676-6200
Fax: 86-28-8676-6599

China - Fuzhou
Tel: 86-591-8750-3506
Fax: 86-591-8750-3521

China - Hong Kong SAR
Tel: 852-2401-1200
Fax: 852-2401-3431

China - Qingdao
Tel: 86-532-8502-7355
Fax: 86-532-8502-7205

China - Shanghai
Tel: 86-21-5407-5533
Fax: 86-21-5407-5066

China - Shenyang
Tel: 86-24-2334-2829
Fax: 86-24-2334-2393

China - Shenzhen
Tel: 86-755-8203-2660
Fax: 86-755-8203-1760

China - Shunde
Tel: 86-757-2839-5507
Fax: 86-757-2839-5571

China - Wuhan
Tel: 86-27-5980-5300
Fax: 86-27-5980-5118

China - Xian
Tel: 86-29-8833-7250
Fax: 86-29-8833-7256

ASIA/PACIFIC

India - Bangalore
Tel: 91-80-4182-8400
Fax: 91-80-4182-8422

India - New Delhi
Tel: 91-11-5160-8631
Fax: 91-11-5160-8632

India - Pune
Tel: 91-20-2566-1512
Fax: 91-20-2566-1513

Japan - Yokohama
Tel: 81-45-471- 6166
Fax: 81-45-471-6122

Korea - Gumi
Tel: 82-54-473-4301
Fax: 82-54-473-4302

Korea - Seoul
Tel: 82-2-554-7200
Fax: 82-2-558-5932 or
82-2-558-5934

Malaysia - Penang
Tel: 60-4-646-8870
Fax: 60-4-646-5086

Philippines - Manila
Tel: 63-2-634-9065
Fax: 63-2-634-9069

Singapore
Tel: 65-6334-8870
Fax: 65-6334-8850

Taiwan - Hsin Chu
Tel: 886-3-572-9526
Fax: 886-3-572-6459

Taiwan - Kaohsiung
Tel: 886-7-536-4818
Fax: 886-7-536-4803

Taiwan - Taipei
Tel: 886-2-2500-6610
Fax: 886-2-2508-0102

Thailand - Bangkok
Tel: 66-2-694-1351
Fax: 66-2-694-1350

EUROPE

Austria - Wels
Tel: 43-7242-2244-399
Fax: 43-7242-2244-393

Denmark - Copenhagen
Tel: 45-4450-2828
Fax: 45-4485-2829

France - Paris
Tel: 33-1-69-53-63-20
Fax: 33-1-69-30-90-79

Germany - Munich
Tel: 49-89-627-144-0
Fax: 49-89-627-144-44

Italy - Milan
Tel: 39-0331-742611
Fax: 39-0331-466781

Netherlands - Drunen
Tel: 31-416-690399
Fax: 31-416-690340

Spain - Madrid
Tel: 34-91-708-08-90
Fax: 34-91-708-08-91

UK - Wokingham
Tel: 44-118-921-5869
Fax: 44-118-921-5820

02/16/06

© 2006 Microchip Technology Inc.